

# Graphics Library Help

Manual for Microchip Graphics Library

Made with **Doc-O-Matic**.

## Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Software License Agreement.txt</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Release Notes</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Getting Started</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>Demo Projects</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Demo Summary</b>	33
<b>Microchip Application Library Abbreviations</b>	34
<b>Demo Compatibility Matrix</b>	34
<b>Library Architecture</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Graphics Object Layer</b>	35
Object Rendering	36
<b>Graphics Primitive Layer</b>	37
Display Device Driver Layer	38
<b>Library API</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Graphics Library Configuration</b>	39
Graphics Object Layer Configuration	39
Input Device Selection	39
USE_KEYBOARD Macro	40
USE_TOUCHSCREEN Macro	40
Focus Support Selection	40
USE_FOCUS Macro	40
Graphics Object Selection	41
USE_ANALOGCLOCK Macro	41
USE_BUTTON Macro	42
USE_BUTTON_MULTI_LINE Macro	42
USE_CHECKBOX Macro	42
USE_DIGITALMETER Macro	42
USE_EDITBOX Macro	42
USE_GROUPBOX Macro	43

USE_LISTBOX Macro	43
USE_METER Macro	43
USE_PICTURE Macro	43
USE_PROGRESSBAR Macro	43
USE_RADIOBUTTON Macro	44
USE_ROUNDDIAL Macro	44
USE_SLIDER Macro	44
USE_STATICTEXT Macro	44
USE_WINDOW Macro	44
USE_CUSTOM Macro	45
USE_GOL Macro	45
USE_TEXTENTRY Macro	45
Graphics Primitive Layer Configuration	45
Image Compression Option	45
USE_COMP_IPU Macro	46
USE_COMP_RLE Macro	46
Font Type Selection	46
USE_MULTIBYTECHAR Macro	47
USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR Macro	47
Advanced Font Features Selection	47
USE_ANTIALIASED_FONTS Macro	48
Gradient Bar Rendering	48
USE_GRADIENT Macro	48
Transparent Color Feature in PutImage()	48
USE_TRANSPARENT_COLOR Macro	48
External Memory Buffer	49
Display Device Driver Layer Configuration	49
USE_ALPHABLEND Macro	49
USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING Macro	50
GFX_LCD_TYPE Macro	50
GFX_LCD_CSTN Macro	50
GFX_LCD_MSTN Macro	51
GFX_LCD_OFF Macro	51
GFX_LCD_TFT Macro	51
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH Macro	51
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_16 Macro	52
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_4 Macro	52
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_8 Macro	52
Application Configuration	52
Configuration Setting	52
USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG Macro	53
Font Source Selection	53

USE_FONT_FLASH Macro	53
USE_FONT_EXTERNAL Macro	54
Image Source Selection	54
USE_BITMAP_FLASH Macro	54
USE_BITMAP_EXTERNAL Macro	55
Miscellaneous	55
USE_PALETTE_EXTERNAL Macro	55
USE_PALETTE Macro	56
COLOR_DEPTH Macro	56
GFX_free Macro	56
GFX_malloc Macro	56
GraphicsConfig.h Example	56
Hardware Profile	57
PMP Interface	57
USE_8BIT_PMP Macro	57
USE_16BIT_PMP Macro	58
Development Platform Used	58
EXPLORER_16 Macro	59
PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD Macro	59
MEB_BOARD Macro	60
PIC_SK Macro	60
Graphics PICTail Used	60
GFX_PICTAIL_LCC Macro	61
GFX_PICTAIL_V3 Macro	61
GFX_PICTAIL_V3E Macro	61
Display Controller Used	62
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA Macro	63
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 Macro	63
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 Macro	63
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 Macro	64
Display Panel Used	64
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q Macro	65
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E Macro	66
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E Macro	66
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E Macro	66
Device Driver Options	67
DISP_DATA_WIDTH Macro	68
DISP_ORIENTATION Macro	68
DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION Macro	69
DISP_VER_RESOLUTION Macro	69
DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH Macro	69
DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH Macro	70

DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH Macro	70
DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH Macro	70
DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH Macro	70
DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH Macro	70
DISP_INV_LSHIFT Macro	71
HardwareProfile.h Example	71
<b>Graphics Object Layer API</b>	<b>72</b>
GOL Objects	72
GOL_OBJ_TYPE Enumeration	75
OBJ_HEADER Structure	76
DRAW_FUNC Type	77
FREE_FUNC Type	77
MSG_DEFAULT_FUNC Type	77
MSG_FUNC Type	77
Analog Clock	78
Analog Clock States	79
AcCreate Function	81
AcDraw Function	82
AcSetHour Function	83
AcSetMinute Function	84
AcSetSecond Function	84
ANALOGCLOCK Structure	85
Button	86
Button States	87
BtnCreate Function	90
BtnDraw Function	92
BtnGetText Macro	93
BtnSetText Function	93
BtnGetBitmap Macro	94
BtnSetBitmap Macro	95
BtnMsgDefault Function	95
BtnTranslateMsg Function	96
BUTTON Structure	98
Chart	99
Chart States	101
Data Series Status Settings	105
Chart Examples	105
ChCreate Function	106
ChDraw Function	108
ChAddDataSeries Function	109
ChRemoveDataSeries Function	110
ChShowSeries Macro	111

ChHideSeries Macro	111
ChGetShowSeriesCount Macro	112
ChGetShowSeriesStatus Macro	113
ChSetValueLabel Macro	113
ChGetValueLabel Macro	114
ChGetValueMax Macro	114
ChGetValueMin Macro	115
ChSetValueRange Function	115
ChGetValueRange Macro	116
ChSetSampleLabel Macro	117
ChGetSampleLabel Macro	117
ChGetSampleStart Macro	118
ChGetSampleEnd Macro	118
ChSetPercentRange Function	119
ChGetPercentRange Macro	119
ChSetSampleRange Function	120
ChGetSampleRange Macro	121
ChGetPercentMax Macro	121
ChGetPercentMin Macro	122
ChSetColorTable Macro	123
ChGetColorTable Macro	123
ChSetTitle Macro	124
ChGetTitle Macro	124
ChSetTitleFont Macro	125
ChGetTitleFont Macro	125
ChGetAxisLabelFont Macro	126
ChSetAxisLabelFont Macro	127
ChGetGridLabelFont Macro	127
ChSetGridLabelFont Macro	128
ChFreeDataSeries Function	128
ChTranslateMsg Function	129
CHART Structure	130
DATASERIES Structure	130
CHARTPARAM Structure	131
Color Table	132
Checkbox	135
Check Box States	137
CbCreate Function	139
CbDraw Function	140
CbGetText Macro	141
CbSetText Function	141
CbMsgDefault Function	142

---

CbTranslateMsg Function	143
CHECKBOX Structure	144
Round Dial	144
Dial States	145
RdiaCreate Function	147
RdiaDraw Function	148
RdiaIncVal Macro	148
RdiaDecVal Macro	149
RdiaGetVal Macro	150
RdiaSetVal Macro	150
RdiaMsgDefault Function	151
RdiaTranslateMsg Function	152
ROUNDDIAL Structure	153
Digital Meter	154
Digital Meter States	155
DmCreate Function	157
DmDraw Function	158
DmGetValue Macro	159
DmSetValue Function	159
DmDecVal Macro	160
DmIncVal Macro	160
DmTranslateMsg Function	161
DIGITALMETER Structure	162
Edit Box	162
Edit Box States	164
EbCreate Function	166
EbDraw Function	167
EbGetText Macro	167
EbSetText Function	168
EbAddChar Function	169
EbDeleteChar Function	169
EbMsgDefault Function	170
EbTranslateMsg Function	171
EDITBOX Structure	171
Grid	172
Grid States	173
Grid Item States	175
GridCreate Function	177
GridDraw Function	178
GridClearCellState Function	179
GridGetFocusX Macro	180
GridGetFocusY Macro	180

GRID_OUT_OF_BOUNDS Macro	181
GRID_SUCCESS Macro	181
GridFreeItems Function	181
GridGetCell Function	182
GridSetCell Function	183
GridSetCellState Function	183
GridSetFocus Function	184
GridMsgDefault Function	185
GridTranslateMsg Function	186
GRID Structure	187
GRIDITEM Structure	188
Group Box	188
Group Box States	189
GbCreate Function	190
GbDraw Function	192
GbGetText Macro	192
GbSetText Function	193
GbTranslateMsg Function	194
GROUPBOX Structure	194
List Box	195
List Box States	197
List Item Status	199
LbCreate Function	199
LbDraw Function	201
LbGetItemList Macro	202
LbAddItem Function	202
LbDeleteItem Function	204
LbChangeSel Function	204
LbSetSel Macro	205
LbGetSel Function	205
LbGetFocusedItem Function	206
LbSetFocusedItem Function	207
LbGetCount Macro	207
LbGetVisibleCount Macro	208
LbSetBitmap Macro	208
LbGetBitmap Macro	209
LbDeleteItemsList Function	210
LbMsgDefault Function	210
LbTranslateMsg Function	211
LISTBOX Structure	212
LISTITEM Structure	213
Meter	213

Meter States	215
MtrCreate Function	216
MtrDraw Function	218
MtrSetVal Function	219
MtrGetVal Macro	219
MtrDecVal Macro	220
MtrIncVal Macro	220
MtrSetScaleColors Macro	221
MtrSetTitleFont Macro	222
MtrSetValueFont Macro	222
METER_TYPE Macro	223
MTR_ACCURACY Macro	223
MtrMsgDefault Function	224
MtrTranslateMsg Function	224
METER Structure	225
Picture Control	226
Picture States	227
PictCreate Function	228
PictDraw Function	229
PictSetBitmap Macro	230
PictGetBitmap Macro	230
PictGetScale Macro	231
PictSetScale Macro	232
PictTranslateMsg Function	232
PICTURE Structure	233
Progress Bar	233
Progress Bar States	234
PbCreate Function	236
PbDraw Function	237
PbSetRange Function	238
PbGetRange Macro	238
PbSetPos Function	239
PbGetPos Macro	240
PbTranslateMsg Function	240
PROGRESSBAR Structure	241
Radio Button	242
Radio Button States	243
RbCreate Function	245
RbDraw Function	246
RbGetCheck Function	247
RbSetCheck Function	248
RbGetText Macro	249

RbSetText Function	249
RbMsgDefault Function	250
RbTranslateMsg Function	251
RADIOBUTTON Structure	252
Slider/Scroll Bar	252
Slider States	254
SldCreate Function	256
SldDraw Function	258
SldSetPage Function	259
SldGetPage Macro	259
SldSetPos Function	260
SldGetPos Macro	261
SldSetRange Function	262
SldGetRange Macro	262
SldIncPos Macro	263
SldDecPos Macro	264
SldMsgDefault Function	265
SldTranslateMsg Function	266
SLIDER Structure	267
Static Text	267
Static Text States	269
StCreate Function	270
StDraw Function	271
StGetText Macro	272
StSetText Function	273
StTranslateMsg Function	273
STATICTEXT Structure	274
Text Entry	275
TextEntry States	277
Key Command Types	278
TeCreate Function	279
TeDraw Function	280
TeGetBuffer Macro	281
TeSetBuffer Function	281
TeClearBuffer Function	282
TeGetKeyCommand Function	283
TeSetKeyCommand Function	283
TeCreateKeyMembers Function	284
TeAddChar Function	285
TeIsKeyPressed Function	285
TeSpaceChar Function	286
TeDelKeyMembers Function	286

TeSetKeyText Function	287
TeMsgDefault Function	288
TeTranslateMsg Function	289
TEXTENTRY Structure	290
KEYMEMBER Structure	291
Window	292
Window States	293
WndCreate Function	295
WndDraw Function	296
WndGetText Macro	297
WndSetText Function	297
WndTranslateMsg Function	298
WINDOW Structure	299
Object States	299
Common Object States	300
FOCUSSED Macro	300
DISABLED Macro	301
HIDE Macro	301
DRAW Macro	301
DRAW_FOCUS Macro	301
DRAW_UPDATE Macro	301
GetState Macro	302
ClrState Macro	302
SetState Macro	303
Object Management	304
GOLAddObject Function	306
GOLFFindObject Function	306
GOLRedraw Macro	307
GOLRedrawRec Function	308
GOLDraw Function	309
GOLDrawComplete Macro	309
GOLDrawCallback Function	310
GOLFree Function	311
GetObjType Macro	312
GetObjID Macro	312
GetObjNext Macro	313
GOLDeleteObject Function	314
GOLDeleteObjectByID Function	314
GOLNewList Macro	315
GOLGetList Macro	316
GOLSetList Macro	316
GOLSetFocus Function	317

IsObjUpdated Macro	317
GOLInit Function	318
GOLGetFocus Macro	319
GOLCanBeFocused Function	319
GOLGetFocusNext Function	320
GOLGetFocusPrev Function	320
GOLPanelDraw Macro	321
GOLPanelDrawTsk Function	322
GOLTTwoTonePanelDrawTsk Function	323
GOL Messages	323
GOLMsg Function	326
GOLMsgCallback Function	327
GOL_MSG Structure	328
TRANS_MSG Enumeration	329
INPUT_DEVICE_EVENT Enumeration	331
INPUT_DEVICE_TYPE Enumeration	331
Scan Key Codes	332
SCAN_BS_PRESSED Macro	333
SCAN_BS_RELEASED Macro	333
SCAN_CR_PRESSED Macro	333
SCAN_CR_RELEASED Macro	333
SCAN_DEL_PRESSED Macro	333
SCAN_DEL_RELEASED Macro	334
SCAN_DOWN_PRESSED Macro	334
SCAN_DOWN_RELEASED Macro	334
SCAN_END_PRESSED Macro	334
SCAN_END_RELEASED Macro	334
SCAN_HOME_PRESSED Macro	335
SCAN_HOME_RELEASED Macro	335
SCAN_LEFT_PRESSED Macro	335
SCAN_LEFT_RELEASED Macro	335
SCAN_PGDOWN_PRESSED Macro	335
SCAN_PGDOWN_RELEASED Macro	336
SCAN_PGUP_PRESSED Macro	336
SCAN_PGUP_RELEASED Macro	336
SCAN_RIGHT_PRESSED Macro	336
SCAN_RIGHT_RELEASED Macro	336
SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED Macro	337
SCAN_SPACE_RELEASED Macro	337
SCAN_TAB_PRESSED Macro	337
SCAN_TAB_RELEASED Macro	337
SCAN_UP_PRESSED Macro	337

SCAN_UP_RELEASED Macro	338
Style Scheme	338
GOLCreateScheme Function	340
GOLSetScheme Macro	340
GOLGetScheme Macro	341
GOLGetSchemeDefault Macro	342
GOL_SCHEME Structure	342
Default Style Scheme Settings	343
FONTDEFAULT Variable	343
GOLFondDefault Variable	343
GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE Macro	343
GOLSchemeDefault Variable	344
RGBConvert Macro	344
GOL Global Variables	345
_pDefaultGolScheme Variable	345
_pGolObjects Variable	345
_pObjectFocused Variable	346
<b>Graphics Primitive Layer API</b>	<b>346</b>
Text Functions	346
FONT_HEADER Structure	347
FONT_FLASH Structure	348
FONT_EXTERNAL Type	348
SetFont Function	349
GetFontOrientation Macro	349
SetFontOrientation Macro	350
GFX_Font_GetAntiAliasType Macro	350
GFX_Font_SetAntiAliasType Macro	351
OutChar Function	351
OutText Function	352
OutTextXY Function	353
GetTextHeight Function	354
GetTextWidth Function	355
XCHAR Macro	355
Anti-Alias Type	356
ANTIALIAS_OPAQUE Macro	356
ANTIALIAS_TRANSLUCENT Macro	356
Gradient	356
BarGradient Function	357
BevelGradient Function	359
GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE Enumeration	360
GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE Structure	360
Line Functions	361

Line Function	361
LineRel Macro	362
LineTo Macro	362
SetLineThickness Macro	363
SetLineType Macro	363
Line Types	364
SOLID_LINE Macro	364
DASHED_LINE Macro	364
DOTTED_LINE Macro	365
Line Size	365
NORMAL_LINE Macro	365
THICK_LINE Macro	365
Rectangle Functions	366
Bar Function	366
Rectangle Macro	367
DrawPoly Function	367
Circle Functions	368
Circle Macro	369
FillCircle Macro	369
Arc Function	370
DrawArc Function	372
Bevel Function	372
FillBevel Function	374
SetBevelDrawType Macro	375
Graphic Cursor	376
GetX Macro	376
GetY Macro	376
MoveRel Macro	377
MoveTo Macro	377
Bitmap Functions	378
PutImage Function	378
GetImageHeight Function	379
GetImageWidth Function	379
BITMAP_HEADER Structure	380
Bitmap Settings	380
IMAGE_NORMAL Macro	381
IMAGE_X2 Macro	381
Bitmap Source	381
External Memory	381
ExternalMemoryCallback Function	382
EXTERNAL_FONT_BUFFER_SIZE Macro	383
Memory Type	383

Set Up Functions	383
ClearDevice Function	384
InitGraph Function	384
GFX_RESOURCE Enumeration	385
GFX_IMAGE_HEADER Structure	385
IMAGE_FLASH Structure	386
IMAGE_RAM Structure	387
GFX_EXTDATA Structure	387
<b>Display Device Driver Layer API</b>	<b>388</b>
Display Device Driver Level Primitives	388
GetPixel Function	389
PutPixel Function	389
GetColor Macro	390
SetColor Macro	390
GetMaxX Macro	391
GetMaxY Macro	391
SetClip Function	392
SetClipRgn Function	392
GetClipBottom Macro	393
GetClipLeft Macro	394
GetClipRight Macro	394
GetClipTop Macro	394
CLIP_DISABLE Macro	395
CLIP_ENABLE Macro	395
TransparentColorEnable Function	395
TransparentColorDisable Macro	396
GetTransparentColorStatus Macro	397
GetTransparentColor Macro	397
TRANSPARENT_COLOR_DISABLE Macro	398
TRANSPARENT_COLOR_ENABLE Macro	398
DisplayBrightness Function	398
GetPageAddress Macro	399
CopyBlock Function	399
CopyPageWindow Function	400
CopyWindow Function	401
SetActivePage Function	402
SetVisualPage Function	402
Color Definition	403
BLACK Macro	403
BLUE Macro	404
BRIGHTBLUE Macro	404
BRIGHTCYAN Macro	404

BRIGHTGREEN Macro	404
BRIGHTMAGENTA Macro	404
BRIGHTRED Macro	405
BRIGHTYELLOW Macro	405
BROWN Macro	405
CYAN Macro	405
DARKGRAY Macro	405
GRAY0 Macro	406
GRAY1 Macro	406
GRAY2 Macro	406
GRAY3 Macro	406
GRAY4 Macro	406
GRAY5 Macro	407
GRAY6 Macro	407
GREEN Macro	407
LIGHTBLUE Macro	407
LIGHTCYAN Macro	407
LIGHTGRAY Macro	408
LIGHTGREEN Macro	408
LIGHTMAGENTA Macro	408
LIGHTRED Macro	408
MAGENTA Macro	408
RED Macro	409
WHITE Macro	409
YELLOW Macro	409
Display Device Driver Control	409
IsDeviceBusy Function	410
ResetDevice Function	410
Advanced Display Driver Features	410
Alpha Blending	411
AlphaBlendWindow Function	412
GFXGetPageOriginAddress Function	413
GFXGetPageXYAddress Function	414
Transitions	414
GFXTransition Function	415
GFXSetupTransition Function	416
GFXExecutePendingTransition Function	417
GFXIsTransitionPending Function	418
GFX_TRANSITION_DIRECTION Enumeration	418
GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE Enumeration	418
Microchip Graphics Controller	419
Rectangle Copy Operations	420

---

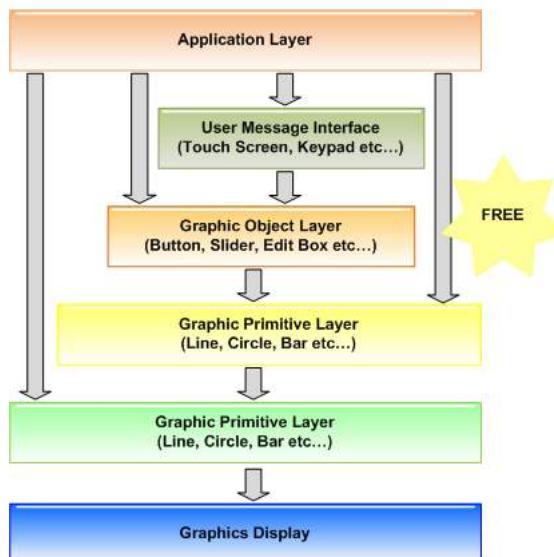
Double Buffering	434
Decompressing DEFLATEd data	438
Palette Mode	439
Set Up Display Interface	451
External or Internal Memory and Palettes	461
<b>Image Decoders</b>	<b>464</b>
<b>Image Decoders API</b>	<b>468</b>
<b>Image Decoder Configuration</b>	<b>468</b>
IMG_SUPPORT_BMP Macro	469
IMG_SUPPORT_GIF Macro	469
IMG_SUPPORT_JPEG Macro	469
IMG_SUPPORT_IMAGE_DECODER_LOOP_CALLBACK Macro	470
IMG_USE_ONLY_565_GRAPHICS_DRIVER_FOR_OUTPUT Macro	470
IMG_USE_ONLY_MDD_FILE_SYSTEM_FOR_INPUT Macro	470
<b>ImageDecode Function</b>	<b>471</b>
<b>ImageDecoderInit Function</b>	<b>472</b>
<b>ImageLoopCallbackRegister Function</b>	<b>472</b>
<b>ImageDecodeTask Function</b>	<b>473</b>
<b>ImageFullScreenDecode Macro</b>	<b>473</b>
<b>ImageAbort Macro</b>	<b>474</b>
<b>_BMPDECODER Structure</b>	<b>475</b>
<b>_GIFDECODER Structure</b>	<b>475</b>
<b>_JPEGDECODER Structure</b>	<b>476</b>
<b>Miscellaneous Topics</b>	<b>479</b>
<b>Starting a New Project</b>	<b>479</b>
<b>Changing the default Font</b>	<b>485</b>
<b>Advanced Font Features</b>	<b>486</b>
<b>Using Primitive Rendering Functions in Blocking and Non-Blocking Modes</b>	<b>487</b>
<b>Using Microchip Graphics Module Color Look Up Table in Applications</b>	<b>488</b>
<b>Converting Images to Use a Common Palette in GIMP</b>	<b>493</b>
<b>How to Define Colors in your Applications</b>	<b>495</b>
<b>Connecting RGB data bus</b>	<b>495</b>

---

Adding New Device Driver	496
<b>References</b>	<b>498</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>a</b>

# 1 Introduction

This document explains how to get started with Microchip Graphics Library solution. It presents the available resources and where to obtain these resources. It also includes the Application Programming Interface (API) of the Microchip Graphics Library.



The Microchip Graphics Library is highly modular and is optimized for Microchip's 16-bit microcontrollers. Additionally, the library is free for Microchip customers, easy to use, and has an open documented interface for new driver support, which requires creation of only one C file.

The Microchip Graphics Library Software Version 3.04.02 supports the following features:

- Configurable graphic resolution
- Up to 16-bit or 65K colors
- 2D objects such as line, circle, text, rectangle, polygon, bar
- 3D objects such as buttons, meter, dial, list box, edit box, check box, radio buttons, window, group box, slider.
- Image, animation
- Variety of user input device such as touch screen, keypad etc...
- Multiple fonts
- Unicode fonts
- PIC24 support, PIC32 support

## 2 Software License Agreement.txt

MICROCHIP IS WILLING TO LICENSE THE ACCOMPANYING SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION TO YOU ONLY ON THE CONDITION THAT YOU ACCEPT ALL OF THE FOLLOWING TERMS. TO ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, CLICK "I ACCEPT" AND PROCEED WITH THE DOWNLOAD OR INSTALL. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THESE LICENSE TERMS, CLICK "I DO NOT ACCEPT," AND DO NOT DOWNLOAD OR INSTALL THIS SOFTWARE.

### NON-EXCLUSIVE SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This Nonexclusive Software License Agreement ("Agreement") is a contract between you, your heirs, successors and assigns ("Licensee") and Microchip Technology Incorporated, a Delaware corporation, with a principal place of business at 2355 W. Chandler Blvd., Chandler, AZ 85224-6199, and its subsidiary, Microchip Technology (Barbados) II Incorporated (collectively, "Microchip") for the accompanying Microchip software including, but not limited to, Graphics Library Software, IrDA Stack Software, MCHPFSUSB Stack Software, Memory Disk Drive File System Software, mTouch(TM) Capacitive Library Software, Smart Card Library Software, TCP/IP Stack Software, MiWi(TM) DE Software, Security Package Software, and/or any PC programs and any updates thereto (collectively, the "Software"), and accompanying documentation, including images and any other graphic resources provided by Microchip ("Documentation").

1. Definitions. As used in this Agreement, the following capitalized terms will have the meanings defined below:
  - a. "Microchip Products" means Microchip microcontrollers and Microchip digital signal controllers.
  - b. "Licensee Products" means Licensee products that use or incorporate Microchip Products.
  - c. "Object Code" means the Software computer programming code that is in binary form (including related documentation, if any), and error corrections, improvements, modifications, and updates.
  - d. "Source Code" means the Software computer programming code that may be printed out or displayed in human readable form (including related programmer comments and documentation, if any), and error corrections, improvements, modifications, and updates.
  - e. "Third Party" means Licensee's agents, representatives, consultants, clients, customers, or contract manufacturers.
  - f. "Third Party Products" means Third Party products that use or incorporate Microchip Products.
2. Software License Grant. Microchip grants strictly to Licensee a non-exclusive, non-transferable, worldwide license to:
  - a. use the Software in connection with Licensee Products and/or Third Party Products;
  - b. if Source Code is provided, modify the Software; provided that Licensee clearly notifies Third Parties regarding the source of such modifications;
  - c. distribute the Software to Third Parties for use in Third Party Products, so long as such Third Party agrees to be bound by this Agreement (in writing or by "click to accept") and this Agreement accompanies such distribution;
  - d. sublicense to a Third Party to use the Software, so long as such Third Party agrees to be bound by this Agreement (in writing or by "click to accept");
  - e. with respect to the TCP/IP Stack Software, Licensee may port the ENC28J60.c, ENC28J60.h, ENCX24J600.c, and ENCX24J600.h driver source files to a non-Microchip Product used in conjunction with a Microchip ethernet controller;
  - f. with respect to the MiWi (TM) DE Software, Licensee may only exercise its rights when the Software is embedded on a Microchip Product and used with a Microchip radio frequency transceiver or UBEC UZ2400 radio frequency transceiver which are integrated into Licensee Products or Third Party Products. For purposes of clarity, Licensee may NOT embed the Software on a non-Microchip Product, except as described in this Section.
3. Documentation License Grant. Microchip grants strictly to Licensee a non-exclusive, non-transferable, worldwide license to use the Documentation in support of Licensee's authorized use of the Software
4. Third Party Requirements. Licensee acknowledges that it is Licensee's responsibility to comply with any third party license terms or requirements applicable to the use of such third party software, specifications, systems, or tools. This includes, by way of example but not as a limitation, any standards setting organizations requirements and, particularly with respect to the Security Package Software, local encryption laws and requirements. Microchip is not responsible and will not be held responsible in any manner for Licensee's failure to comply with such applicable terms or requirements.
5. Open Source Components. Notwithstanding the license grant in Section 1 above, Licensee further acknowledges that certain components of the Software may be covered by so-called "open source" software licenses ("Open Source Components"). Open Source Components means any software licenses approved as open source licenses by the Open Source Initiative or any substantially similar licenses, including without limitation any license that, as a condition of distribution of the software licensed under such license, requires that the distributor make the software available in source code format. To the extent required by the licenses covering Open Source Components, the terms of such license will apply in lieu of the terms of this Agreement. To the extent the terms of the licenses applicable to Open Source Components prohibit any of the restrictions in this Agreement with respect to such Open Source Components, such restrictions will not apply to such Open Source Component.
6. Licensee Obligations. Licensee will not:
  - (a) engage in unauthorized use, modification, disclosure or distribution of Software or Documentation, or its derivatives;
  - (b) use all or any portion of the Software, Documentation, or its derivatives

except in conjunction with Microchip Products, Licensee Products or Third Party Products; or (c) reverse engineer (by disassembly, decompilation or otherwise) Software or any portion thereof. Licensee may not remove or alter any Microchip copyright or other proprietary rights notice posted in any portion of the Software or Documentation. Licensee will defend, indemnify and hold Microchip and its subsidiaries harmless from and against any and all claims, costs, damages, expenses (including reasonable attorney's fees), liabilities, and losses, including without limitation: (x) any claims directly or indirectly arising from or related to the use, modification, disclosure or distribution of the Software, Documentation, or any intellectual property rights related thereto; (y) the use, sale and distribution of Licensee Products or Third Party Products; and (z) breach of this Agreement.

7. Confidentiality. Licensee agrees that the Software (including but not limited to the Source Code, Object Code and library files) and its derivatives, Documentation and underlying inventions, algorithms, know-how and ideas relating to the Software and the Documentation are proprietary information belonging to Microchip and its licensors ("Proprietary Information"). Except as expressly and unambiguously allowed herein, Licensee will hold in confidence and not use or disclose any Proprietary Information and will similarly bind its employees and Third Party(ies) in writing. Proprietary Information will not include information that: (i) is in or enters the public domain without breach of this Agreement and through no fault of the receiving party; (ii) the receiving party was legally in possession of prior to receiving it; (iii) the receiving party can demonstrate was developed by the receiving party independently and without use of or reference to the disclosing party's Proprietary Information; or (iv) the receiving party receives from a third party without restriction on disclosure. If Licensee is required to disclose Proprietary Information by law, court order, or government agency, Licensee will give Microchip prompt notice of such requirement in order to allow Microchip to object or limit such disclosure. Licensee agrees that the provisions of this Agreement regarding unauthorized use and nondisclosure of the Software, Documentation and related Proprietary Rights are necessary to protect the legitimate business interests of Microchip and its licensors and that monetary damage alone cannot adequately compensate Microchip or its licensors if such provisions are violated. Licensee, therefore, agrees that if Microchip alleges that Licensee or Third Party has breached or violated such provision then Microchip will have the right to injunctive relief, without the requirement for the posting of a bond, in addition to all other remedies at law or in equity.
8. Ownership of Proprietary Rights. Microchip and its licensors retain all right, title and interest in and to the Software and Documentation including, but not limited to all patent, copyright, trade secret and other intellectual property rights in the Software, Documentation, and underlying technology and all copies and derivative works thereof (by whomever produced). Licensee and Third Party use of such modifications and derivatives is limited to the license rights described in this Agreement.
9. Termination of Agreement. Without prejudice to any other rights, this Agreement terminates immediately, without notice by Microchip, upon a failure by Licensee or Third Party to comply with any provision of this Agreement. Upon termination, Licensee and Third Party will immediately stop using the Software, Documentation, and derivatives thereof, and immediately destroy all such copies.
10. Warranty Disclaimers. THE SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. MICROCHIP AND ITS LICENSORS ASSUME NO RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE ACCURACY, RELIABILITY OR APPLICATION OF THE SOFTWARE OR DOCUMENTATION. MICROCHIP AND ITS LICENSORS DO NOT WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET REQUIREMENTS OF LICENSEE OR THIRD PARTY, BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE. MICROCHIP AND ITS LICENSORS HAVE NO OBLIGATION TO CORRECT ANY DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE.
11. Limited Liability. IN NO EVENT WILL MICROCHIP OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE OR OBLIGATED UNDER ANY LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY FOR ANY DIRECT OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OR EXPENSES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST PROFITS OR LOST DATA, COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS, TECHNOLOGY, SERVICES, OR ANY CLAIMS BY THIRD PARTIES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY DEFENSE THEREOF), OR OTHER SIMILAR COSTS. The aggregate and cumulative liability of Microchip and its licensors for damages hereunder will in no event exceed \$1000 or the amount Licensee paid Microchip for the Software and Documentation, whichever is greater. Licensee acknowledges that the foregoing limitations are reasonable and an essential part of this Agreement.
12. General. THIS AGREEMENT WILL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF ARIZONA AND THE UNITED STATES WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAWS PROVISIONS. Licensee agrees that any disputes arising out of or related to this Agreement, Software or Documentation will be brought exclusively in either the U.S. District Court for the District of Arizona, Phoenix Division, or the Superior Court of Arizona located in Maricopa County, Arizona. This Agreement will constitute the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof. It will not be modified except by a written agreement signed by an authorized representative of Microchip. If any provision of this Agreement will be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be illegal, invalid or unenforceable, that provision will be limited or eliminated to the minimum extent necessary so that this Agreement will otherwise remain in full force and effect and enforceable. No waiver of any breach of any provision of this Agreement will constitute a waiver of any prior, concurrent or subsequent breach of the same or any other provisions hereof, and no waiver will be effective unless made in writing and signed by an authorized representative of the waiving party. Licensee agrees to comply with all import and export laws and restrictions and regulations of the Department of Commerce or other

United States or foreign agency or authority. The indemnities, obligations of confidentiality, and limitations on liability described herein, and any right of action for breach of this Agreement prior to termination, will survive any termination of this Agreement. Any prohibited assignment will be null and void. Use, duplication or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to restrictions set forth in subparagraphs (a) through (d) of the Commercial Computer-Restricted Rights clause of FAR 52.227-19 when applicable, or in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013, and in similar clauses in the NASA FAR Supplement. Contractor/manufacturer is Microchip Technology Inc., 2355 W. Chandler Blvd., Chandler, AZ 85224-6199.

If Licensee has any questions about this Agreement, please write to Microchip Technology Inc., 2355 W. Chandler Blvd., Chandler, AZ 85224-6199 USA. ATTN: Marketing.

Copyright (c) 2012 Microchip Technology Inc. All rights reserved.

License Rev. No. 05-012412

# 3 Release Notes

## Microchip Graphics Library Release Notes

### Version 3.04.02 (2012-04-03)

This library provides support for the display modules with built in graphics controller and displays connected to external graphics controller. Documentation for the Microchip Graphics Library can be found in this file:

- **Graphics Library Help.chm**

#### Version Log

New:

- No new items on this release.

Changes:

- Structure of this help file is modified. Section names that list APIs now has the API in the name.

Fixes:

- Fix BarGradient (🔗)() and BevelGradient (🔗)() when USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG (🔗) config is enabled.
- Added missing GbSetText (🔗)() function in GroupBox widget.
- Fix SetPalette (🔗)() to work with palette stored in external memory.

Deprecated Items:

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE (🔗)
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (🔗)
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH (🔗)
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM (🔗)
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (🔗)
- EEPROM.h and EEPROM.c are replaced by the following files:
  - MCHP25LC256.c - source code
  - MCHP25LC256.h - header file
- in the HardwareProfile.h add #define USE\_MCHP25LC256 to use the new driver.

Migration Changes:

- none

Known Issues:

- Extended glyph for certain font (such as Thai) when used with Static text widget is clipped. Future version will add additional vertical text alignment to the static text widget
- Anti-aliasing and extended glyph features are not supported when using PIC24FJ256DA210 CHRGPU.
- SPI flash programming on the Epson S1D13517 PICtail board Rev 1.1 is not always reliable, the S1D13517 demo no longer uses external memory flash in the example.
- When using PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM with Explorer 15 board with a 5v Lumex LCD display, the S1D13517 demo does not run correctly.

#### Application Notes

- [AN1136](#) How to Use Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library
- [AN1182](#) Fonts in the Microchip Graphics Library
- [AN1227](#) Using a Keyboard with the Microchip Graphics Library

- [AN1246](#) How to Create Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library
- [AN1368](#) Developing Graphics Applications using PIC MCU with Integrated Graphics Controller

### PIC Family

This version of the library supports PIC24, dsPIC and PIC32 Family.

### Development Tools

This graphics library release (v3.04) was tested with IDEs MPLAB v8.83 and MPLAB X 1.00; compilers C30 v3.31c and C32 v2.02a.

There is a known compatibility issue between the graphics library and C30 v3.25. using C30 3.25 is not recommended for graphics library development.

### Display Modules

The display driver layer of the library is organized to easily switch from one display driver to another. Use of customized display driver is allowed and in the Display Device Driver Layer section. Following graphics controllers are supported in this version:

Display Module	Interface	File Names
Microchip Graphics Display Driver - customizable driver for RGB Glass. Currently used in PIC24FJ256DA210 device family.	RGB	mchpGfxDrv.c, mchpGfxDrv.h
Microchip Low-Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics Display Driver - customizable driver for RGB Glass. Currently used for selected PIC32MX device families.	RGB	mchpGfxLCC.c, mchpGfxLCC.h
Samsung S6D0129/S6D0139	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT001.c, drvTFT001.h
LG LGDP4531	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT001.c, drvTFT001.h
Renesas R61505U/R61580	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT001.c, drvTFT001.h
Orise Technology SPDF5408	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT001.c, drvTFT001.h
Epson S1D13517	8/16 bit PMP	S1D13517.c, S1D13517.h
Solomon Systech SSD1926	8/16 bit PMP	SSD1926.c, SSD1926.h
Solomon Systech SSD1289	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT002.c, drvTFT002.h
Solomon Systech SSD1339 for OLED displays	8 bit PMP	SSD1339.c, SSD1339.h
Solomon Systech SSD1303 for OLED displays	8 bit PMP	SH1101A_SSD1303.c, SH1101A_SSD1303.h
Solomon Systech SSD1305 for OLED displays	8 bit PMP	SSD1305.c, SSD1305.h
Solomon Systech SSD2119	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT002.c, drvTFT002.h
Sino Wealth SH1101A for OLED displays	8 bit PMP	SH1101A_SSD1303.c, SH1101A_SSD1303.h
Sitronix ST7529	8 bit PMP	ST7529.c, ST7529.h
Hitech Electronics HIT1270	8 bit PMP	HIT1270.c, HIT1270.h
Ilitek ILI9320	8/16 bit PMP	drvTFT001.c, drvTFT001.h
Himax HX8347	8/16 bit PMP	HX8347.c, HX8347.h
UltraChip UC1610	8 bit PMP	UC1610.c, UC1610.h

Please refer to Adding New Device Driver () section to get more information on adding support for another LCD controller.

### Widgets

In this version the following widgets are implemented:

- Analog Clock ()
- Button ()
- Chart ()

- Checkbox (█)
- Dial (█)
- Digital Meter (█)
- Edit Box (█)
- Grid (█)
- Group Box (█)
- List Box (█)
- Meter (█)
- Picture Control (█)
- Progress Bar (█)
- Radio Button (█)
- Slider (█) / Scroll Bar (█)
- Static Text (█)
- Text Entry (█)
- Window (█)

This version of the library supports touch screen, side buttons and a variety of key pad configurations as a user input device.

## Required Resources

The library utilizes the following estimated MCU resources (in # of bytes):

Module	Heap for PIC24F	Heap for PIC32	RAM for PIC24F	RAM for PIC32	ROM for PIC24F	ROM for PIC32
Primitives Layer	0	0	68	53	3375	8868
GOL	20 (per style scheme)	24 (per style scheme)	32	28	2076	5400
Button (█)	28 (per instance)	44 (per instance)	8	12	1002	2748
Chart (█)	48 (per instance)	76 (per instance)	94	104	11427	26364
Check Box (█)	22 (per instance)	36 (per instance)	2	4	894	2320
Dial (█)	30 (per instance)	40 (per instance)	8	12	1065	3228
Digital Meter (█)	28 (per instance)	56 (per instance)	2	4	1125	2202
Edit Box (█)	26 (per instance)	40 (per instance)	2	4	822	2332
Group Box (█)	24 (per instance)	36 (per instance)	8	12	903	2164
List Box (█)	28 (per instance), 12 (per item)	44 (per instance)	6	12	1809	2580
Meter (█)	52 (per instance)	68 (per instance)	36	40	2778	6788
Picture Control (█)	22 (per instance)	36 (per instance)	10	12	645	1512
Progress Bar (█)	24 (per instance)	36 (per instance)	12	16	1050	2452
Radio Button (█)	26 (per instance)	44 (per instance)	14	20	993	2632
Slider (█) / Scroll Bar (█)	32 (per instance)	44 (per instance)	20	24	2094	5720
Static Text (█)	22 (per instance)	36 (per instance)	8	12	747	1884
Text Entry (█)	34 (per instance), (24 per key)	52 (per instance)	22	28	2484	6376
Window (█)	24 (per instance)	40 (per instance)	2	4	804	1996

The heap is a dynamic memory requirement. It is released when screen is destroyed. Please consider screen with maximum

number of objects to calculate worse case RAM requirement. If for worse case you have 6 buttons, 2 sliders and 2 edit box on screen that utilizes three style schemes then worse case dynamic memory requirement will be  $6 \times 28 + 2 \times 32 + 2 \times 26 + 3 \times 20 = 344$  bytes. The RAM requirement in column 4 doesn't change based on number of instances. If object is included in code then it will take fix amount of RAM irrespective of its usage.

Each font may require 7 – 10KB of program memory. This is for English fonts. This requirement may change for other languages with additional characters.

Images require additional memory. The memory requirement for images depends on color depth and size.

The fonts and images can be stored in internal memory or external memory. The external memory can be anything serial EEPROM, parallel Flash, SD card etc. The application provides physical interface code for these devices.

## Previous Versions Log

### v3.04 (2012-02-15)

New:

- Font Table is updated to version 2 to accommodate anti-alias font, and extended glyph.
- Added anti-aliasing support for fonts (2bpp). See Primitive demo for an example.
- Added extended-glyph support for fonts. See demo in the AppNote demo - AN1182, This demo now includes Hindi and Thai font.
- Added 32-bit CRC code for resources to be placed in external memory. This CRC value can be used to verify if the data in external memory is valid or not. Refer to Graphics Resource Converter release notes for details. Demos (🔗) that uses external memory as a resource are now checking the CRC value, and if invalid, automatically requests for external memory resource programming.
- Added new demos specific to PIC24FJ256DA210:
- Elevator Demo - This demo shows an elevator status monitor that indicates the current location of the elevator car.
- RCCGPU-IPU Demo - formerly PIC24F\_DA Demo. This demo shows how RCCGPU and IPU modules are used.
- Color Depth Demo - This demo shows how 1bpp, 4bpp and 8 bpp color depths applications are implemented.
- Remote Control Demo - This demo shows how a universal remote control can be implemented using RF4CE communication protocol. This demo also integrates the MRF24J40MA (a certified 2.4 GHz IEEE 802.15.4 radio transceiver module) for sending RF4CE messages to the paired device.
- Added driver for Solomon Systech 132x64 OLED/PLED Display Controller SSD1305

Changes:

- Modified Resistive Touch Screen calibration. Now the calibration stores the 8 touch points to support large touch panels.
- Modified 4-wire Resistive Touch Screen driver to support build time setting of single samples and auto-sampling of resistive touch inputs.
- Naming of internal and external resource files (files that define fonts and images) in most demos are now standardized to use the same naming convention.
- Support for Graphics PICTail v2 (AC164127) is now discontinued.
- Merged "JPEG" demo and "Image Decoders" demo to "Image Decoder" demo.
- Graphics Resource Converter upgrade (Version 3.17.47) - refer to "Graphics Resource Converter Help.pdf" located in <Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\grc for details.
- External Memory Programmer upgrade (Version 1.00.01) - refer to "External Memory Programmer Help.pdf" located in <Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\memory\_programmer for details.

Fixes:

- Fix PushRectangle() issue where one line of pixel is not being updated.
- Fix TextEntry widget issue where the string is not displayed when the allocated string buffer length is equal to the maximum string length set in the widget.
- Fonts maximum character height is now set to 2^16.

*Deprecated Items:*

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE ([🔗](#))
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA ([🔗](#))
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH ([🔗](#))
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM ([🔗](#))
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA ([🔗](#))
- EEPROM.h and EEPROM.c are replaced by the following files:
  - MCHP25LC256.c - source code
  - MCHP25LC256.h - header file
- in the HardwareProfile.h add #define USE\_MCHP25LC256 to use the new driver.

*Migration Changes:*

- For existing code that wants to use the new anti-aliased fonts or extended glyph features: regenerate the font tables using the "Graphics Resource Converter" with the check box for the required feature set to be enabled. For anti-aliased fonts, add the macro #define USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS ([🔗](#)) in the GraphicsConfig.h

*Known Issues:*

- Extended glyph for certain font (such as Thai) when used with Static text widget is clipped. Future version will add additional vertical text alignment to the static text widget
- Anti-aliasing and extended glyph features are not supported when using PIC24FJ256DA210 CHRGPU.
- SPI flash programming on the Epson S1D13517 PICtail board Rev 1.1 is not always reliable, the S1D13517 demo no longer uses external memory flash in the example.
- When using PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM with Explorer 15 board with a 5v Lumex LCD display, the S1D13517 demo does not run correctly.

**v3.03 (v3.02)***New:*

- Added custom video playback from SD Card in SSD1926 Demo. Video frames are formatted to RGB565 format.
- Added support for 1bpp, 4bpp and 8 bpp color depth on Chart ([🔗](#)) widget.
- Added support for Display Boards from Semitron
- Seiko 35QVW1T
- Seiko 43WVW1T

*Changes:*

- Maximum font height is now 256 pixels.
- Modified EditBox behavior
- Caret is now by default enabled.
- Caret can now be shown even if USE\_FOCUS ([🔗](#)) is disabled.
- Applications can now respond to touchscreen event on EditBoxes when USE\_FOCUS ([🔗](#)) is disabled.
- Modified resistive touchscreen calibration sequence.
- Graphics Resource Converter upgrade (Version 3.8.21) - refer to "Graphics Resource Converter Help.pdf" located in <Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\grc for details.
- External Memory Programmer upgrade (Version 1.00.01) - refer to "External Memory Programmer Help.pdf" located in <Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\memory\_programmer for details.

*Fixes:*

- Fix Low Cost Controller display driver issue when run with Resistive Touch Screen driver that uses single samples.
- Fix issue on PIC24FJ256DA210 display driver PutImage ([🔗](#)())'s issue when using palette on 4 bpp and 1 bpp images.
- Fix issue on PIC24FJ256DA210 display driver PutImage ([🔗](#)())'s missing lines when the image last pixel row or column falls on the edge of the screen.

- Fix Resistive Touch Screen driver issue on rotated screens.
- Fix GetImageHeight () GetImageWidth () issues for images that are RLE compressed.
- EPMP module is now disabled when memory range defined for display buffer is located in internal memory.
- Add default color definitions in gfxcolors.h for 1bpp, 4bpp 8bpp and 16 bpp. Added back legacy colors.
- Fix HX8347 driver WritePixel() macro when using 16bit PMP mode.
- Fix PIC24FJ256DA210 display driver issue on source data (continuous and discontinuous data) when doing block copies of memory using RCCGPU.

*Deprecated Items:*

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE ([Link](#))
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA ([Link](#))
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH ([Link](#))
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM ([Link](#))
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA ([Link](#))
- EEPROM.h and EEPROM.c are replaced by the following files:
  - MCHP25LC256.c - source code
  - MCHP25LC256.h - header file
- in the HardwareProfile.h add #define USE\_MCHP25LC256 to use the new driver.

*Migration Changes:*

- EditBox widget's caret behavior is now by default enabled when USE\_FOCUS ([Link](#)) is set. To disable, ignore all messages for the edit box by returning a zero when in GOLMsgCallback ([Link](#)()).

*Known Issues:*

- PutImage () does not work when using PIC24FJ256DA210 and look up table is used on images located at EDS memory with color depth less than 8bpp.
- External Memory Programmer utility does not work with Graphics PICTail v2 (AC164127)
- When using PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM with Explorer 15 board with a 5v Lumex LCD display, the S1D13517 demo does not run correctly.
- Font tables are limited to 256 pixel character height.

## v3.02

*New:*

- Added custom video playback from SD Card in SSD1926 Demo. Video frames are formatted to RGB565 format.
- Added support for 1bpp, 4bpp and 8 bpp color depth on Chart ([Link](#)) widget.
- Added support for Display Boards from Semitron
- Seiko 35QVW1T
- Seiko 43WVW1T

*Changes:*

- Maximum font height is now 256 pixels.
- Modified EditBox behavior
- Caret is now by default enabled.
- Caret can now be shown even if USE\_FOCUS ([Link](#)) is disabled.
- Applications can now respond to touchscreen event on EditBoxes when USE\_FOCUS ([Link](#)) is disabled.
- Modified resistive touchscreen calibration sequence.
- Graphics Resource Converter upgrade (Version 3.8.21) - refer to "Graphics Resource Converter Help.pdf" located in <Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\grc for details.
- External Memory Programmer upgrade (Version 1.00.01) - refer to "External Memory Programmer Help.pdf" located in

<Install Directory>\Microchip Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\bin\memory\_programmer for details.

*Fixes:*

- Fix issue on PIC24FJ256DA210 display driver PutImage (§)()'s missing lines when the image last pixel row or column falls on the edge of the screen.
- Fix Resistive Touch Screen driver issue on rotated screens.
- Fix GetImageHeight (§)() GetImageWidth (§)() issues for images that are RLE compressed.
- EPMP module is now disabled when memory range defined for display buffer is located in internal memory.
- Add default color definitions in gfxcolors.h for 1bpp, 4bpp 8bpp and 16 bpp. Added back legacy colors.
- Fix HX8347 driver WritePixel() macro when using 16bit PMP mode.
- Fix PIC24FJ256DA210 display driver issue on source data (continuous and discontinuous data) when doing block copies of memory using RCCGPU.

*Deprecated Items:*

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE (§)
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (§)
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH (§)
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM (§)
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (§)
- EEPROM.h and EEPROM.c are replaced by the following files:
  - MCHP25LC256.c - source code
  - MCHP25LC256.h - header file
- in the HardwareProfile.h add #define USE\_MCHP25LC256 to use the new driver.

*Migration Changes:*

- EditBox widget's caret behavior is now by default enabled when USE\_FOCUS (§) is set. To disable, ignore all messages for the edit box by returning a zero when in GOLMsgCallback (§)().

*Known Issues:*

- PutImage (§)() does not work when using PIC24FJ256DA210 and look up table is used on images located at EDS memory with color depth less than 8bpp.
- External Memory Programmer utility does not work with Graphics PICTail v2 (AC164127)
- When using PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM with Explorer 15 board with a 5v Lumex LCD display, the S1D13517 demo does not run correctly.
- Font tables are limited to 256 pixel character height.

**v3.01 (v3.00)**

*New:*

- Graphics External Memory Programmer ported to java version.
- Two options to program boards:
  - UART option if the board supports UART interface
  - USB option if the board support USB device interface
- when installing the USB drivers for the programmer utility Use the drivers located in "<install directory>\Microchip\Utilities\USB Drivers\MPLABComm"
- For detailed usage, please refer to the External Programmer help file
- Added Analog Clock (§) widget.
- Added new driver Epson S1D13517 display driver with additional driver features:
  - Gradient
  - Alpha Blending

- 16/24 bits per pixel (bpp)
- Added new Graphics PICtail Plus Epson S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)
- Added new Graphics Display Truly 5.7" 640x480 Board (AC164127-8)
- Added new Graphics Display Truly 7" 800x480 Board (AC164127-9)
- Added 24bpp support.
- Added a specific PIC24FJ256DA210 demo, PIC24F\_DA
- Graphics Resource Converter - refer to the Graphics Resource Converter help file for release note information.
- New PIC32MX Low-Cost Controllerless Graphics PICtail Board (AC164144)
- Added Run Length Encoding (RLE) compression for bitmap images.
- RLE4 - compression for 4-bit palette (16 color) images
- RLE8 - compression for 8-bit palette (256 color) images
- Added Transparency feature for PutImage (■)() functions in Primitive Layer. For Driver Layer, this feature is enabled in the following drivers:
  - mchpGfxDrv - Microchip Graphics Controller Driver
  - SSD1926 - Solomon Systech Display Controller Driver
- Added new demo for Graphics PICtail Plus Epson S1D13517 Board (S1D13517 Demo)
- Added AR1020 Resistive Touch Screen Controller beta support.
- Added support for MikroElektronika "mikroMMB for PIC24" board.
- Added DisplayBrightness (■)() function for display drivers that have an option to control the display back light.
- MPLAB X demo project support (BETA)
- Tested with MPLAB X Beta 6
- Each demo project contains multiple configuration schemes
- The graphics object layer uses a default scheme structure. If the application wishes to use a different default scheme, the application will need to define GFX\_SCHEMEDEFAULT in GraphicsConfig header file.

*Changes:*

- Relocated all Graphics Demo projects under Graphics directory (<install directory>/Graphics).
- Works with Graphics Display Designer version 2.1
- Works with Graphics Resource Converter version 3.3
- Removed IPU decoding from the Primitive demo
- Removed ImageFileConverter application from Image Decoder demo
- Use Graphics Resource Converter to generate output for the demo.
- Shorten file name by using abbreviated names
- Refer to abbreviations.htm in the Microchip help directory for details
- Change the "Alternative Configurations" directory in the demos to "Configs"
- Changed the "Precompiled Demos (■)" directory in the demos to "Precompiled Hex"
- Combined all application note demos (AN1136, AN1182, AN1227 and AN1246) into one demo project (AppNotes).
- Modified External Memory and JPEG demos to include USB device mode to program external flash memory.
- Moved the location of the COLOR\_DEPTH (■) setting from the HardwareProfile.h to the GraphicsConfig.h
- Removed USE\_DRV\_FUNCTIONNAME (example USE\_DRV\_LINE to implement the Line() function in the driver) option to implement Primitive Layer functions in the Driver Layer. The Primitive Layer functions are now modified to have weak attributes, so when the driver layer implements the same function, the one in the driver will be used at build time.
- Modified HardwareProfile.h for Graphics demo boards and development Platforms.
- When using Resistive Touch Screen: add macro USE\_TOUCHSCREEN\_RESISTIVE
- When using AR1020 as the touch screen controller: add macro USE\_TOUCHSCREEN\_AR1020

- When using SPI Flash Memory (SST25VF016) in Graphics Development Boards: add macro USE\_SST25VF016
- When using Parallel Flash Memory (SST39LF400) in PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board: add macro USE\_SST39LF400
- When using Parallel Flash Memory (SST39LF400) in PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board: add macro USE\_SST39LF400
- Added function pointers for Non-Volatile Memories when used in the Demos (§).
- NVM\_SECTORERASE\_FUNC - function pointer to sector erase function.
- NVM\_WRITE\_FUNC - function pointer to write function.
- NVM\_READ\_FUNC - function pointer to read function.
- Display Driver Layer architecture is changed. Refer to Adding New Device Driver (§) for new requirements.
- Modified Resistive Touch Driver calibration
- In the PIC24FJ256DA210 driver, CopyWindow (§)() is modified to CopyBlock (§)().

*Fixes:*

- Fixed issue on vertical Progress Bar (§) rendering.
- Updated demos Google map and JPEG to use the proper GFX\_RESOURCE (§) identifiers for JPEG resources
- HX8347 driver now compiles and works with 'mikroMMB for PIC24'
- Bug fixes in the digital meet and cross hair widgets
- Removed references to the PIC24 configuration bit COE\_OFF.
- Fixed issue on PutImage (§)() when using PIC24FJ256DA210 and look up table is used on images located at internal or external SPI flash with color depth less than 8bpp.
- Fixed issue on Line() in the SSD1926 and mchpGfxDrv driver files. The stored coordinates after a successful rendering of a line will be at the end point (x2,y2).

*Deprecated Items:*

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE (§)
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (§)
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH (§)
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM (§)
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (§)

*Migration Changes:*

- DisplayDriver.c is not used to select the display driver (the file is not a part of the graphics library release package).
- The application should include the driver(s) in the project. Multiple driver files can be included in one project because the hardware profile will define the driver and only that driver's source code will be used.
- For example, a project may be designed to use the Microchip's PIC24FJ256DA210 graphics controller and the SSD1926 depending on the hardware profile used. The project will include the following source files, SSD1926.c and mchpGfxDrv.c, among the graphics source files. The hardware profile will contain the following macros, GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 (§) and GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 (§), to select the SSD1926 and Microchip's PIC24FJ256DA210 graphics controller, respectively.
- When using PIC24FJ256DA210, the driver files are now changed to:
  - mchpGfxDrv.c - source code
  - mchpGfxDrv.h - header file
  - mchpGfxDrvBuffer.c - source code that declares display buffer, work areas and cache areas for IPU operations in EDS.
- The touch screen drivers in the "Board Support Package" directory are renamed to:
  - TouchScreenResistive.c - internal resistive touch source code
  - TouchScreenResistive.h - internal resistive touch header file
  - TouchScreenAR1020.c - external AR1020 touch source code
  - TouchScreenAR1020.h - external AR1020 touch header file

- The two original files (TouchScreen.c and TouchScreen.h) are still needed since they are defining common interfaces to resistive touch drivers.
- When using the internal resistive touch module, the project will contain TouchScreenResistive.c and TouchScreen.c. All modules that reference touch screen APIs will include TouchScreen.h header file.
- When using the external AR1020 touch module, the project will contain TouchScreenAR1020.c and TouchScreen.c. All modules that reference touch screen APIs will include TouchScreen.h header file.
- The touch screen initialization routine API has changed. The new TouchInit API has four parameters passed. Please refer to the API definition for more details.
- When using the Potentiometer on the graphics development boards, include in your project the following files found in the "Board Support Package" directory :
  - TouchScreenResistive.c - source code
  - TouchScreenResistive.h - header file
  - Potentiometer.h - contains the APIs for the A/D interface.
- EEPROM.h and EEPROM.c are going to be deprecated. Use the two new files:
  - MCHP25LC256.c - source code
  - MCHP25LC256.h - header file
- in the HardwareProfile.h add #define USE\_MCHP25LC256 to use the new driver.
- A SPI driver has been created to support projects with multiple devices on one SPI channel.
- Projects will need to include the source file drv\_spi.c in projects that use devices on a SPI channel.
- SPI Flash initialization routines will need to pass a DRV\_SPI\_INIT\_DATA structure. This structure defines the SPI control and bit rate used by the SPI Flash module.
- The COLOR\_DEPTH (█) macro has been moved from the hardware profile header file to the GraphicsConfig.h header file.
- For project migration please refer the graphics demos for examples.

#### Known Issues:

- PutImage (█)() does not work when using PIC24FJ256DA210 and look up table is used on images located at EDS memory with color depth less than 8bpp.
- PutImage (█)() of when using PIC24FJ256DA210 for 8bpp images is missing the last row and last column of the bitmap when the image is from external memory, look up table is used and the screen is rotated 90 degrees.
- When compiling the Analog Clock source code with C30 v3.24 the optimization setting must be set to 0 (none).
- External Memory Programmer utility does not work with Graphics PICTail v2 (AC164127)
- When using PIC24FJ256GB210 PIM with Explorer 15 board with a 5v Lumex LCD display, the S1D13517 demo does not run correctly.
- Font tables are limited to 256 pixel character height. For fonts generated for external memory, the maximum height limitation is 128 pixels.

#### v2.11

##### New:

- Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) ported to java version.
- Added support for Inflate Processing Unit (IPU) and Character Processing Unit (CHRGPU) of the Microchip Graphics Module implemented in PIC24FJ256DA210.
- Added new "Google Map Demo" for PIC32MX795F512L and PIC24FJ256DA210 device.
- Added SST39LF400 Parallel Flash Memory driver in "Board Support Package". This is the driver for the parallel flash on the "PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board".
- Added demo support for PIC32 MultiMedia Expansion Board (DM320005).
- Added GFX\_IMAGE\_HEADER (█) structure. This structure defines how the image(s) are accessed and processed by the Graphics Library.
- Added a third option (#define XCHAR (█) unsigned char) on the XCHAR (█) usage. This is provided as an option to use characters with IDs above 127 and below 256. With this option, European fonts that uses characters with character IDs

above 127 and below 256 can now be generated and used in the library.

- Added a scheme to replace the default font GOLFDefault (🔗) in the library with any user defined fonts. Refer to "Changing the default Font (🔗)" for details.

#### *Changes:*

- Added compile switches to all drivers in "Board Support Package" for options to compile out when not used in specific projects.
- Replaced TYPE\_MEMORY with GFX\_RESOURCE (🔗) type enumeration and expanded the enumeration for graphics resources (such as images and fonts). GFX\_RESOURCE (🔗) type will determine the source and the data format of the resource (compressed or uncompressed).
- Changes on the macros used on the "Graphics JPEG Demo":

```
// Valid values of the first field for JPEG_FLASH and JPEG_EXTERNAL structures
#define FILE_JPEG_FLASH      2    // the JPEG file is located in internal flash
#define FILE_JPEG_EXTERNAL   3    // the JPEG file is located in external memory
```

to

```
// Valid values of the first field for JPEG_FLASH and JPEG_EXTERNAL structures
#define FILE_JPEG_FLASH      0    // the JPEG file is located in internal flash
#define FILE_JPEG_EXTERNAL   1    // the JPEG file is located in external memory
```

- Added function pointers to GOL structure OBJ\_HEADER (🔗). These function pointers makes it easier to add user created objects in the Graphics Library.
- DRAW\_FUNC (🔗) - function pointer to object drawing function.
- FREE\_FUNC (🔗) - function pointer to object free function. Only for objects that needs free routines to effectively free up memory used by the object create function.
- MSG\_FUNC (🔗) - function pointer to object message function.
- MSG\_DEFAULT\_FUNC (🔗) - function pointer to object default message function.
- Merged "Graphics External Memory Demo" and "Graphics External Memory Programmer" into one demo "Graphics External Memory Programmer and Demo".

#### *Fixes:*

- TouchScreen driver now checks display orientation and adjusts the touch to be aligned to the display orientation.
- Fixed GOLFFocusNext() issue on list that does not contain an object that can be focused.
- Removed redundant code in GOLRedrawRec (🔗)().
- Added an option in XCHAR (🔗) to use unsigned char.

#### *Deprecated Items:*

- TYPE\_MEMORY - replaced by GFX\_RESOURCE (🔗)
- EXTDATA - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (🔗)
- BITMAP\_FLASH - replaced by IMAGE\_FLASH (🔗)
- BITMAP\_RAM - replaced by IMAGE\_RAM (🔗)
- BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - replaced by GFX\_EXTDATA (🔗)

#### *Migration Changes:*

- To use drivers located in "Board Support Package" directory, add the USE\_DRIVERNAME macro in application code (in the demos these are added in the HardwareProfile.h) to include the drivers. Refer to the specific driver code for the correct USE\_DRIVERNAME macro name.
- The new version of the Graphics Resource Converter generates graphics application resources (fonts and images) using the new GFX\_IMAGE\_HEADER (🔗) structure for images and new GFX\_RESOURCE (🔗) type defines to specify location of the resources. Because of this, some structures are deprecated and replaced with more appropriate structures. To remove the deprecation warnings, regenerate the fonts and images files using the new Graphics Resource Converter.

#### *Known Issues:*

- Graphics SSD1926 JPEG and SD Card Demo does not support Graphics Display Powertip 4.3" 480x272 Board (PH480272T\_005\_I11Q). As is, there's not enough spare memory space to carry out the hardware JPEG decoding operation by the SSD1926. A potential work around is to reduce the active display area size to reserve more memory

space for the JPEG decoding operation.

- SSD1926 hardware acceleration for eclipse is disabled due to missing pixels at Angle 0.
- PIC32MX460 PIM (not Starter Kit) does not support 16-bit PMP mode with Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3 (SSD1926) Board. It only supports 8-bit PMP mode. This is due to pin mapping conflicts on the boards.
- This version of Graphics Library is not compatible with Graphics Display Designer v2.0.0.9c

## v2.10

New:

- Added new demo "Graphics Object Layer Palette Demo" for PIC24FJ256DA210 device.
- Added support for PIC32MX795F512L device.
- Added documentation for the Grid (grid) object.
- Added Vertical Mode to Progress Bar (progress).
- Added MicrochipGraphicsModule display driver.
- Added "Board Support Package" directory. This contains common hardware drivers for Microchip demo boards.
- Added OBJ\_MSG\_PASSIVE as a translated message on the slider to detect a touch screen release message. This has no effect on the state of the slider. Applications that does not qualify for touch press and touch move event must now qualify the messages for the slider object to avoid processing messages for touch release.

Changes:

- To improve speed modified gfpmp.c and gfpmp.c to be inline functions in gfpmp.h and gfpmp.h respectively.
- Changed HX8347A.c to HX8347.c (both the D and A driver version is implemented in the new file). To select set the DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER to be HX8347A or HX8347D in the hardware profile.
- Modified malloc() and free() to be defined by macros in GraphicsConfig.h file. For applications using Operating System, the macros can be redefined to match the OS malloc and free functions. The default settings are:
  - #define GFX\_malloc (size) malloc(size)
  - #define GFX\_free (ptr) free(ptr)
- Merged GOL Demo English and Chinese demo into one demo.
- Removed the macro "GRAPHICS\_HARDWARE\_PLATFORM". This is specific to Microchip demo boards.
- Abstracted the timer from the touch screen driver.
- Moved the following hardware drivers to the "Board Support Package" directory
  - Touch screen driver: TouchScreen.c and TouchScreen.h files.
  - SPI Flash driver: SST25VF016.c and SST25VF016.h files.
  - Graphics PICtail Version 2 Parallel Flash driver: SST39VF040.c and SST39VF040.h files.
  - Explorer 16 SPI EEPROM Flash driver: EEPROM.c and EEPROM.h files.
  - Graphics PICtail Version 2 Beeper driver: Beep.c and Beep.h files.
- Revised the Seiko 3.5" 320x240 display panel schematic to revision B. Corrected the pin numbering on the hirose connector. See "Schematic for Graphics Display Seiko 3.5in 320x240 Board Rev B.pdf" file on the \Microchip\Solutions\Microchip\Graphics\Documents\Schematics directory.

Fixes:

- Fixed TextEntry object issue on output string maximum length.
- Fixed Slider (slider) increment/decrement issue on Keyboard messages.
- Fixed GOLGetFocusNext (grid) bug when none of the objects in the list can be focused.

Migration Changes:

- pmp interface files are converted to header files and functions are now inline functions to speed up pmp operations. Projects must be modified to:
  - include gfpmp.h and gfpmp.h source files in the project.
  - gfpmp.c file is retained but will only contain the definition of the EPMP pmp\_data.

- Converted the macro: #define GRAPHICS\_HARDWARE\_PLATFORM HARDWARE\_PLATFORM where HARDWARE\_PLATFORM is one of the supported hardware platforms defined in the section Graphics Hardware Platform to just simply #define HARDWARE\_PLATFORM.
- Since the timer module is abstracted from the touch screen driver in the "Board Support Package", the timer or the module that calls for the sampling of the touch screen must be implemented in the application code. Call the function TouchProcessTouch() to sample the touch screen driver if the user has touched the touch screen or not.

Example:

```
// to indicate the hardware platform used is the
// Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3
#define GFX_PICTAIL_V3
```

- Projects which uses the following hardware drivers will need to use the latest version of the drivers located in the "Board Support Package" directory.
  - Touch screen driver: TouchScreen.c and TouchScreen.h files.
  - SPI Flash driver: SST25VF016.c and SST25VF016.h files.
  - Graphics PICtail Version 2 Parallel Flash driver: SST39VF040.c and SST39VF040.h files.
  - Explorer 16 SPI EEPROM Flash driver: EEPROM.c and EEPROM.h files.
  - Graphics PICtail Version 2 Beeper driver: Beep.c and Beep.h files.
- In the TouchScreen driver, the timer initialization and timer interrupt sub-routine (ISR) are abstracted out of the driver. The initialization and the ISR should be defined in the application code. the TouchProcessTouch() function in the driver should be called in the ISR to process the touch.

*Known Issues:*

- Graphics SSD1926 JPEG and SD Card Demo does not support Graphics Display Powertip 4.3" 480x272 Board (PH480272T\_005\_I11Q). As is, there's not enough spare memory space to carry out the hardware JPEG decoding operation by the SSD1926. A potential work around is to reduce the active display area size to reserve more memory space for the JPEG decoding operation.
- SSD1926 hardware acceleration for eclipse is disabled due to missing pixels at Angle 0.
- PIC32MX460 PIM (not Starter Kit) does not support 16-bit PMP mode with Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3 (SSD1926) Board. It only supports 8-bit PMP mode. This is due to pin mapping conflicts on the boards.
- This version of Graphics Library is not compatible with Graphics Display Designer v2.0.0.9c

## v2.01

*Changes:*

- Modified drivers for abstraction of pmp and epmp interfaces. they have a common header file DisplayDriverInterface.h.
- DisplayDriverInterface.h is added to the Graphics.h file.
- DelayMs() API is abstracted from the driver files. TimeDelay.c and TimeDelay.h is added.

*Fixes:*

- Fixed background color bug in StaticText and Digital Meter (█) object.
- Fixed ListBox LbSetFocusedItem (█)() bug on empty lists.
- Graphics SSD1926 JPEG and SD Card Demo is fixed to support SD card of size 2GB or bigger

*Migration Changes:*

- pmp interface is abstracted from the driver. Projects must be modified to:
  - include gfxpmp.c and gfxepmp.c source files in the project.
  - DelayMs() is abstracted from the drivers.
  - Add TimeDelay.c source file in the project.
  - Add TimeDelay.h header file in the project.

## v2.00

*Changes:*

- "Graphics PICtail Board Memory Programmer" has been renamed to "Graphics External Memory Programmer".

- "Bitmap & Font Converter" utility has been renamed to "Graphics Resource Converter".
- Font format has changed. The bit order has been reversed. Necessary for cross compatibility.
- Added 2 new directories in each demo
- Precompiled Demos (🔗) - this directory contains all pre-compiled demos for all hardware and PIC devices supported by the demo.
- Alternative Configurations - this directory contains all the Hardware Profiles for all hardware and PIC devices supported by the demo.
- Moved all hardware and display parameters from GraphicsConfig.h to HardwareProfile.h.HardwareProfile.h references a hardware profile file in "Alternative Configurations" directory based on the PIC device selected.

#### Fixes:

- Fixed BtnSetText (🔗)() bug when using Multi-Line Text in Buttons.
- Fixed SDSectorWrite() function in SSD1926\_SDCard.c in the "Graphics SSD1926 JPEG and SD Card Demo".

#### Migration Changes:

- Move all hardware and display parameters from GraphicsConfig.h to HardwareProfile.h
- panel type, display controller, vertical and horizontal resolution, front and back porches, synchronization signal timing and polarity settings etc.
- GRAPHICS\_PICTAIL\_VERSION,1,2,250,3 options are now deprecated, new usages are:
  - #define GRAPHICS\_HARDWARE\_PLATFORM GFX\_PICTAIL\_V1
  - #define GRAPHICS\_HARDWARE\_PLATFORM GFX\_PICTAIL\_V2
  - #define GRAPHICS\_HARDWARE\_PLATFORM GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 (🔗)
- The font format has changed, run Graphics Resource Converter to regenerate font files, the bit order is reversed. No legacy support is provided. Primitive/Driver layers now expects the new format.
- The initialization sequence of GOLInit (🔗)() relative to the flash memory initialization is sensitive due to the sharing of hardware resources, i.e. SPI or PMP. Care should be taken to make sure the peripheral and I/O port settings are correct when accessing different devices.
- A number of configuration options have been moved from GraphicsConfig.h to HardwareProfile.h, this is required to maintain a more logical flow.
- HardwareProfile.h now points to one of many Alternative Configuration files, each one specific to a certain hardware board setup.
- DelayMs routine in SH1101A-SSD1303.c/h is now a private function, no public API is exposed. In future releases, DelayMS will be removed from all drivers and be replaced by an independent module.
- GenericTypeDefs.h has been updated with new definitions, this should not impact any legacy codes.

#### v1.75b

##### Changes:

- None.

##### Fixes:

- Fixed Line2D() bug in SSD1926.c.
- Fixed remainder error in JPEG decoding in JpegDecoder.c.
- Fixed pinout labels for reference design schematic "Schematic for Graphics Display Powertip 4.3in 480x272 Board Rev 2.pdf".

#### Migration Changes:

- None.

#### v1.75 Release (July 10, 2009)

##### Changes:

- Added 2D acceleration support for controllers with accelerated primitive drawing functions.
- Added Digital Meter (🔗) Widget for fast display refresh using fixed width fonts.

- Added support for selected PIC24H Family of devices.
- Added support for selected dsPIC33 Family of devices.
- Updated all primitive functions to return success or fail status when executed. This is used to evaluate if the primitive function has finished rendering.
- Updated Solomon Systech SSD1926 driver to use 2D accelerated functions.
- New Display Controller Driver supported:
  - Ilitek ILI9320
  - Solomon Systech SSD1289
  - Himax HX8347
  - Renesas R61580
- New demos are added:
  - PIC24F Starter Kit Demo
  - PIC24H Starter Kit Demo 1
  - Graphics JPEG Demo using internal and external flash memory for image storage
  - Graphics SSD1926 JPEG and SD Card Demo using SD Card for image storage
  - Added JPEG support to "Font and Bitmap Converter Utility".
  - Modified Button (■) Widget for new options:
  - Use multi-line text (set USE\_BUTTON\_MULTI\_LINE (■))
  - Detect continuous touch screen press event using messaging
  - Added Touch Screen event EVENT\_STILLPRESS to support continuous press detection.
- New reference design schematics added:
  - Schematic for Graphics Display DisplayTech 3.2in 240x320 Board.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Newhaven 2.2in 240x320 with HX8347.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Seiko 3.5in 320x240 Board.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Displays DisplayTech and Truly 3.2in 240x320 with SSD1289.pdf
  - Schematic for ILI9320.pdf

#### Fixes:

- Fixed dimension calculation for quarter sized meter.

#### Migration Changes:

- When using accelerated primitive functions while USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG (■) is enabled, the accelerated primitive must be checked if it successfully rendered. Refer to the coding example (■) for details.
- Replaced LGDP4531\_R61505\_S6D0129\_S6D0139\_SPFD5408.c and LGDP4531\_R61505\_S6D0129\_S6D0139\_SPFD5408.h files with drvTFT001.c and drvTFT001.h respectively.

#### v1.65 Release (March 13, 2009)

##### Changes:

- Added support for the new Graphics PICtail™ Plus Daughter Board (AC164127-3). This new board comes in two components: the controller board and the display board. The display board uses RGB type displays driven by the controller board. This configuration allows easy replacement of the display glass.
- Added application note AN1246 "How to Create Widgets".
- New Display Controller Driver supported
- UltraChip UC1610
- New demos are added
- Graphics AN1246 Demo showing the TextEntry Widget.
- Graphics Multi-App Demo showing USB HID, USB MSD and SD MSD demos using the Microchip Graphics Library.

- Modified Meter (■) Widget for new options:
- Set Title and Value Font at creation time
- Added GOLGetFocusPrev (■)() for focus control on GOL Objects.
- Added work spaces to demo releases.
- Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board 1 is obsolete. All references to this board is removed from documentation.
- New reference design schematics added:
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Ampire 5.7in 320x240 Board Rev A.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Powertip 3.5in 320x240 Board Rev B.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Powertip 4.3in 480x272 Board Rev B.pdf
  - Schematic for Graphics Display Truly 3.5in 320x240 Board Rev A.pdf
  - Schematic for Truly TOD9M0043.pdf

Fixes:

- Fixed drawing bug on TextEntry Widget
- Added missing documentation on Chart (■) and Text Entry (■) Widgets

Migration Changes:

- none

**v1.60 Release (December 3, 2008)**

Changes:

- Added TextEntry Widget.
- Modified Meter (■) Widget for new options:
- Define different fonts for value and title displayed.
- Add option for resolution of one decimal point when displaying values.
- Add color options to all six arcs of the Meter (■).
- Meter (■) range is not defined by a minimum value and a maximum value.
- Added feature to a the Button (■) Widget to allow cancelling of press by moving away the touch and releasing from the Button (■)'s face.
- Added font sizes options of 3,4,5,6 & 7 in Font & Bitmap Converter Utility when converting fonts from TTF files.
- Enhanced the architecture of the Display Device Driver Layer.

Fixes:

- Fixed Font & Bitmap Converter Utility generation of reference strings to be set to const section.
- Fixed panel rendering to always draw the panel face color even if bitmaps are present.

Migration Changes:

- Added the following files in the Display Device Driver Layer to easily switch from one display driver to another.
  - DisplayDriver.h
  - DisplayDriver.c
- Modified implementation of GraphicsConfig.h file to support new Display Device Driver Layer architecture.
- Moved the definitions of pins used in device drivers implemented in all the demos to HardwareProfile.h file.
- EEPROM Driver
- Touch Screen Driver
- Beeper Driver
- Flash Memory Driver
- Display Drivers
- Modified GOL.c and GOL.h to include processing of TextEntry object when enabled by application.

**v1.52 Release (August 29, 2008)**

## Changes:

- Added Chart (■) Widget.
- Added Property State for Window (■) Widget. Text in Title Area can now be centered.
- Added Supplementary Library for Image Decoders.
- Added documentation of Default Actions on widgets.
- Replaced USE\_MONOCHROME compile switch with COLOR\_DEPTH (■) to define color depth of the display.
- Added GOL\_EMBOSS\_SIZE (■) to be user defined in GraphicsConfig.h.
- Simplified initialization code for SSD1906 driver.

## Fixes:

- Fixed touch screen algorithm.
- Fixed file path error in Font & Bitmap Converter Utility.

## Migration Changes:

- USE\_GOL (■) must be defined when using any Widgets.
- New include directory paths are added to demo projects:
  - ..\..\..\Your Project Directory Name
  - ..\..\Include
- Moved all driver files to new directory
- C files from ..\Microchip\Graphics to ..\Microchip\Graphics\Drivers
- GOL\_EMBOSS\_SIZE (■) can now be defined by the user in GraphicsConfig.h. If user does not define this in GraphicsConfig.h the default value in GOL.h is used.

**v1.4 Release (April 18, 2008)**

## Changes:

- Added full support for PIC32 families.
- Added Application Note demo on fonts.
- Added images for end designs using PIC devices.

## Fixes:

- Fixed GetPixel (■) error in SSD1906 Driver.
- Fixed SST39VF040 parallel flash driver reading instability.
- Fixed error in 64Kbytes rollover in utility conversion of bitmaps and SST39VF040 parallel flash driver.
- Fixed milli-second delay on PIC32.
- Fixed compile time option errors for PIC32.
- Fixed Graphics Object Layer Demo error in PIC32 when time and date are set.
- Fixed Picture (■) widget bug in detecting touchscreen in translating messages.

**v1.3 Release (March 07, 2008)**

## Changes:

- none

## Fixes:

- Fixed an inaccurate ADC reading problem with some Explorer 16 Development Boards that uses 5V LCD display.
- Editbox allocation of memory for text is corrected.
- Fix slider SetRange() bug.
- Set PIC32 configuration bits related to PLL to correct values.
- Touch screen portrait mode bug is fixed.

**v1.2 Release (February 15, 2008)**

Changes:

- Added support for Graphics PICtail Plus Board Version 2
- Added support for foreign language fonts
- Version 1.2 of the font and bitmap utility
- Support for multi-language scripts
- Support for generating font table from installed fonts
- Support to reduce font table size by removing unused characters
- Support to select between C30 and C32 compiler when generating bitmaps and font tables.
- Added Chinese version of Graphics Object Layer Demo.
- New Display Controller Drivers supported
- Solomon Systech SSD1906
- Orise Technology SPDF5408
- Replaced USE\_UNICODE compile switch to USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR (█) compile switch to define XCHAR (█) as 2-byte character.
- Added compile switches
- GRAPHICS\_PICTAIL\_VERSION - sets the PICtail board version being used.
- USE\_MONOCHROME – to enable monochrome mode.
- USE\_PORTRAIT - to enable the portrait mode of the display without changing the display driver files.
- Added beta support for PIC32 device

Fixes:

- Specification changes to List Box widget. Bitmap is added to List Box items.
- Fixed List Box LbDeleteList (█)() error in not resetting item pointer to NULL when items are removed.
- Editbox allocation of memory for text is corrected.
- Static Text multi-byte character failure is fixed.
- Bar (█)() function erroneous call to MoveTo (█)() is removed since it causes the drawing cursor to be displaced.
- Removed SCREEN\_HOR\_SIZE and SCREEN\_VER\_SIZE macros from documentation. Maximum X and Y sizes are to be obtained by GetMaxX (█)() and GetMaxY (█)() macros.

**v1.0 Release (November 1, 2007)**

Changes:

- Edit Box, List Box, Meter (█), Dial (█) widgets are added.
- Button (█) is modified. New options for the object are added.
- Modified OBJ\_REMOVE definition to OBJ\_HIDE (example BTN\_REMOVE to BTN\_HIDE (█)).
- Modified GOLPanelDraw (█)() function to include rounded panels.
- External memory support for the fonts and bitmaps is implemented.
- SSD1339 and LGDP4531 controllers support is added.
- Bevel (█)(), FillBevel (█)() and Arc (█)() functions are added.
- Modified Graphics Object Layer Demo.
- Added Graphics External Memory Demo & Graphics PICtail™ Board Memory Programmer Demo.
- Added Graphics Application Note (AN1136- How to use widgets.) Demo.

Fixes: none

**v0.93 Beta release (August 29, 2007)**

Changes: none

**Fixes:**

- In demo code the bitmap images couldn't be compiled without optimization. bmp2c.exe utility output is changed to fix this bug.
- In demo code "volatile" is added for global variables used in ISRs.

**v0.92 Beta release (July 25, 2007)****Changes:**

- Keyboard and side buttons support is added.
- Keyboard focus support is added.
- PutImage ([\[?\]](#)) parameters are changed. Instead of pointer to the bitmap image the pointer to BITMAP\_FLASH structure must be passed.
- GOLSuspend() and GOLResume() are removed.
- GOLMsg ([\[?\]](#)) doesn't check object drawing status. It should be called if GOL drawing is completed.
- GOLStartNewList() is replaced with GOLNewList ([\[?\]](#)).
- Line() function calls are replaced with Bar ([\[?\]](#)) function calls for vertical and horizontal lines.
- Parameter "change" is removed for SldIncVal() and SldDecVal() .
- Some optimization and cleanup.
- Slider ([\[?\]](#)) API is changed:
  - SldSetVal() is changed to SldSetPos ([\[?\]](#))()
  - SldGetVal() is changed to SldGetPos ([\[?\]](#))()
  - SldIncVal() is changed to SldIncPos ([\[?\]](#))()
  - SldDecVal() is changed to SldDecPos ([\[?\]](#))()
- SldCreate ([\[?\]](#)()) input parameter are changed:
  - "delta" changed to "res"

**Fixes:**

- PutImage ([\[?\]](#)()).
- Line().
- FillCircle ([\[?\]](#)()).
- For vertical slider the relation between thumb location and slider position is changed. For position = 0 thumb will be located at the bottom. For position = range it will be at the top.

**v0.9 Beta release (July 06, 2007)****Changes:**

- Background color support is removed.
- Non-blocking configuration for graphics primitives is added.
- GetImageWidth ([\[?\]](#)()), GetImageHeight ([\[?\]](#)()) are added.
- OutText ([\[?\]](#)()), OutTextXY ([\[?\]](#)()) and GetTextWidth ([\[?\]](#)()) functions are terminated by control characters (< 32).
- Graphics Objects Layer (GOL) is added.
- Button ([\[?\]](#)), Slider ([\[?\]](#)), Checkbox ([\[?\]](#)), Radio Button ([\[?\]](#)), Static Text, Picture ([\[?\]](#)) control, Progress Bar ([\[?\]](#)), Window ([\[?\]](#)), Group Box are implemented.
- Touch screen support is added.

**Fixes:**

- ReadFlashByte().
- GetTextWidth ([\[?\]](#)()).

**v0.1 (June 05, 2007)****Changes:**

- Initial release includes driver and graphic primitive layers only.
- Only driver for Samsung S6D0129 controller is available.

Fixes:

- None.

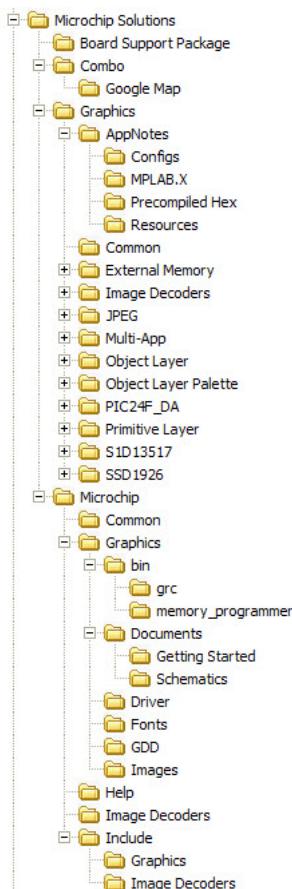
#### **Known Issues**

None

# 4 Getting Started

## Directory Structure

The Microchip Graphics Library installation follows the standard directory structure for all Microchip library solutions. Installing the library will give the following structure:



One of the demo subdirectories (example: Graphics or Combo) may become "*Your Applications Directory*" that will contain your application source code. You can add code and modules here that will use and interact with the library. The library specific folders are the following:

- The **Microchip** folder will contain the library components.
- The **Help** sub-folder under **Microchip** folder will contain this document (**Graphics Library Help.chm** file).
- The **Graphics** sub-folder under the **Microchip** folder is where the C files, documentation and utilities are located.
- Inside this **Graphics** sub-folder are the directories for the **Drivers**, **Documents**, **GDD**, **Images** and **bin** directories. It will also contain the directory for the **Image Decoders** source files.
- The **GDD** (Graphics Display Designer) directory contains the GDD project template. Use this to start projects using the Graphics Display Designer.
- The **bin** directory contains the Graphics Resource Converter utility and External Memory Programmer both implemented in java.
- The **Include** sub-folder under the **Microchip** folder will contain common header files to all Microchip library solutions.
- Another **Graphics** directory is included in the **Include** sub folder. This will hold the Graphics Library header files as well as the header files for the **Image Decoders**.
- The **Board Support Package** folder will contain hardware specific drivers that are common to the Microchip Demo

Boards (such as Explorer 16, display panels or PICtail™ Plus Daughter Boards).

All subdirectories and files under the **Microchip** directory should not be modified. In case your project will use more than one Microchip library solution, this directory will contain all the library files you install. Thus, it is important to maintain the files in this directory. The **Microchip Solutions** directory may become your "MyProjects" directory that will contain all your projects using the different Microchip solutions.

## How to Get Started

There are various ways to get started with Microchip Graphics Library:

1. Obtain Development Boards from the "Getting Started" section of the Microchip graphics website ([www.microchip.com/graphics](http://www.microchip.com/graphics)):
  1. Explorer 16 Starter Kit (DV164003) with any of the Graphics PICtail™ Plus Daughter Boards.
  2. PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DV164039) with any of the individual Graphics Display Boards.
  3. A PIC32 Starter Kit and Graphics LCD Controller PICtail™ Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5) with any of the individual Graphics Display Boards.
  4. A PIC32 Starter Kit and Graphics PICtail Plus Epson S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7) with any of the individual Graphics Display Boards.
  5. A PIC32 Starter Kit and Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).
2. Graphics PICtail™ Plus Daughter Board available:
  - AC164127-3 - Graphics PICtail Plus Daughter Board with Truly 3.2" Display Kit



- AC164127-5 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board. This board is the same board used in AC164127-3 PICtail Plus and Display Panel combo shown above.



- AC164127-7 - Graphics PICtail Plus Epson S1D13517 Board.



- AC164144 - Low-Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtail Plus Daughter Board.



- 3. Graphics Display Boards available:

- AC164127-4 - Graphics Display Truly 3.2" 240x320 Board



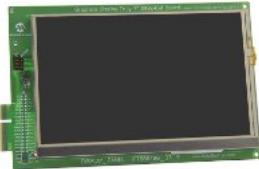
- AC164127-6 - Graphics Display Powertip 4.3" 480x272 Board



- AC164127-8 - Graphics Display Truly 5.7" 640x480 Board



- AC164127-9 - Graphics Display Truly 7" 800x480 Board



- AC164139 - Graphics Display Prototype Board



4. Refer to Web Seminar 4 on "Microchip Graphics Library Architecture" from the "Training and Support" section for an overview of the structure and the different layers of the library. It also gives a brief information on how to use the library.
5. Refer to Microchip's Regional Training Center class on Graphics Library:
  - [HIF 2131 – Designing with Microchip Graphics Library](#)
6. For a much detailed look on the usage, you can refer to the following application notes from the "Training and Support" section.
  - [AN1136 How to Use Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library](#). This application note introduces the basic functions needed to create and manage Widgets.
  - [AN1182 Fonts in the Microchip Graphics Library](#). This application note describes the format of the Microchip Graphics Library's font image. It also tells how to reduce the number of characters in a font and automate the creation of the character arrays referring to an application's strings.
  - [AN1227 Using a Keyboard with the Microchip Graphics Library](#). This application note describes how to implement a keyboard-based GUI.
  - [AN1246 How to Create Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library](#). This application note serves as a useful guide in creating customized Widgets. The essential components of a Widget are enumerated and described in this document. This application note also outlines the process of integrating the new Widget into the Graphics Library in order to utilize the already implemented routines for processing messages and rendering Widgets.
  - [AN1368 Developing Graphics Applications using PIC MCUs with Integrated Graphics Controller](#). This application note is

intended for engineers who are designing their first graphic application. It describes the basic definitions and jargons of graphics applications and it helps the engineer to understand the theory, necessary decision factors, hardware considerations, available microcontrollers and development tools.

- Finally, you can obtain the free licensed Microchip Graphics library also from the "Getting Started" section.



### How to Build Projects for the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board

- In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project set the hardware platform to PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board:

```
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD
```

- In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set the correct display controller and the display panel combination. Selecting the correct display panel will choose the correct parameter settings for the display. Examples (■) of these parameters are horizontal and vertical resolution, display orientation, vertical and horizontal pulse width, and front and back porch settings.

- When using the Truly 3.2" display on AC164127-4 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

- When using the Powertip 4.3" display on AC164127-6 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q
```

- In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set following (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the PMP interface
#define USE_16BIT_PMP
// set the Graphics Clock Divider that generates the Pixel clock.
// Refer to display data sheet for pixel clock frequency requirement
// and Family Reference Manual - Oscillator for details on GCLK divider (GCLKDIV).
#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 38
// set the display buffer start address.
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
// set the EPMP CS1 base address if using external memory on EPMP CS 1 space and its size
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE 0x40000ul
// set the EPMP CS2 base address if using external memory on EPMP CS 1 space and its size
#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00080000ul
#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE 0x80000ul
```

- In the project's GraphicsConfig.h set the color depth to the desired bpp value (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the color depth used
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```



### How to Build Projects for Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3:

1. In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project set the hardware platform to Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3:

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_V3
```

2. In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set the correct display controller and the display panel combination. Selecting the correct display panel will choose the correct parameter settings for the display. Examples (■) of these parameters are horizontal and vertical resolution, display orientation, vertical and horizontal pulse width, and front and back porch settings.

- When using the Truly 3.2" display on AC164127-4 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

- When using the Powertip 4.3" display on AC164127-6 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q
```

3. In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set following (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the hardware platform
#define EXPLORER_16
// set the PMP interface
#define USE_8BIT_PMP
```

4. In the project's GraphicsConfig.h set the color depth to the desired bpp value (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the color depth used
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```



### How to Build Projects for Graphics PICtail™ Plus Epson S1D13517 Board

1. In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project set the hardware platform to Graphics PICtail™ Plus Epson S1D13517 Board:

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_V3E
```

2. In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set the correct display controller and the display panel combination. Selecting the correct display panel will choose the correct parameter settings for the display. Examples (■) of these parameters are horizontal and vertical resolution, display orientation, vertical and horizontal pulse width, and front and back porch settings.

- When using the Truly 3.2" display on AC164127-4 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

- When using the Powertip 4.3" display on AC164127-6 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q
```

3. In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set following (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the hardware platform
#define EXPLORER_16
// set the PMP interface
#define USE_8BIT_PMP
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

- In the project's GraphicsConfig.h set the color depth to the desired bpp value (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the color depth used
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```



#### Low-Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtail Plus Daughter Board:

- In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project set the hardware platform to Low-Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtail Plus Daughter Board:

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_LCC
```

- In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set the correct display controller and the display panel combination. Selecting the correct display panel will choose the correct parameter settings for the display. Examples (■) of these parameters are horizontal and vertical resolution, display orientation, vertical and horizontal pulse width, and front and back porch settings.

- When using the Truly 3.2" display on AC164127-4 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

- When using the Powertip 4.3" display on AC164127-6 board

```
// set the display controller
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA
// set the display panel
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q
```

- In the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set following (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the hardware platform
#define EXPLORER_16 // or you can use PIC_SK if using Starter Kits
// set the PMP interface
#define USE_8BIT_PMP
```

- In the project's GraphicsConfig.h set the color depth to the desired bpp value (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the color depth used
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```



#### How to Build Projects for the Multimedia Expansion Board

- In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project set the hardware platform to Graphics PICtail™ Plus Epson S1D13517 Board:

```
#define MEB_BOARD
```

2. In the application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set the correct display controller.

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926
```

3. In the the same application specific HardwareProfile.h file of your project, set following (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the PMP interface
#define USE_8BIT_PMP
// set the Starter Kit used
#define PIC32_GP_SK // use generic PIC32 Starter Kit
or
#define PIC32_USB_SK // use PIC32 USB Starter Kit
or
#define PIC32_ETH_SK // use PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit
```

4. In the the project's GraphicsConfig.h set the color depth to the desired bpp value (Refer to each demo hardware profiles for examples):

```
// set the color depth used
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```

## Demo Projects

The Microchip Graphics Library documentation has several components that covers installation, customization and usage of the library. Several demo projects are included in the installation to help you get started. Detailed information on each demo project is available from the "Getting Started" help file located in each of the demo folders.

## Schematics

The library installation also includes schematics of currently supported controllers and glass. These can be found in the `../<install directory>/Microchip/Graphics/Documents/Schematics` directory.

- Schematic for Graphics Display Ampire 5.7in 320x240 Board Rev A.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Powertip 3.5in 320x240 Board Rev B.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Powertip 4.3in 480x272 Board Rev B.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Truly 3.2in 240x320 Board Rev 4.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Truly 3.5in 320x240 Board Rev A.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics LCD Controller PICtail SSD1926 Board Rev 2.pdf
- Schematic for Solomon Systech SSD1906.pdf
- Schematic for Truly GG1N1291UTSW-W-TP-E.pdf
- Schematic for Truly TFT-G240320UTSW-92W-TP.pdf
- Schematic for Truly TOD9M0043.pdf
- Schematic for Microtips MTF-T022BHNLP.pdf
- Schematic for Densitron TSR67802.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display DisplayTech 3.2in 240x320 Board.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Newhaven 2.2in 240x320 with HX8347.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Seiko 3.5in 320x240 Board.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Displays DisplayTech and Truly 3.2in 240x320 with SSD1289.pdf
- Schematic for ILI9320.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Prototype Board Rev 1.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Truly 5.7in 640x480 Board Rev 2.pdf
- Schematic for Graphics Display Truly 7in 800x480 Board Rev 2.pdf

- 
- Schematic for Graphics LCD Controller PICTail Plus S1D13517 Rev 1.1.pdf
  - Schematic for Low-Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics Board Rev 1.pdf
  - Schematic for PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board Rev 1.1.pdf

## Images

The library allows displaying 1bpp, 4bpp, 8bpp, 16bpp and 24bpp images. They can be located in program flash space or external memory. To convert the bitmap format file (BMP extension) or JPEG format file into source C file containing data array for internal memory or Intel hex file for external memory the “**Graphics Resource Converter**” included in the library installation can be used. Refer to the utility help file for details on usage.

## Fonts

The library operates with 8-bit character encoded strings. It covers languages defined in ISO 8859 standards. East Asian and any other languages support is available for UNICODE encoded fonts. Font can be stored in internal flash as an array in const section (this limits font image size by 32Kbytes) or can be located in external memory. To convert the font file into source C file containing data array for internal memory or Intel hex file for external memory the “**Graphics Resource Converter**” utility can be used. The utility allows importing raster font files (FNT extension) or true font files (TTF extension). Refer to the help built in the utility for details. Raster font files can be extracted from MS Windows bitmap font package file (FNT extension) or converted from true type font file (TTF extension) with a third party font editor. One such freeware editor Fony is available at <http://hukka.furtopia.org/>. Another example is <http://fontforge.sourceforge.net>.

The utility also allows reducing the generated fonts to include only the characters that the application will use. This can be done by using font filtering. Please refer to application note "AN1182: Fonts in the Microchip Graphics Library" from the "Training and Support" section of the Microchip graphics website for details of implementing reduced fonts.

## How to use the API Documentation

This help file includes the API description of the library. The way the API is structured is similar to the library layers.

1. The Device Driver Layer presents all the API included to initialize and use the display controller and the glass. This section also contains information on how to add new Device Driver.
2. The Graphics Primitive Layer is a hardware independent layer that contains the API for basic rendering functions. Use this section to render basic shapes like lines, rectangles, filled circle etc.
3. The Graphics Object Layer contains the API specific to each Widget type. Use this section to create and manage Widgets (■) as well as pages or screens of different Widgets (■). Messaging and rendering of Widgets (■) are also included in this section.

## Updates and News

Refer to the Microchip graphics website [www.microchip.com/graphics](http://www.microchip.com/graphics) for the latest version of the Microchip Graphics Library, webinars, application notes, FAQs and latest news and updates.

# 5 Demo Projects

Summary of demo projects that comes with the installation of the Microchip Graphics Library.

## 5.1 Demo Summary

This is the current list of demo projects released with the Graphics Library.

### Description

Demo Name	Description (see Note)
Primitive Layer	Shows how primitive functions are used.
Object Layer	Shows how objects are used with user messages interacting with objects.
Object Layer Palette	The same as the Object Layer demo but uses the Color Look Up Table of the Microchip Graphics Module.
External Memory	A simple demo showing how images and fonts from external memory are used in a graphics application.
Multi-App	A demo showing USB Framework, Memory Disk Drive, Image Decoders and Graphics libraries and stacks are integrated into one application.
SSD1926	A demo showing the Solomon Systech Controller JPEG decoder module on the Graphics LCD Controller PICtail™ Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5) and Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005) displaying JPEG images from an SD Card.
S1D13517	A demo showing the different features of the Epson S1D13517 Controller in the Graphics PICtail Plus Epson S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)
Color Depth	Demo showing how the graphics module in PIC24FJ256DA210 is used in applications using color depths of 1, 4 and 8 BPP. (Location: <install_dir>/Graphics/PIC24F DA/Color Depth)
Elevator	A mock up of Elevator Monitor showing the location of the elevator car and the direction it is moving. (Location: <install_dir>/Graphics/PIC24F DA/Elevator)
RCCGPU-IPU	A demo showing how Rectangle (█) Copy Graphical Processing Unit (RCCGPU) and Inflate Processing Unit (IPU) of the Graphics Module in PIC24FJ256DA10 is used. (Location: <install_dir>/Graphics/PIC24F DA/RCCGPU-IPU)
Remote Control	This is a demo showing how to create a universal remote control device with Graphical Interface using RF4CE protocol. (Location: <install_dir>/Combo/Remote Control)
AppNotes	A collection of application notes demo - Demo for Application Note AN1136 - Demo for Application Note AN1182 - Demo for Application Note AN1227 - Demo for Application Note AN1246
Image Decoders	A demo showing the Image Decoder library rendering bitmaps and jpeg images.

PIC24F Starter Kit	Demo for the PIC24F Starter Kit. (Location: <install_dir>/PIC24F Starter Kit)
PIC24H Starter Kit	Demo for the PIC24H Starter Kit. (Location: <install_dir>/PIC24H Starter Kit)
Google Map	A demo showing the TCPIP Stack and Graphics Library combined in an application. (Location: <install_dir>/Combo/Google Map)

**Note:**

Unless otherwise specified, the demos are located in <install\_dir>/Graphics.

where: install\_dir - is the directory location of the MLA installation.

## 5.2 Microchip Application Library Abbreviations

Summary of Microchip Applications Library Abbreviations used.

**Description**

Microchip Application Library Configuration File and Project Name Abbreviations. A summary of the abbreviations used can be found at <Install Directory>/Microchip/Help/Abbreviations.htm

## 5.3 Demo Compatibility Matrix

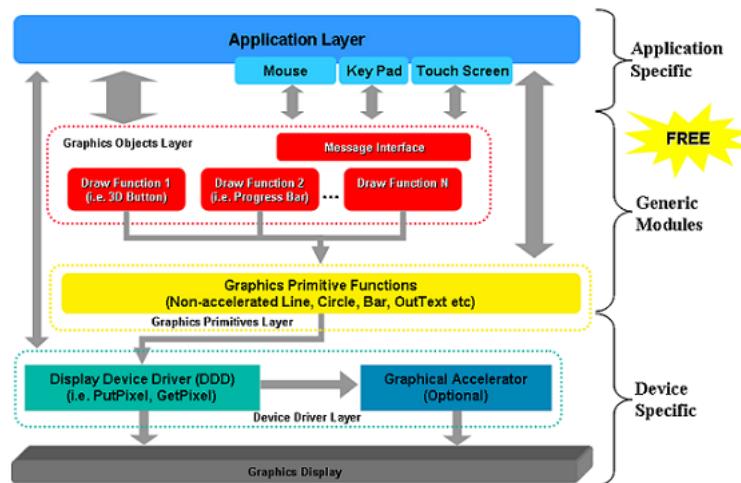
Refer to the Demo Compatibility matrix located in the <install directory>/Microchip/Graphics/Documents/Getting Started/Getting Started - Demo Compatibility Matrix.htm for details.

**Description**

Refer to the Demo Compatibility matrix located in the <install directory>/Microchip/Graphics/Documents/Getting Started/Getting Started - Demo Compatibility Matrix.htm for details.

# 6 Library Architecture

The Microchip Graphics Library structure is shown in the following figure.



Microchip Graphics Library Architecture

1. Application Layer – This is the program that utilizes the Graphics Library.
2. User Message Interface- This layer should be implemented by user to provide messages for the library.
3. Graphics Object Layer – This layer renders the widgets controls such as button, slider, window and so on.
4. Graphics Primitives Layer – This layer implements the primitive drawing functions.
5. Device Display Driver – This layer is dependent on the display device being used.
6. Graphics Display Module – This is the display device being used.

The library provides two configurations (Blocking and Non-Blocking).

For Blocking configuration, all draw functions are blocking calls that delay the execution of program until rendering is done.  
 For Non-Blocking configuration, draw functions do not wait for the drawing completion and release control to the program.  
 In this configuration, a draw function should be called repeatedly until the rendering of that particular draw function is complete. This allows efficient use of microcontroller CPU time since it can perform other tasks if the rendering is not yet done.

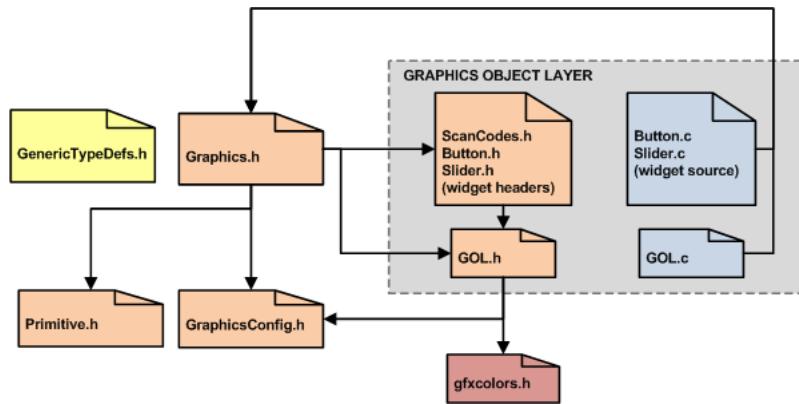
## 6.1 Graphics Object Layer

Describes the Graphics Object Layer (GOL) structure and its components.

### Description

The Graphics Object Layer (GOL) implements the Widgets and the Graphics Library managed messaging and rendering. All Widget drawing are based on the Primitive Layer rendering functions.

The Graphics Object Layer organization is shown on the figure below:

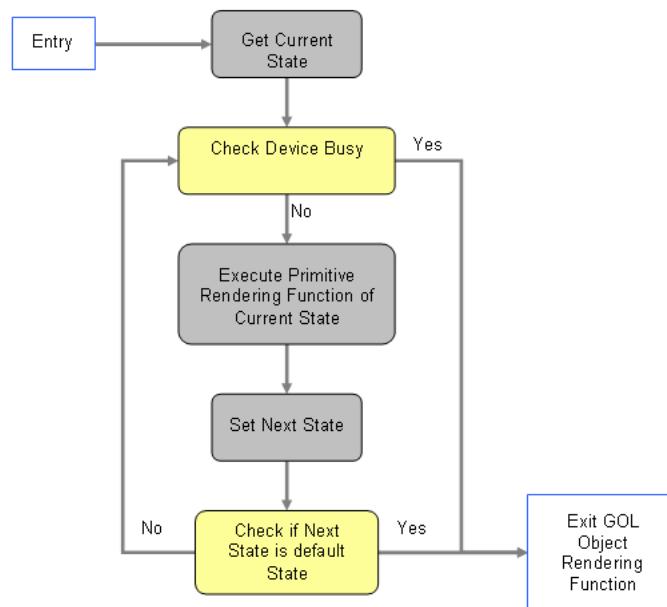


## 6.1.1 Object Rendering

Describes the difference between the Blocking or Non-Blocking configuration when rendering Objects.

### Description

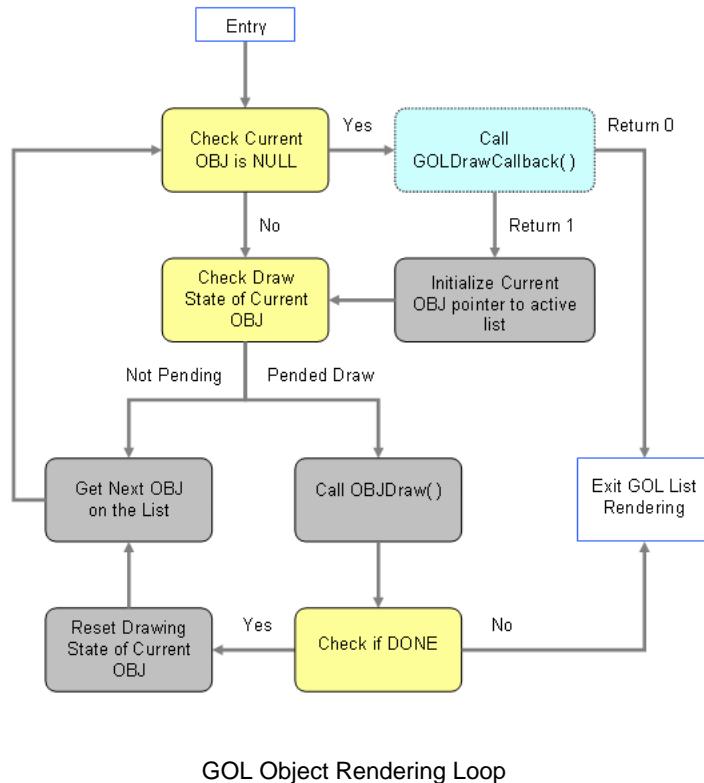
The library can render objects in a Blocking or a Non-Blocking manner. The Non-Blocking configuration is implemented by the use of drawing state machine. Each drawing functions groups the rendering steps into states. Every time a rendering step is executed, the drawing state is updated. Before each step is executed, the display device is checked if it is still busy with the previous rendering operation. If it is busy it returns a non-zero value. This indicates that the draw function must be called again to complete the rendering. The drawing function can be called several times until rendering is completed.



State Machine Controlled Rendering

For Blocking configuration linear flow of rendering is executed. Display device always return a non-busy status.

The GOL level uses the active object linked list for drawing of objects. Each object's state in the list is parsed to determine if the object needs to be redrawn or not. The drawing order is from the head to the tail of the list. This sequence is executed by `GOLDraw` (█)() function. The figure below explains the rendering loop of the `GOLDraw` (█)() function.



GOL Object Rendering Loop

The loop shows two exit points in the sequence. First is when the end of the list is reached and the second is when an `OBJDraw()` returns a NOT DONE status. Reaching the end of the list is a normal exit. This means that all the state machines of the draw functions of each object have reset to default. Exiting with a NOT DONE status means that the latest executed draw function was pended and the object is not yet fully rendered. To complete the rendering, `GOLDraw()` function should be called again. The next call to `GOLDraw()` will pickup the rendering on the last object that returned a not DONE status. This operation makes the rendering functions non-blocking and gives opportunity to release control to program without waiting for the rendering completion.

When all objects in the active object linked list are drawn `GOLDraw()` calls user defined `GOLDrawCallback()` function. User drawing can be done in this callback function. If the function returns a zero, drawing of GOL objects in the active list is suspended. In this case color, clipping region, line type and graphic cursor will not be modified by GOL. If it returns a 1 drawing control is returned to GOL. `GOLDraw()` resume rendering of objects in the current active list. Inside the `GOLDrawCallback()` function, the active object list is not used by `GOLDraw()`. It is safe to perform modification of the list. Please refer to Configuration Settings to set Blocking or Non-Blocking configuration.

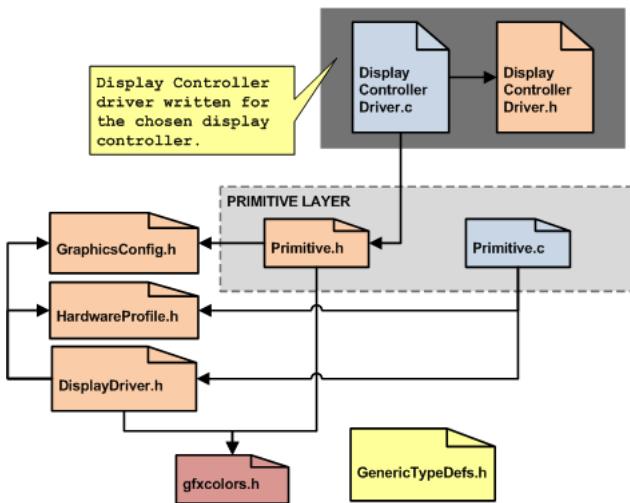
## 6.2 Graphics Primitive Layer

Describes the Graphics Primitive Layer structure and its components.

### Description

This is a hardware independent layer that contains basic rendering functions. These functions can be implemented in the device driver layer if the display device supports hardware acceleration of the function.

The Primitive Layer organization is shown on the figure below:



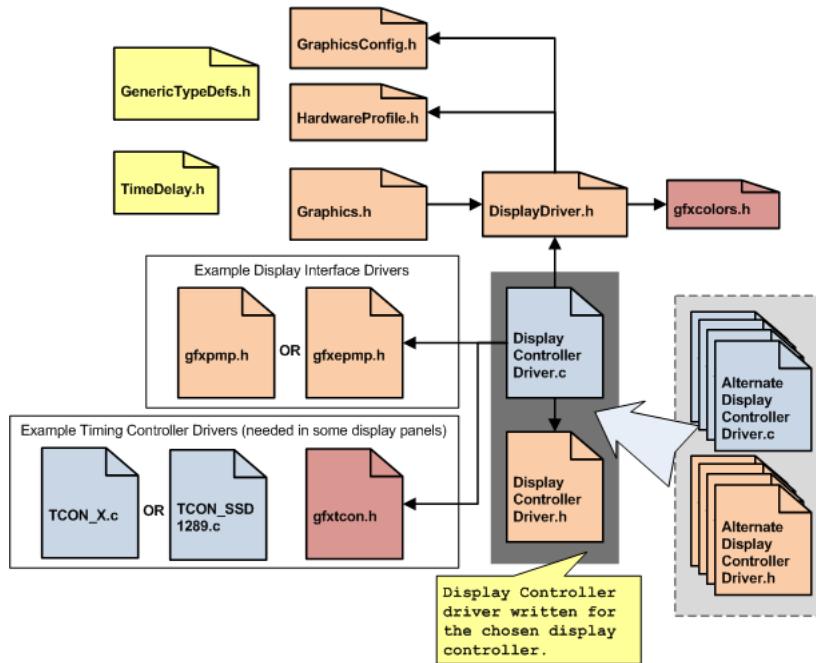
## 6.3 Display Device Driver Layer

Describes the Display Driver Layer structure and its components.

### Description

The Device Driver Layer is the layer that comprises the selection of the display driver file based on the settings specified in the `HardwareProfile.h` file implemented on the application layer.

The Device Driver Layer organization is shown on the figure below:



An option to use a customized driver is also supported by this scheme. The application need only to define custom display macro in the `HardwareProfile` header file. This macro must be unique to the display driver. For example the display macro for the SSD1926 driver is `GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926` (图). It is recommended that the application keep the same format when naming the display macro, `GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_<DRIVER NAME>`.

# 7 Library API

The Microchip Graphics Library is implemented in layers. This section describes the APIs for each layer as well as the Graphics Library Configuration. In addition Advanced Display Device Driver Layer APIs that exists in specific drivers are also described.

## 7.1 Graphics Library Configuration

The Graphics Library can be customized by adding or specifying the compile time options located in the application code named GraphicsConfig.h (🔗) or the HardwareProfile.h files. The following compile time options are supported by the library.

### 7.1.1 Graphics Object Layer Configuration

The following compile time options configures the Graphics Library's Object Layer.

#### 7.1.1.1 Input Device Selection

##### Macros

Name	Description
USE_KEYBOARD (🔗)	<p>Input devices macros that defines the messages that Objects will process. The following definitions indicate the usage of the different input devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_TOUCHSCREEN - enables the touch screen support.</li> <li>• USE_KEYBOARD (🔗) - enables the key board support.</li> </ul> <p>Define in GraphicsConfig.h</p>
USE_TOUCHSCREEN (🔗)	<p>Input devices macros that defines the messages that Objects will process. The following definitions indicate the usage of the different input devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_TOUCHSCREEN - enables the touch screen support.</li> <li>• USE_KEYBOARD (🔗) - enables the key board support.</li> </ul> <p>Define in GraphicsConfig.h</p>

##### Description

The Graphics Library comes with two pre-defined user interface. These are the:

- Keyboard interface
- Touchscreen interface

Enabling one or both requires the declaration of the compile switch macros in the GraphicsConfig.h file.

GOL widgets which supports the enabled input device's messages will respond to the user inputs.

For Example:

When using Button (🔗) Widget.

```
#define USE_TOUCHSCREEN (🔗) - will enable the buttons response to user touch on the button widget. The button will automatically be drawn with a pressed state when pressed and release state when user removes the touch on the screen.
```

The compile option selects the input devices used by GOL widgets. Remove or comment out the macro declarations for unused input devices to reduce code size.

### 7.1.1.1.1 USE\_KEYBOARD Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_KEYBOARD
```

#### Overview

Input devices macros that defines the messages that Objects will process. The following definitions indicate the usage of the different input devices:

- USE\_TOUCHSCREEN - enables the touch screen support.
- USE\_KEYBOARD - enables the key board support.

Define in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.1.1.2 USE\_TOUCHSCREEN Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_TOUCHSCREEN
```

#### Overview

Input devices macros that defines the messages that Objects will process. The following definitions indicate the usage of the different input devices:

- USE\_TOUCHSCREEN - enables the touch screen support.
- USE\_KEYBOARD (█) - enables the key board support.

Define in GraphicsConfig.h

## 7.1.1.2 Focus Support Selection

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_FOCUS (█)	Keyboard control on some objects can be used by enabling the GOL Focus (USE_FOCUS) support. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

#### Description

This compile option allows keyboard input focus. GOLSetFocus (█)(), GOLGetFocus (█)(), GOLCanBeFocused (█)(), GOLGetFocusNext (█)() functions will be available. Focus is also changed by touch screen.

The USE\_FOCUS (█) option is located in the GraphicsConfig.h header file.

### 7.1.1.2.1 USE\_FOCUS Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_FOCUS
```

**Overview**

Keyboard control on some objects can be used by enabling the GOL Focus (USE\_FOCUS) support. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.1.3 Graphics Object Selection

**Macros**

Name	Description
USE_ANALOGCLOCK (█)	Enable Analog Clock Object.
USE_BUTTON (█)	Enable Button (█) Object.
USE_BUTTON_MULTI_LINE (█)	Enable Multi-Line (█) Button (█) Object
USE_CHECKBOX (█)	Enable Checkbox (█) Object.
USE_DIGITALMETER (█)	Enable DigitalMeter Object.
USE_EDITBOX (█)	Enable Edit Box Object.
USE_GROUPBOX (█)	Enable Group Box Object.
USE_LISTBOX (█)	Enable List Box Object.
USE_METER (█)	Enable Meter (█) Object.
USE_PICTURE (█)	Enable Picture (█) Object.
USE_PROGRESSBAR (█)	Enable Progress Bar (█) Object.
USE_RADIOBUTTON (█)	Enable Radio Button (█) Object.
USE_ROUNDDIAL (█)	Enable Dial (█) Object.
USE_SLIDER (█)	Enable Slider (█) or Scroll (█) Bar (█) Object.
USE_STATICTEXT (█)	Enable Static Text Object.
USE_WINDOW (█)	Enable Window (█) Object.
USE_CUSTOM (█)	Enable Custom Control Object (an example to create customized Object).
USE_GOL (█)	Enable Graphics Object Layer.
USE_TEXTENTRY (█)	Enable TextEntry Object.

**Description**

These compile options selects objects used. Remove definitions for unused objects to reduce code size.

The USE\_GOL (█) and USE\_OBJECT options are located in the GraphicsConfig.h header file. USE\_GOL (█) should be included if any of the objects are to be used.

#### 7.1.1.3.1 USE\_ANALOGCLOCK Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_ANALOGCLOCK
```

**Description**

Enable Analog Clock Object.

### 7.1.1.3.2 USE\_BUTTON Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_BUTTON
```

**Description**

Enable Button (▣) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.3 USE\_BUTTON\_MULTI\_LINE Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_BUTTON_MULTI_LINE
```

**Description**

Enable Multi-Line (▣) Button (▣) Object

### 7.1.1.3.4 USE\_CHECKBOX Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_CHECKBOX
```

**Description**

Enable Checkbox (▣) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.5 USE\_DIGITALMETER Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_DIGITALMETER
```

**Description**

Enable DigitalMeter Object.

### 7.1.1.3.6 USE\_EDITBOX Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_EDITBOX
```

**Description**

Enable Edit Box Object.

### 7.1.1.3.7 USE\_GROUPBOX Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_GROUPBOX
```

**Description**

Enable Group Box Object.

### 7.1.1.3.8 USE\_LISTBOX Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_LISTBOX
```

**Description**

Enable List Box Object.

### 7.1.1.3.9 USE\_METER Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_METER
```

**Description**

Enable Meter (▣) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.10 USE\_PICTURE Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_PICTURE
```

**Description**

Enable Picture (▣) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.11 USE\_PROGRESSBAR Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_PROGRESSBAR
```

**Description**

Enable Progress Bar (▣) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.12 USE\_RADIOBUTTON Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_RADIOBUTTON
```

**Description**

Enable Radio Button (■) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.13 USE\_ROUNDDIAL Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_ROUNDDIAL
```

**Description**

Enable Dial (■) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.14 USE\_SLIDER Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_SLIDER
```

**Description**

Enable Slider (■) or Scroll (■) Bar (■) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.15 USE\_STATICTEXT Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_STATICTEXT
```

**Description**

Enable Static Text Object.

### 7.1.1.3.16 USE\_WINDOW Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_WINDOW
```

**Description**

Enable Window (■) Object.

### 7.1.1.3.17 USE\_CUSTOM Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_CUSTOM
```

**Description**

Enable Custom Control Object (an example to create customized Object).

### 7.1.1.3.18 USE\_GOL Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_GOL
```

**Description**

Enable Graphics Object Layer.

### 7.1.1.3.19 USE\_TEXTENTRY Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_TEXTENTRY
```

**Description**

Enable TextEntry Object.

## 7.1.2 Graphics Primitive Layer Configuration

The following compile time options configures the Graphics Library's Primitive Layer.

### 7.1.2.1 Image Compression Option

**Macros**

Name	Description
USE_COMP_IPU (✉)	To enable support for DEFLATE compressed images for PutImage (✉)(). When this macro is enabled, the PutImage (✉)() function will be able to process images generated by the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) that are compressed using the DEFLATE algorithm. PutImage (✉)() will need the IPU module of the Microchip Graphics Module to decompress. Enable this feature only when the driver features the IPU module (example: PIC24FJ2456DA210). Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

USE_COMP_RLE (🔗)	To enable support for RLE compressed images for PutImage (🔗)(). When this macro is enabled, the PutImage (🔗)() function will be able to process images generated by the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) that are RLE compressed. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
------------------	--

**Description**

These compile options to set if the images used for OutImage() are RLE compressed or IPU compressed.

### 7.1.2.1.1 USE\_COMP\_IPU Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_COMP_IPU
```

**Overview**

To enable support for DEFLATE compressed images for PutImage (🔗)(). When this macro is enabled, the PutImage (🔗)() function will be able to process images generated by the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) that are compressed using the DEFLATE algorithm. PutImage (🔗)() will need the IPU module of the Microchip Graphics Module to decompress. Enable this feature only when the driver features the IPU module (example: PIC24FJ2456DA210). Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.2.1.2 USE\_COMP\_RLE Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_COMP_RLE
```

**Overview**

To enable support for RLE compressed images for PutImage (🔗)(). When this macro is enabled, the PutImage (🔗)() function will be able to process images generated by the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) that are RLE compressed. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.2.2 Font Type Selection

**Macros**

Name	Description
USE_MULTIBYTECHAR (🔗)	To enable support for unicode fonts, USE_MULTIBYTECHAR must be defined. This sets the XCHAR (🔗) definition (0-2^16 range). See XCHAR (🔗) for details. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR (🔗)	To enable support for unsigned characters data type for fonts, USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR must be defined. This sets the XCHAR (🔗) definition (0-255 range). See XCHAR (🔗) for details. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

**Description**

This compile option selects if the support for unicode fonts, unsigned char or the default signed char type fonts.

There are three types of font (characters) that can be used in the Graphics Library. This gives the user the option to implement multi-language application or use the default signed char type.

Define in GraphicsConfig.h	XCHAR (🔗) type	Description
#define USE_MULTIBYTECHAR (🔗)	#define XCHAR (🔗) unsigned short	Enable support for multi-byte fonts such as Unicode fonts.
#define USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR (🔗)	#define XCHAR (🔗) unsigned char	Enable support for character range of 0-255.
none of the two are defined	#define XCHAR (🔗) char	Character range is set to 0-127.

Note: Only one of the two or none at all are defined in GraphicsConfig.h.

- #define USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR (🔗)
- #define USE\_UNSIGNED\_XCHAR (🔗)
- when none are defined, XCHAR (🔗) defaults to type char.

See XCHAR (🔗) for details.

### 7.1.2.2.1 USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_MULTIBYTECHAR
```

#### Overview

To enable support for unicode fonts, USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR must be defined. This sets the XCHAR (🔗) definition (0-2^16 range). See XCHAR (🔗) for details. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.2.2.2 USE\_UNSIGNED\_XCHAR Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR
```

#### Overview

To enable support for unsigned characters data type for fonts, USE\_UNSIGNED\_XCHAR must be defined. This sets the XCHAR (🔗) definition (0-255 range). See XCHAR (🔗) for details. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.2.3 Advanced Font Features Selection

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_ANTIALIASED_FONTS (🔗)	To enable support for Anti-aliased fonts. Use this feature if the font table generated through the "Graphics Resource Converter" tool has the anti-aliasing enabled. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

#### Description

This compile option enables the advanced font features.

### 7.1.2.3.1 USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_ANTIALIASED_FONTS
```

#### Overview

To enable support for Anti-aliased fonts. Use this feature if the font table generated through the "Graphics Resource Converter" tool has the anti-aliasing enabled. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.2.4 Gradient Bar Rendering

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_GRADIENT (🔗)	To enable support for Gradient bars and bevel primitives. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h.

#### Description

This compile option enables the usage of the Gradient Bar (🔗) and Bevel (🔗) function in the Primitive Layer.

### 7.1.2.4.1 USE\_GRADIENT Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_GRADIENT
```

#### Overview

To enable support for Gradient bars and bevel primitives. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h.

### 7.1.2.5 Transparent Color Feature in PutImage()

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_TRANSPARENT_COLOR (🔗)	To enable support for transparent color in PutImage (🔗)(). Enabling this macro enables the use of a transparent color (set by TransparentColorEnable (🔗)()) in rendering images by PutImage (🔗)(). When a pixel in the image matches the transparent color set, the pixel is not rendered to the screen. This is useful in rendering rounded icons or images to the screen with a complex background. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

#### Description

This compile option enables the transparent color feature in PutImage (🔗)().

### 7.1.2.5.1 USE\_TRANSPARENT\_COLOR Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_TRANSPARENT_COLOR
```

**Overview**

To enable support for transparent color in PutImage (🔗). Enabling this macro enables the use of a transparent color (set by TransparentColorEnable (🔗)) in rendering images by PutImage (🔗). When a pixel in the image matches the transparent color set, the pixel is not rendered to the screen. This is useful in rendering rounded icons or images to the screen with a complex background. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

**7.1.2.6 External Memory Buffer**

see EXTERNAL\_FONT\_BUFFER\_SIZE (🔗)

**7.1.3 Display Device Driver Layer Configuration****Macros**

Name	Description
USE_ALPHABLEND (🔗)	To enable support for Alpha Blending. Use this feature only if the display driver used can support alpha blending. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (🔗)	To enable support for double buffering. Use this feature only if the display driver used can support double buffering. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
GFX_LCD_TYPE (🔗)	Sets the type of display glass used. Define this in the Hardware Profile. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• #define GFX_LCD_TYPE GFX_LCD_TFT (🔗) - sets type TFT display</li> <li>• #define GFX_LCD_TYPE GFX_LCD_CSTN (🔗) - sets type color STN display</li> <li>• #define GFX_LCD_TYPE GFX_LCD_MSTN (🔗) - sets type mon STN display</li> <li>• #define GFX_LCD_TYPE GFX_LCD_OFF (🔗) - display is turned off</li> </ul>
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH (🔗)	Sets the STN glass data width. Define this in the Hardware Profile. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• #define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_4 (🔗) - use 4-bit wide interface</li> <li>• #define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_8 (🔗) - Use 8-bit wide interface</li> <li>• #define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_16 (🔗) - Use 16-bit wide interface</li> </ul>

**Description**

The following compile time options configures the Graphics Library's Display Device Driver Layer. The choices are based on the specific hardware used.

See Hardware Profile (🔗) for more options.

**7.1.3.1 USE\_ALPHABLEND Macro****File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_ALPHABLEND
```

**Overview**

To enable support for Alpha Blending. Use this feature only if the display driver used can support alpha blending. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.3.2 USE\_DOUBLE\_BUFFERING Macro

**File**

GraphicsConfig.h

**C**

```
#define USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING
```

**Overview**

To enable support for double buffering. Use this feature only if the display driver used can support double buffering. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.3.3 GFX\_LCD\_TYPE Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_LCD_TYPE
```

**Macros**

Name	Description
GFX_LCD_CSTN (█)	Type Color STN Display
GFX_LCD_MSTN (█)	Type Mono STN Display
GFX_LCD_OFF (█)	display is turned off
GFX_LCD_TFT (█)	Type TFT Display

**Overview**

Sets the type of display glass used. Define this in the Hardware Profile.

- #define GFX\_LCD\_TYPE GFX\_LCD\_TFT (█) - sets type TFT display
- #define GFX\_LCD\_TYPE GFX\_LCD\_CSTN (█) - sets type color STN display
- #define GFX\_LCD\_TYPE GFX\_LCD\_MSTN (█) - sets type mon STN display
- #define GFX\_LCD\_TYPE GFX\_LCD\_OFF (█) - display is turned off

#### 7.1.3.3.1 GFX\_LCD\_CSTN Macro

**File**

SSD1926.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_LCD_CSTN 0x03 // Type Color STN Display
```

**Description**

Type Color STN Display

### 7.1.3.3.2 GFX\_LCD\_MSTN Macro

**File**

SSD1926.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_LCD_MSTN 0x02           // Type Mono STN Display
```

**Description**

Type Mono STN Display

### 7.1.3.3.3 GFX\_LCD\_OFF Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_LCD_OFF 0x00           // display is turned off
```

**Description**

display is turned off

### 7.1.3.3.4 GFX\_LCD\_TFT Macro

**File**

SSD1926.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_LCD_TFT 0x01           // Type TFT Display
```

**Description**

Type TFT Display

### 7.1.3.4 STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH
```

**Macros**

Name	Description
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_16 (🔗)	display interface is 16 bits wide
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_4 (🔗)	display interface is 4 bits wide
STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_8 (🔗)	display interface is 8 bits wide

**Overview**

Sets the STN glass data width. Define this in the Hardware Profile.

- #define STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_4 (🔗) - use 4-bit wide interface
- #define STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_8 (🔗) - Use 8-bit wide interface
- #define STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_16 (🔗) - Use 16-bit wide interface

### 7.1.3.4.1 STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_16 Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_16 0x02      // display interface is 16 bits wide
```

**Description**

display interface is 16 bits wide

### 7.1.3.4.2 STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_4 Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_4 0x00      // display interface is 4 bits wide
```

**Description**

display interface is 4 bits wide

### 7.1.3.4.3 STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_8 Macro

**File**

mchpGfxDrv.h

**C**

```
#define STN_DISPLAY_WIDTH_8 0x01      // display interface is 8 bits wide
```

**Description**

display interface is 8 bits wide

## 7.1.4 Application Configuration

### 7.1.4.1 Configuration Setting

**Macros**

Name	Description
USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG (▣)	Blocking and Non-Blocking configuration selection. To enable non-blocking configuration USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG must be defined. If this is not defined, blocking configuration is assumed. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

**Description**

This selects the configuration of the library. When Non-blocking configuration is selected, state machine based rendering is used to perform object rendering.

When blocking configuration is used, this line MUST be commented. In this case object rendering will not exit until the object is fully rendered.

The USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG ( ⓘ) option is located in the GraphicsConfig.h header file.

### 7.1.4.1.1 USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG
```

#### Overview

Blocking and Non-Blocking configuration selection. To enable non-blocking configuration USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG must be defined. If this is not defined, blocking configuration is assumed. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.4.2 Font Source Selection

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_FONT_FLASH ( ⓘ)	<p>Font data can be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Defining one or both enables the support for fonts located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_FONT_FLASH - Font in internal flash memory support.</li> <li>• USE_FONT_EXTERNAL ( ⓘ) - Font in external memory support (including external memory mapped to EDS).</li> </ul>
USE_FONT_EXTERNAL ( ⓘ)	<p>Font data can be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Defining one or both enables the support for fonts located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_FONT_FLASH - Font in internal flash memory support.</li> <li>• USE_FONT_EXTERNAL ( ⓘ) - Font in external memory support (including external memory mapped to EDS).</li> </ul>

#### Description

Font data can be placed in multiple locations. Set these options in the GraphicsConfig.h header file.

- USE\_FONT\_FLASH ( ⓘ) - Font in internal flash memory support.
- USE\_FONT\_EXTERNAL ( ⓘ) - Font in external memory support. Use this for fonts located in external memory like SPI Flash or external memory mapped to Extended Data Space.

### 7.1.4.2.1 USE\_FONT\_FLASH Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_FONT_FLASH
```

#### Overview

Font data can be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Defining one or both enables the support for fonts located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

- USE\_FONT\_FLASH - Font in internal flash memory support.

- USE\_FONT\_EXTERNAL (🔗) - Font in external memory support (including external memory mapped to EDS).

### 7.1.4.2.2 USE\_FONT\_EXTERNAL Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_FONT_EXTERNAL
```

#### Overview

Font data can be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Definining one or both enables the support for fonts located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

- USE\_FONT\_FLASH - Font in internal flash memory support.
- USE\_FONT\_EXTERNAL - Font in external memory support (including external memory mapped to EDS).

### 7.1.4.3 Image Source Selection

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_BITMAP_FLASH (🔗)	<p>Similar to Font data bitmaps can also be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Definining one or both enables the support for bitmaps located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_BITMAP_FLASH - Images located in internal flash memory.</li> <li>• USE_BITMAP_EXTERNAL (🔗) - Images located in external memory (including external memory mapped to EDS)..</li> </ul>
USE_BITMAP_EXTERNAL (🔗)	<p>Similar to Font data bitmaps can also be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Definining one or both enables the support for bitmaps located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_BITMAP_FLASH - Images located in internal flash memory.</li> <li>• USE_BITMAP_EXTERNAL (🔗) - Images located in external memory (including external memory mapped to EDS)..</li> </ul>

#### Description

Similar to Font data bitmaps can also be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Definining one or both enables the support for bitmaps located in internal flash and external memory.

The USE\_BITMAP\_FLASH (🔗) and USE\_BITMAP\_EXTERNAL (🔗) options are located in the GraphicsConfig.h header file.

### 7.1.4.3.1 USE\_BITMAP\_FLASH Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_BITMAP_FLASH
```

#### Overview

Similar to Font data bitmaps can also be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Definining one or both enables the support for bitmaps located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

- USE\_BITMAP\_FLASH - Images located in internal flash memory.
- USE\_BITMAP\_EXTERNAL (🔗) - Images located in external memory (including external memory mapped to EDS)..

### 7.1.4.3.2 USE\_BITMAP\_EXTERNAL Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_BITMAP_EXTERNAL
```

#### Overview

Similar to Font data bitmaps can also be placed in two locations. One is in FLASH memory and the other is from external memory. Defining one or both enables the support for bitmaps located in internal flash and external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

- USE\_BITMAP\_FLASH - Images located in internal flash memory.
- USE\_BITMAP\_EXTERNAL - Images located in external memory (including external memory mapped to EDS)..

### 7.1.4.4 Miscellaneous

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_PALETTE_EXTERNAL (🔗)	Palettes can also be specified to reside in external memory similar to fonts and images. Use this when the palette is located in external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
USE_PALETTE (🔗)	Using Palettes, different colors can be used with the same bit depth. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h
COLOR_DEPTH (🔗)	Specifies the color depth used in the application defined in GraphicsConfig.h.
GFX_free (🔗)	When using Operating Systems (OS), define the OS specific malloc() and free() functions for compatibility with the OS based systems. Define these in GraphicsConfig.h
GFX_malloc (🔗)	When using Operating Systems (OS), define the OS specific malloc() and free() functions for compatibility with the OS based systems. Define these in GraphicsConfig.h

#### Description

This contains miscellaneous macros and functions that can be redefined for various system support such as Operating System defined functions.

### 7.1.4.4.1 USE\_PALETTE\_EXTERNAL Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_PALETTE_EXTERNAL
```

#### Overview

Palettes can also be specified to reside in external memory similar to fonts and images. Use this when the palette is located in external memory. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.4.4.2 USE\_PALETTE Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define USE_PALETTE
```

#### Overview

Using Palettes, different colors can be used with the same bit depth. Define this in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.4.4.3 COLOR\_DEPTH Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```

#### Overview

Specifies the color depth used in the application defined in GraphicsConfig.h.

### 7.1.4.4.4 GFX\_free Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define GFX_free(pObj) free(pObj) // <COPY GFX_malloc>
```

#### Overview

When using Operating Systems (OS), define the OS specific malloc() and free() functions for compatibility with the OS based systems. Define these in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.4.4.5 GFX\_malloc Macro

#### File

GraphicsConfig.h

#### C

```
#define GFX_malloc(size) malloc(size)
```

#### Overview

When using Operating Systems (OS), define the OS specific malloc() and free() functions for compatibility with the OS based systems. Define these in GraphicsConfig.h

### 7.1.4.5 GraphicsConfig.h Example

This is an example of the GraphicsConfig.h file implementation:

---

```
/////////////////////// COMPILE OPTIONS AND DEFAULTS //////////////////
```

```
#define USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG // Comment this line to use blocking configuration
#define USE_FOCUS // Comment this line when not using FOCUS
#define USE_TOUCHSCREEN // Enable touch screen support.
```

```

#define USE_KEYBOARD // Enable key board support.

#define USE_GOL // Enable Graphics Object Layer.
#define USE_BUTTON // Enable Button Object.
#define USE_CHART // Enable Chart Object.
#define USE_WINDOW // Enable Window Object.
#define USE_CHECKBOX // Enable Checkbox Object.
#define USE_RADIOBUTTON // Enable Radio Button Object.
#define USE_EDITBOX // Enable Edit Box Object.
#define USE_LISTBOX // Enable List Box Object.
#define USE_SLIDER // Enable Slider or Scroll Bar Object.
#define USE_PROGRESSBAR // Enable Progress Bar Object.
#define USE_STATICTEXT // Enable Static Text Object.
#define USE_PICTURE // Enable Picture Object.
#define USE_GROUPBOX // Enable Group Box Object.
#define USE_ROUNDDIAL // Enable Dial Object.
#define USE_METER // Enable Meter Object.
#define USE_TEXTENTRY // Enable Text Entry Object.
#define USE_CUSTOM // Enable Custom Control Object (an example to
create customized Object).

#define USE_MULTIBYTECHAR // Enable unicode derived characters
#define USE_FONT_FLASH // Support for fonts located in internal flash
#define USE_BITMAP_FLASH // Support for bitmaps located in internal flash

#define GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE 2

#define COLOR_DEPTH 16 // The color depth used

```

## 7.1.5 Hardware Profile

These functions and macros are used to determine hardware profile settings on the chosen PIC microcontroller and hardware such as demo boards used.

### 7.1.5.1 PMP Interface

#### Macros

Name	Description
USE_8BIT_PMP (🔗)	<p>Specifies the interface type to the Parallel Master Port (PMP) or Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_8BIT_PMP - Use 8-bit interface to PMP or EPMP</li> <li>• USE_16BIT_PMP (🔗) - Use 16-bit interface to PMP or EPMP</li> </ul>
USE_16BIT_PMP (🔗)	<p>Specifies the interface type to the Parallel Master Port (PMP) or Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USE_8BIT_PMP - Use 8-bit interface to PMP or EPMP</li> <li>• USE_16BIT_PMP (🔗) - Use 16-bit interface to PMP or EPMP</li> </ul>

#### Description

Specifies the interface type to the Parallel Master Port (PMP) or Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).

### 7.1.5.1.1 USE\_8BIT\_PMP Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define USE_8BIT_PMP
```

**Overview**

Specifies the interface type to the Parallel Master Port (PMP) or Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).

- USE\_8BIT\_PMP - Use 8-bit interface to PMP or EPMP
- USE\_16BIT\_PMP (█) - Use 16-bit interface to PMP or EPMP

**7.1.5.1.2 USE\_16BIT\_PMP Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define USE_16BIT_PMP
```

**Overview**

Specifies the interface type to the Parallel Master Port (PMP) or Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP).

- USE\_8BIT\_PMP - Use 8-bit interface to PMP or EPMP
- USE\_16BIT\_PMP - Use 16-bit interface to PMP or EPMP

**7.1.5.2 Development Platform Used****Macros**

Name	Description
EXPLORER_16 (█)	<p>Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EXPLORER_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).</li> <li>• PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (█) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).</li> <li>• MEB_BOARD (█) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).</li> <li>• PIC_SK (█) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).</li> </ul>
PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (█)	<p>Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EXPLORER_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).</li> <li>• PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (█) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).</li> <li>• MEB_BOARD (█) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).</li> <li>• PIC_SK (█) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).</li> </ul>

MEB_BOARD (🔗)	Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EXPLORER_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).</li> <li>PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (🔗) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).</li> <li>MEB_BOARD (🔗) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).</li> <li>PIC_SK (🔗) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).</li> </ul>
PIC_SK (🔗)	Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EXPLORER_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).</li> <li>PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (🔗) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).</li> <li>MEB_BOARD (🔗) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).</li> <li>PIC_SK (🔗) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).</li> </ul>

**Description**

Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.

**7.1.5.2.1 EXPLORER\_16 Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define EXPLORER_16
```

**Overview**

Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.

- EXPLORER\_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).
- PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).
- MEB\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).
- PIC\_SK (🔗) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).

**7.1.5.2.2 PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD
```

**Overview**

Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.

- EXPLORER\_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).
- PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).
- MEB\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).

- PIC\_SK (🔗) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).

### 7.1.5.2.3 MEB\_BOARD Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define MEB_BOARD
```

#### Overview

Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.

- EXPLORER\_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).
- PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).
- MEB\_BOARD - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).
- PIC\_SK (🔗) - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).

### 7.1.5.2.4 PIC\_SK Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define PIC_SK
```

#### Overview

Specifies the Development Platform used for the Microchip Graphics Library demos.

- EXPLORER\_16 - Using the Explorer 16 Development Board (DM240001).
- PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board (DM240312).
- MEB\_BOARD (🔗) - Using the Multi-Media Expansion Board (DM320005).
- PIC\_SK - Using PIC32 or dsPIC Starter Kit (examples: PIC32 Starter Kit (DM320001), PIC32 USB Starter Kit II (DM320003-2), PIC32 Ethernet Starter Kit (DM320004)).

## 7.1.5.3 Graphics PICtail Used

#### Macros

Name	Description
GFX_PICTAIL_LCC (🔗)	Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3E (🔗) - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_LCC (🔗) - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board (AC164144)</li> </ul>

GFX_PICTAIL_V3 (🔗)	Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3E (🔗) - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_LCC (🔗) - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtailâ„¢ Plus Board (AC164144)</li> </ul>
GFX_PICTAIL_V3E (🔗)	Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_V3E (🔗) - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)</li> <li>• GFX_PICTAIL_LCC (🔗) - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtailâ„¢ Plus Board (AC164144)</li> </ul>

**Description**

Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used.

**7.1.5.3.1 GFX\_PICTAIL\_LCC Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_LCC
```

**Overview**

Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used.

- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3E (🔗) - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_LCC - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtailâ„¢ Plus Board (AC164144)

**7.1.5.3.2 GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_V3
```

**Overview**

Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used.

- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3E (🔗) - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_LCC (🔗) - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtailâ„¢ Plus Board (AC164144)

**7.1.5.3.3 GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3E Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_PICTAIL_V3E
```

**Overview**

Specifies the Graphics PICtail Display Panel used.

- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus SSD1926 Board (AC164127-5)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3E - Graphics LCD Controller PICtail Plus S1D13517 Board (AC164127-7)
- GFX\_PICTAIL\_LCC (🔗) - Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board (AC164144)

## 7.1.5.4 Display Controller Used

**Macros**

Name	Description
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA (🔗)	<p>Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.</li> </ul>
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 (🔗)	<p>Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.</li> </ul>
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 (🔗)	<p>Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.</li> </ul>

GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 (🔗)	<p>Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.</li> </ul>
--	---

**Description**

Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.

**7.1.5.4.1 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_DMA
```

**Overview**

Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.

**7.1.5.4.2 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210
```

**Overview**

Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.

**7.1.5.4.3 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_S1D13517
```

**Overview**

Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 (🔗) - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.

**7.1.5.4.4 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_SSD1926
```

**Overview**

Specifies the controller used in the Graphics Library supplied demo.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA - Using the PIC32 Low Cost Controllerless (LCC) solution.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 (🔗) - Use the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 - Using the Solomon Systech SSD1926 Display Controller.
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 (🔗) - Using the Epson S1D13517 Display Controller.

**7.1.5.5 Display Panel Used****Macros**

Name	Description
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q (🔗)	<p>Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q (🔗) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E (🔗) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E (🔗) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> </ul>

GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E (🔗)	<p>Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q (🔗) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E (🔗) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E (🔗) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> </ul>
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E (🔗)	<p>Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q (🔗) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E (🔗) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E (🔗) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> </ul>
GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E (🔗)	<p>Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q (🔗) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E (🔗) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> <li>• GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E (🔗) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)</li> </ul>

## Description

Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.

### 7.1.5.5.1 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_PH480272T_005_I11Q
```

#### Overview

Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E (█) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E (█) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)

## 7.1.5.5.2 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_640480_8_E
```

### Overview

Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q (█) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E (█) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E (█) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)

## 7.1.5.5.3 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_800480_33_E
```

### Overview

Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q (█) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E (█) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)

## 7.1.5.5.4 GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
```

### Overview

Specifies the Graphics Display Panel used.

- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E - 3.2 inch QVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-4)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q (█) - 4.3 inch WQVGA Powertip TFT Display Board (AC164127-6)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E (█) - 5.7 inch VGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)
- GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E (█) - 7 inch WVGA Truly TFT Display Board (AC164127-8)

## 7.1.5.6 Device Driver Options

### Macros

Name	Description
DISP_DATA_WIDTH (§)	Defines the display controller's physical interface to the display panel. Valid Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1, 4, 8, 16, 18, 24</li> <li>• 1, 4, 8 are usually used in MSTN and CSTN displays</li> <li>• 16, 18 and 24 are usually used in TFT displays.</li> </ul>
DISP_ORIENTATION (§)	Defines the display rotation with respect to its native orientation. For example, if the display has a resolution specifications that says 240x320 (QVGA), the display is natively in portrait mode. If the application uses the display in landscape mode (320x240), then the orientation must be defined as 90 or 180 degree rotation. Graphics Library will calculate the actual pixel location to rotate the contents of the screen. So when users view the display, the image on the screen will come out in the correct orientation. Valid values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 : display in its native orientation</li> <li>• 90 : rotated 90 degrees clockwise... more (§)</li> </ul>
DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION (§)	Defines the native horizontal dimension of the screen. This is the horizontal pixel count given by the display's data sheet. For example a 320x240 display will have DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION of 320. Valid Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dependent on the display glass resolution used.</li> </ul>
DISP_VER_RESOLUTION (§)	Defines the native vertical dimension of the screen. This is the vertical pixel count given by the display's data sheet. For example a 320x240 display will have DISP_VER_RESOLUTION of 240. Valid Values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dependent on the display glass resolution used.</li> </ul>
DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH (§)	Defines the horizontal front porch. DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH (§) + DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH + DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH (§) makes up the horizontal blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH (§)	Defines the horizontal back porch. DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH + DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH (§) + DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH (§) makes up the horizontal blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH (§)	Defines the vertical front porch. DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH (§) + DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH + DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH (§) makes up the vertical blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH (§)	Defines the vertical back porch. DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH + DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH (§) + DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH (§) makes up the vertical blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH (§)	Defines the horizontal sync signal pulse width in pixels. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH (§)	Defines the vertical sync signal pulse width in lines. Value used will be based on the display panel used.
DISP_INV_LSHIFT (§)	Indicates that the color data is sampled in the falling edge of the pixel clock.

### Description

The options Graphics Hardware Platform, DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER and DISPLAY\_PANEL are specific to the hardware used. The Graphics Hardware Platform selects the Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board version, PIC24FJ256DA210 Development Board or any other Microchip demo boards for the Graphics Library. Currently there are two Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board versions supported as shown in the Getting Started (§) section.

The rest of the settings are used to specify the the display parameters when using an RGB type display controller such as

SSD1906 and SSD1926 from Solomon Systech. The table below summarizes the generic parameters found in RGB type display controllers and when each type is used.

Options	Color STN	Mono STN	TFT
DISP_DATA_WIDTH (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_ORIENTATION (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_VER_RESOLUTION (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH (█)	NO	NO	YES
DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH (█)	NO	NO	YES
DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH (█)	NO	NO	YES
DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH (█)	NO	NO	YES
DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH (█)	YES	YES	YES
DISP_INV_LSHIFT (█)	YES	YES	YES

All the options listed here are set in the HardwareProfile.h header file implemented in the application layer. An example of this file is shown in HardwareProfile.h Example section.

### 7.1.5.6.1 DISP\_DATA\_WIDTH Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define DISP_DATA_WIDTH 18
```

#### Example

```
// define in Hardware Profile
#define DISP_DATA_WIDTH 18
```

#### Overview

Defines the display controller's physical interface to the display panel. Valid Values:

- 1, 4, 8, 16, 18, 24
- 1, 4, 8 are usually used in MSTN and CSTN displays
- 16, 18 and 24 are usually used in TFT displays.

### 7.1.5.6.2 DISP\_ORIENTATION Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define DISP_ORIENTATION 0
```

#### Example

```
// define in Hardware Profile
#define DISP_ORIENTATION 90
```

#### Overview

Defines the display rotation with respect to its native orientation. For example, if the display has a resolution specifications that says 240x320 (QVGA), the display is natively in portrait mode. If the application uses the display in landscape mode

(320x240), then the orientation must be defined as 90 or 180 degree rotation. Graphics Library will calculate the actual pixel location to rotate the contents of the screen. So when users view the display, the image on the screen will come out in the correct orientation. Valid values:

- 0 : display in its native orientation
- 90 : rotated 90 degrees clockwise direction
- 180 : rotated 180 degrees clockwise direction
- 270 : rotated 270 degrees clockwise direction

### 7.1.5.6.3 DISP\_HOR\_RESOLUTION Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION 320
```

#### Example

```
// define in Hardware Profile
#define DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION 320
```

#### Overview

Defines the native horizontal dimension of the screen. This is the horizontal pixel count given by the display's data sheet. For example a 320x240 display will have DISP\_HOR\_RESOLUTION of 320. Valid Values:

- dependent on the display glass resolution used.

### 7.1.5.6.4 DISP\_VER\_RESOLUTION Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define DISP_VER_RESOLUTION 240
```

#### Example

```
// define in Hardware Profile
#define DISP_VER_RESOLUTION 240
```

#### Overview

Defines the native vertical dimension of the screen. This is the vertical pixel count given by the display's data sheet. For example a 320x240 display will have DISP\_VER\_RESOLUTION of 240. Valid Values:

- dependent on the display glass resolution used.

### 7.1.5.6.5 DISP\_HOR\_FRONT\_PORCH Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define DISP_HOR_FRONT_PORCH 10
```

#### Overview

Defines the horizontal front porch. DISP\_HOR\_BACK\_PORCH (§) + DISP\_HOR\_FRONT\_PORCH + DISP\_HOR\_PULSE\_WIDTH (§) makes up the horizontal blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

## 7.1.5.6.6 DISP\_HOR\_BACK\_PORCH Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define DISP_HOR_BACK_PORCH 20
```

### Overview

Defines the horizontal back porch. DISP\_HOR\_BACK\_PORCH + DISP\_HOR\_FRONT\_PORCH (█) + DISP\_HOR\_PULSE\_WIDTH (█) makes up the horizontal blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

## 7.1.5.6.7 DISP\_VER\_FRONT\_PORCH Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define DISP_VER_FRONT_PORCH 5
```

### Overview

Defines the vertical front porch. DISP\_VER\_BACK\_PORCH (█) + DISP\_VER\_FRONT\_PORCH + DISP\_VER\_PULSE\_WIDTH (█) makes up the vertical blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

## 7.1.5.6.8 DISP\_VER\_BACK\_PORCH Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define DISP_VER_BACK_PORCH 20
```

### Overview

Defines the vertical back porch. DISP\_VER\_BACK\_PORCH + DISP\_VER\_FRONT\_PORCH (█) + DISP\_VER\_PULSE\_WIDTH (█) makes up the vertical blanking period. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

## 7.1.5.6.9 DISP\_HOR\_PULSE\_WIDTH Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

### C

```
#define DISP_HOR_PULSE_WIDTH 10
```

### Overview

Defines the horizontal sync signal pulse width in pixels. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

## 7.1.5.6.10 DISP\_VER\_PULSE\_WIDTH Macro

### File

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define DISP_VER_PULSE_WIDTH 5
```

**Overview**

Defines the vertical sync signal pulse width in lines. Value used will be based on the display panel used.

**7.1.5.6.11 DISP\_INV\_LSHIFT Macro****File**

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define DISP_INV_LSHIFT 18
```

**Overview**

Indicates that the color data is sampled in the falling edge of the pixel clock.

**7.1.5.7 HardwareProfile.h Example**

This is an example of the HardwareProfile.h file implementation:

```
*****
* GetSystemClock() returns system clock frequency.
* GetPeripheralClock() returns peripheral clock frequency.
* GetInstructionClock() returns instruction clock frequency.
*****  

*****  

* Macro: #define GetSystemClock()
* Overview: This macro returns the system clock frequency in Hertz.
*           * value is 8 MHz x 4 PLL for PIC24
*           * value is 8 MHz/2 x 18 PLL for PIC32
*****  

#if defined(__PIC24F__)
#define GetSystemClock()      (32000000ul)
#elif defined(__PIC32MX__)
#define GetSystemClock()      (72000000ul)
#elif defined(__dsPIC33F__) || defined(__PIC24H__)
#define GetSystemClock()      (80000000ul)
#endif  

*****  

* Macro: #define GetPeripheralClock()
* Overview: This macro returns the peripheral clock frequency
*           used in Hertz.
*           * value for PIC24 is <PRE>(GetSystemClock() / 2) </PRE>
*           * value for PIC32 is <PRE>(GetSystemClock() / (1 << OSCCONbits.PBDIV)) </PRE>
*****  

#if defined(__PIC24F__) || defined(__PIC24H__) || defined(__dsPIC33F__)
#define GetPeripheralClock()  (GetSystemClock() / 2)
#elif defined(__PIC32MX__)
#define GetPeripheralClock()  (GetSystemClock() / (1 << OSCCONbits.PBDIV))
#endif  

*****  

* Macro: #define GetInstructionClock()
* Overview: This macro returns instruction clock frequency
*           used in Hertz.
*           * value for PIC24 is <PRE>(GetSystemClock() / 2) </PRE>
*           * value for PIC32 is (GetSystemClock() / PFMWSbits.CHECON) </PRE>
*****  

#if defined(__PIC24F__) || defined(__PIC24H__) || defined(__dsPIC33F__)
#define GetInstructionClock() (GetSystemClock() / 2)
#elif defined(__PIC32MX__)
```

```

#define GetInstructionClock()      (GetSystemClock() / PFMWSbits.CHECON)
#endif

//Auto Generated Code
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD
#define USE_16BIT_PMP
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 61
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH 0x00025800ul
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE 0x40000ul
//End Auto Generated Code

//*********************************************************************
/* External Memory Programmer Settings
***** */
#if defined (EXPLORER_16)
#define USE_COMM_PKT_MEDIA_SERIAL_PORT
#define BAUDRATE2 115200UL
#define BRG_DIV2 4
#define BRGH2 1
#else
#define USE_COMM_PKT_MEDIA_USB

#define USE_SELF_POWER_SENSE_IO
#define tris_self_power TRISAbits.TRISA2 // Input
#define self_power 1

#define USE_USB_BUS_SENSE_IO
#define tris_usb_bus_sense TRISBbits.TRISB5 // Input
#define USB_BUS_SENSE U1OTGSTATbits.SESVD // Special considerations required if
using SESVD for this purpose. See documentation.
#endif

#define COMM_PKT_RX_MAX_SIZE (1024)

.....

```

## 7.2 Graphics Object Layer API

Description of Graphics Object Layer API.

### 7.2.1 GOL Objects

The Graphics Object Layer (GOL) contains the Advanced Graphics Objects or commonly known as widgets.

#### Enumerations

Name	Description
GOL_OBJ_TYPE (■)	This structure defines the Object types used in the library.

#### Modules

Name	Description
Analog Clock (■)	Analog Clock is an Object that emulates an analog clock with moving hands. It can be used with or without a bitmap image as the background source.

Button (█)	Button is an Object that emulates a press and release effect when operated upon.
Chart (█)	Chart is an Object that draws a bar chart or a pie chart representation of a single data or series of data.
Checkbox (█)	Check Box is an Object that simulates a check box on paper. Usually it is used as an option setting where the checked or filled state means the option is enabled and the unfilled or unchecked state means the option is disabled.
Round Dial (█)	Dial is an Object that can be used to display emulate a turn dial that can both go in clockwise or counterclockwise.
Digital Meter (█)	DigitalMeter is an Object that can be used to display a value of a sampled variable. This Object is ideal when fast refresh of the value is needed. The Object refreshes only the digits that needs to change. A limitation of this Object is that the font used should have equal character widths.
Edit Box (█)	Edit Box is is an Object that emulates a cell or a text area that can be edited dynamically.
Grid (█)	Grid is an Object that draws a grid on the screen with each cell capable of displaying an image or a string.
Group Box (█)	Group Box is an Object that can be used to group Objects together in the screen.
List Box (█)	List Box is an Object that defines a scrollable area where items are listed. User can select a single item or set of items.
Meter (█)	Meter is an Object that can be used to graphically display a sampled input.
Picture Control (█)	Picture is an Object that can be used to transform a bitmap to be an Object in the screen and have control on the bitmap rendering. This object can be used to create animation using a series of bitmaps.
Progress Bar (█)	Progress Bar (█) is an Object that can be used to display the progress of a task such as a file download or transfer.
Radio Button (█)	Radio Button (█) is an Object that can be used to offer set of choices to the user. Only one of the choices is selectable. Changing selection automatically removes the selection on the previous option.
Slider/Scrollbar (█)	Slider or Scrollbar is an Object that can be used to display a value or scrolling location in a predefined area.
Static Text (█)	Static Text is an Object that can be used to display a single or multi-line string of text in a predefined location.
Text Entry (█)	Text Entry is an Object that can be used to emulate a key pad entry with a display area for the entered characters. The Object has a feature where you can define a key to reply with a translated message that signifies a command key was pressed. A command key example can be your enter or carriage return key or an escape key. Multiple keys can be assigned command keys. Application can utilize the command key to define the behavior of the program based on a command key press.
Window (█)	Window is an Object that can be used to encapsulate objects into a group. Unlike the Group Box Object, the Window Object has additional features such as displaying an icon or a small bitmap on its Title Bar (█). It also has additional controls for both Title Bar (█) and Client Area.

## Structures

Name	Description
OBJ_HEADER (█)	This structure defines the first nine fields of the Objects structure. This allows generic operations on library Objects.

## Types

Name	Description
DRAW_FUNC (█)	object draw function pointer typedef
FREE_FUNC (█)	object free function pointer typedef
MSG_DEFAULT_FUNC (█)	object default message function pointer typedef
MSG_FUNC (█)	object message function pointer typedef

## Description

All the GOL objects that will be shown in the display have a corresponding data structure that keeps and maintains its parameters.

Each object type has a set of functions that enables the user to change the state of the object. The Microchip graphics library supports the following set of GOL objects.

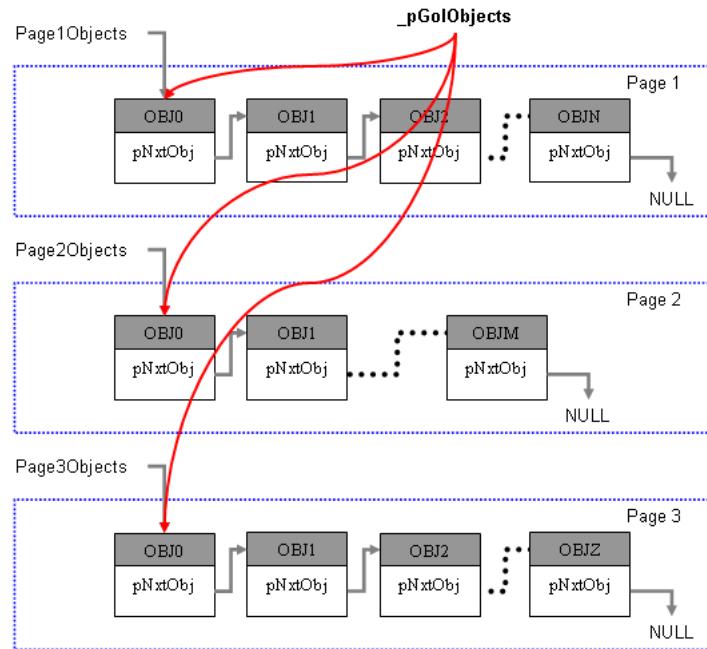
Object	Type Definition
Button (█)	OBJ_BUTTON
Chart (█)	OBJ_CHART
Checkbox (█)	OBJ_CHECKBOX
Dial (█)	OBJ_ROUNDDIAL
Digital Meter (█)	OBJ_DIGITALMETER
Edit Box (█)	OBJ_EDITBOX
Grid (█)	OBJ_GRID
Group Box (█)	OBJ_GROUPBOX
List Box (█)	OBJ_LISTBOX
Meter (█)	OBJ_METER
Picture (█)	OBJ_PICTURE
Progress Bar (█)	OBJ_PROGRESSBAR
Radio Button (█)	OBJ_RADIOBUTTON
Slider (█)	OBJ_SLIDER
Static Text (█)	OBJ_STATICTEXT
Text Entry (█)	OBJ_TEXTENTRY
Window (█)	OBJ_WINDOW

Each GOL object type uses a style scheme. The style scheme defines the font and color settings. User can create new style schemes and assign it to objects. Multiple style schemes can be used for different objects.

To efficiently manage the different objects the first 9 fields of the structure for each object are defined the same. Collectively they are referred to as the object header structure (OBJ\_HEADER (█)). Defining the OBJ\_HEADER (█) enables the common APIs to manage the objects of different types in the same manner.

The GOL operation is centered on two major processes. First is the rendering process and second is the messaging process. These processes make use of linked list objects. The field pNxtObj in OBJ\_HEADER (█) makes this possible. To manage the list a global pointer \_pGolObjects (█) is utilized. It defines the current active linked list. Newly created objects are automatically added to the end of this list. The active linked list is the list that the messaging and rendering operation parses to evaluate if the messages received affect the objects and if objects need to be redrawn.

The use of the \_pGolObjects (█) pointer also provides a way to easily manage objects. In applications where multiple pages are displayed on the screen, objects can be grouped according to pages. The pointer can be manipulated to switch from one page to another depending on the page currently shown on the screen.



Implementation of Multi-Page Objects

User can remove an object from a list by pointer manipulation. Objects that are removed from the list are not accessible by the rendering and messaging processes.

### 7.2.1.1 GOL\_OBJ\_TYPE Enumeration

#### File

GOL.h

#### C

```
typedef enum {
    OBJ_BUTTON,
    OBJ_WINDOW,
    OBJ_CHECKBOX,
    OBJ_RADIOBUTTON,
    OBJ_EDITBOX,
    OBJ_LISTBOX,
    OBJ_SLIDER,
    OBJ_PROGRESSBAR,
    OBJ_STATICTEXT,
    OBJ_PICTURE,
    OBJ_GROUPBOX,
    OBJ_CUSTOM,
    OBJ_ROUNDDIAL,
    OBJ_METER,
    OBJ_GRID,
    OBJ_CHART,
    OBJ_TEXTENTRY,
    OBJ_DIGITALMETER,
    OBJ_ANALOGCLOCK,
    OBJ_UNKNOWN
} GOL_OBJ_TYPE;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
OBJ_BUTTON	Type defined for Button (█) Object.

OBJ_WINDOW	Type defined for Window (█) Object.
OBJ_CHECKBOX	Type defined for Check Box Object.
OBJ_RADIOBUTTON	Type defined for Radio Button (█) Object.
OBJ_EDITBOX	Type defined for Edit Box Object.
OBJ_LISTBOX	Type defined for List Box Object.
OBJ_SLIDER	Type defined for Slider (█) and/or Scroll (█) Bar (█) Object.
OBJ_PROGRESSBAR	Type defined for Progress Object.
OBJ_STATICTEXT	Type defined for Static Text Object.
OBJ_PICTURE	Type defined for Picture (█) or Bitmap Object.
OBJ_GROUPBOX	Type defined for Group Box Object.
OBJ_CUSTOM	Type defined for Custom Object.
OBJ_ROUNDDIAL	Type defined for Dial (█) Object.
OBJ_METER	Type defined for Meter (█) Object.
OBJ_GRID	Type defined for Grid (█) Object.
OBJ_CHART	Type defined for Chart (█) Object.
OBJ_TEXTENTRY	Type defined for Text-Entry Object.
OBJ_DIGITALMETER	Type defined for DIGITALMETER (█) Object.
OBJ_ANALOGCLOCK	Type defined for ANALOGCLOCK (█) Object.
OBJ_UNKNOWN	Type is undefined and not supported by the library.

## Overview

This structure defines the Object types used in the library.

### 7.2.1.2 OBJ\_HEADER Structure

#### File

GOL.h

#### C

```
typedef struct {
    WORD ID;
    void * pNxtObj;
    GOL_OBJ_TYPE type;
    WORD state;
    SHORT left;
    SHORT top;
    SHORT right;
    SHORT bottom;
    GOL_SCHEME * pGolScheme;
    DRAW_FUNC DrawObj;
    FREE_FUNC FreeObj;
    MSG_FUNC MsgObj;
    MSG_DEFAULT_FUNC MsgDefaultObj;
} OBJ_HEADER;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
WORD ID;	Unique id assigned for referencing.
void * pNxtObj;	A pointer to the next object.
GOL_OBJ_TYPE type;	Identifies the type of GOL object.
WORD state;	State of object.
SHORT left;	Left position of the Object.
SHORT top;	Top position of the Object.
SHORT right;	Right position of the Object.

SHORT bottom;	Bottom position of the Object.
GOL_SCHEME * pGolScheme;	Pointer to the scheme used.
DRAW_FUNC DrawObj;	function pointer to the object draw function
FREE_FUNC FreeObj;	function pointer to the object free function
MSG_FUNC MsgObj;	function pointer to the object message function
MSG_DEFAULT_FUNC MsgDefaultObj;	function pointer to the object default message function

**Overview**

This structure defines the first nine fields of the Objects structure. This allows generic operations on library Objects.

### 7.2.1.3 DRAW\_FUNC Type

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
typedef WORD (* DRAW_FUNC)(void *);
```

**Description**

object draw function pointer typedef

### 7.2.1.4 FREE\_FUNC Type

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
typedef void (* FREE_FUNC)(void *);
```

**Description**

object free function pointer typedef

### 7.2.1.5 MSG\_DEFAULT\_FUNC Type

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
typedef void (* MSG_DEFAULT_FUNC)(WORD, void *, GOL_MSG *);
```

**Description**

object default message function pointer typedef

### 7.2.1.6 MSG\_FUNC Type

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
typedef WORD (* MSG_FUNC)(void *, GOL_MSG *);
```

## Description

object message function pointer typedef

### 7.2.1.7 Analog Clock

Analog Clock is an Object that emulates an analog clock with moving hands. It can be used with or without a bitmap image as the background source.

#### Functions

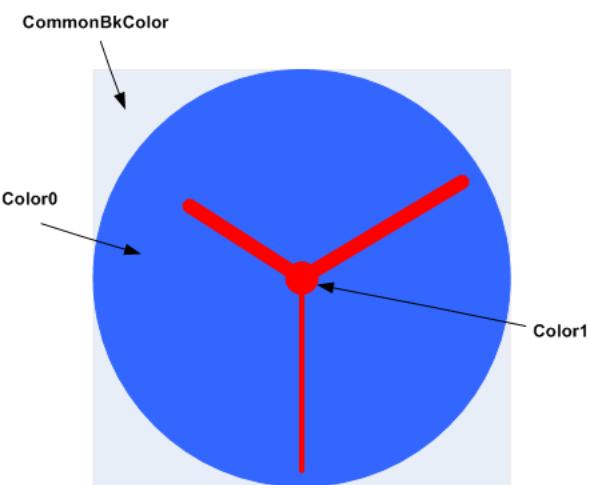
	Name	Description
≡	AcCreate ( )	This function creates an Analog Clock object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	AcDraw ( )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.
≡	AcSetHour ( )	Sets the hour value of the analog clock.
≡	AcSetMinute ( )	Sets the minute value of the analog clock.
≡	AcSetSecond ( )	Sets the second value of the analog clock.

#### Structures

Name	Description
ANALOGCLOCK ( )	Defines the parameters required for a clock Object. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the clock: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>centerx and centery determine the middle of the clock.</li> <li>radius defines the radius of the clock.</li> <li>*pBitmap points to the background image for the analog clock.</li> </ol>

#### Description

The Analog Clock object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments for the clock.



## 7.2.1.7.1 Analog Clock States

### Macros

Name	Description
AC_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.
AC_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
AC_HIDE (█)	Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.
AC_PRESSED (█)	Bit for press state.
AC_TICK (█)	Bit to tick second hand
UPDATE_HOUR (█)	Bit to indicate hour hand must be redrawn
UPDATE_MINUTE (█)	Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn
UPDATE_SECOND (█)	Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn

### Module

Analog Clock (█)

### Description

List of Analog Clock bit states.

## 7.2.1.7.1.1 AC\_DRAW Macro

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
#define AC_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.
```

### Description

Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.

## 7.2.1.7.1.2 AC\_DISABLED Macro

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
#define AC_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

### Description

Bit for disabled state.

## 7.2.1.7.1.3 AC\_HIDE Macro

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
#define AC_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.
```

### Description

Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.

#### 7.2.1.7.1.4 AC\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
#define AC_PRESSED 0x0004 // Bit for press state.
```

**Description**

Bit for press state.

#### 7.2.1.7.1.5 AC\_TICK Macro

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
#define AC_TICK 0x1000 // Bit to tick second hand
```

**Description**

Bit to tick second hand

#### 7.2.1.7.1.6 UPDATE\_HOUR Macro

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
#define UPDATE_HOUR 0x2000 // Bit to indicate hour hand must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate hour hand must be redrawn

#### 7.2.1.7.1.7 UPDATE\_MINUTE Macro

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
#define UPDATE_MINUTE 0x0100 // Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn

#### 7.2.1.7.1.8 UPDATE\_SECOND Macro

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
#define UPDATE_SECOND 0x0200 // Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate minute hand must be redrawn

## 7.2.1.7.2 AcCreate Function

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
ANALOGCLOCK * AcCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    SHORT hour,
    SHORT minute,
    SHORT radius,
    BOOL sechand,
    WORD state,
    void * pBitmap,
    GOL_SCHEME * pscheme
);
```

### Module

Analog Clock ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
SHORT hour	Initial hour value.
SHORT minute	Initial minute value.
SHORT radius	Sets the radius of the clock.
BOOL sechand	Flag to indicate if the second hand will be drawn or not.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
void * pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap used on the face of the analog clock dimension of the image must match the dimension of the widget.
GOL_SCHEME * pscheme	Pointer to the style scheme used.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object created.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
GOL_SCHEME *pscheme;
WORD state;

pscheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = AC_DRAW;

AnalogClock = AcCreate(ANALOGCLOCK_ID, 20, 64, 50, 118, 1, 20, 30, FALSE, state, NULL,
pscheme);
```

## Overview

This function creates an Analog Clock object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
ANALOGCLOCK ( ) *AcCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, SHORT radius, void *pBitmap, XCHAR ( ) *pText, GOL_SCHEME ( ) *pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.7.3 AcDraw Function

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
WORD AcDraw(
    void * pAc
);
```

### Module

Analog Clock ( )

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
void * pAc	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Example

```
void MyGOLDraw() {
    static OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj = NULL;
    int done;

    // There are no objects
    if(GOLGetList() == NULL)
        return;

    // If it's last object jump to head
    if(pCurrentObj == NULL)
        pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();

    done = 0;

    // this only process Button and Window
    while(pCurrentObj != NULL) {
        // check if object state indicates redrawing
        if(pCurrentObj->state&0xFC00) {
            switch(pCurrentObj->type) {
                case OBJ_ANALOGCLOCK:
                    done = AcDraw((ANALOGCLOCK*)pCurrentObj);
                    break;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        case OBJ_WINDOW:
            done = WndDraw( (WINDOW* )pCurrentObj );
            break;
        default:
            done = 1;
            break;
    }
    if(done){
        // reset only the state if drawing was finished
        pCurrentObj->state = 0;
    }else{
        // done processing the list
        return;
    }
}
// go to next object
pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
}
}

```

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

**Syntax**

WORD AcDraw(ANALOGCLOCK (■) \*pAc)

**7.2.1.7.4 AcSetHour Function****File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```

void AcSetHour(
    ANALOGCLOCK * pAc,
    SHORT hour
);

```

**Module**

Analog Clock (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
ANALOGCLOCK * pAc	The pointer to the object whose hands will be modified.
SHORT hour	New hour time.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets the hour value of the analog clock.

**Syntax**

AcSetHour(ANALOGCLOCK (■) \*pAc, SHORT hour)

## 7.2.1.7.5 AcSetMinute Function

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
void AcSetMinute(
    ANALOGCLOCK * pAc,
    SHORT minute
);
```

### Module

Analog Clock (

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
ANALOGCLOCK * pAc	The pointer to the object whose hands will be modified.
SHORT minute	New minute time.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

Sets the minute value of the analog clock.

### Syntax

```
AcSetMinute(ANALOGCLOCK () *pAc, SHORT minute)
```

## 7.2.1.7.6 AcSetSecond Function

### File

AnalogClock.h

### C

```
void AcSetSecond(
    ANALOGCLOCK * pAc,
    SHORT second
);
```

### Module

Analog Clock (

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
ANALOGCLOCK * pAc	The pointer to the object whose hands will be modified.
SHORT second	New second time.

### Side Effects

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets the second value of the analog clock.

**Syntax**

```
AcSetSecond(ANALOGCLCOK *pAc, SHORT second)
```

## 7.2.1.7.7 ANALOGCLOCK Structure

**File**

AnalogClock.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT radius;
    SHORT centerx;
    SHORT centery;
    SHORT valueS;
    SHORT prev_valueS;
    SHORT valueM;
    SHORT prev_valueM;
    SHORT valueH;
    SHORT prev_valueH;
    void * pBitmap;
} ANALOGCLOCK;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
SHORT radius;	Radius of the clock.
SHORT centerx;	center location in X-axis.
SHORT centery;	center location in Y-axis.
SHORT valueS;	time in Second
SHORT prev_valueS;	previous time in Second
SHORT valueM;	time in Minute
SHORT prev_valueM;	previous time in Minute
SHORT valueH;	time in Hour
SHORT prev_valueH;	previous time in Hour
void * pBitmap;	Pointer to bitmap used.

**Module**

Analog Clock (█)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a clock Object. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the clock:

1. centerx and centery determine the middle of the clock.
2. radius defines the radius of the clock.
4. \*pBitmap points to the background image for the analog clock.

## 7.2.1.8 Button

Button is an Object that emulates a press and release effect when operated upon.

### Functions

Name	Description
.BtnCreate ( )	This function creates a BUTTON ( ) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
.BtnDraw ( )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. The text on the face of the button is drawn on top of the bitmap. Text is always rendered centered on the face of the button. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid... more ( )
.BtnSetText ( )	This function sets the string used for the object.
.BtnMsgDefault ( )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
.BtnTranslateMsg ( )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

### Macros

Name	Description
BtnGetText ( )	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.
BtnGetBitmap ( )	This macro returns the location of the currently used bitmap for the object.
BtnSetBitmap ( )	This macro sets the bitmap used in the object. The size of the bitmap must match the face of the button.

### Structures

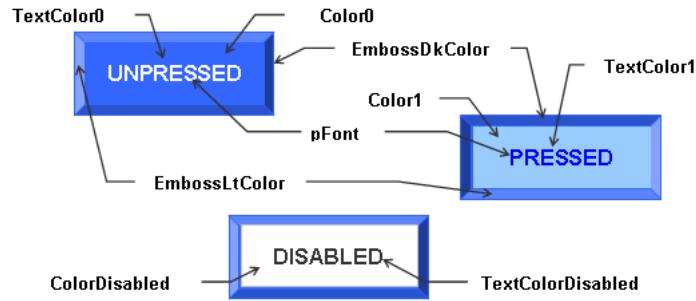
Name	Description
BUTTON ( )	Defines the parameters required for a button Object. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the button: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Width is determined by right - left.</li> <li>Height is determined by top - bottom.</li> <li>Radius - specifies if the button will have a rounded edge. If zero then the button will have sharp (cornered) edge.</li> <li>If <math>2 * \text{radius} = \text{height} = \text{width}</math>, the button is a circular button.</li> </ol>

### Description

Button supports Keyboard and Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

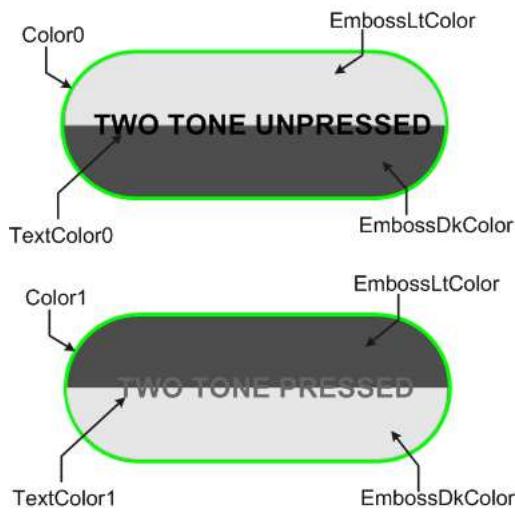
1. BTN\_MSG\_PRESSED
2. BTN\_MSG\_RELEASED

The button object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments for the button.



**CommonBkColor** – used to hide the button on the screen.

A variant of the button widget, is to implement it as a two tone button. The button object is rendered using the modified color assignments in the style scheme.



**Two Tone Button**

### 7.2.1.8.1 Button States

#### Macros

Name	Description
BTN_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
BTN_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.
BTN_DRAW_FOCUS (█)	Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.
BTN_FOCUSED (█)	Bit for focus state.
BTN_HIDE (█)	Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.
BTN_PRESSED (█)	Bit for press state.
BTN_TEXTBOTTOM (█)	Bit to indicate text is top aligned.
BTN_TEXTLEFT (█)	Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
BTN_TEXTRIGHT (█)	Bit to indicate text is right aligned.
BTN_TEXTTOP (█)	Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.
BTN_TOGGLE (█)	Bit to indicate button will have a toggle behavior.
BTN_TWOTONE (█)	Bit to indicate the button is a two tone type.

BTN_NOPANEL (🔗)	Bit to indicate the button will be drawn without a panel (for faster drawing when the button image used is larger than the button panel).
-----------------	---

**Module**

Button (🔗)

**Description**

List of Button (🔗) bit states.

### 7.2.1.8.1.1 **BTN\_DISABLED** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.8.1.2 **BTN\_DRAW** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate button must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.8.1.3 **BTN\_DRAW\_FOCUS** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000 // Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.8.1.4 **BTN\_FOCUSED** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focus state.
```

**Description**

Bit for focus state.

### 7.2.1.8.1.5 **BTN\_HIDE** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate button must be removed from screen.

### 7.2.1.8.1.6 **BTN\_PRESSED** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_PRESSED 0x0004 // Bit for press state.
```

**Description**

Bit for press state.

### 7.2.1.8.1.7 **BTN\_TEXTBOTTOM** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TEXTBOTTOM 0x0040 // Bit to indicate text is top aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is top aligned.

### 7.2.1.8.1.8 **BTN\_TEXTLEFT** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TEXTLEFT 0x0020 // Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is left aligned.

### 7.2.1.8.1.9 **BTN\_TEXTRIGHT** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TEXTRIGHT 0x0010 // Bit to indicate text is right aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is right aligned.

### 7.2.1.8.1.10 **BTN\_TEXTPTOP** Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TEXTTOP 0x0080 // Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.

**7.2.1.8.1.11 BTN\_TOGGLE Macro****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TOGGLE 0x0008 // Bit to indicate button will have a toggle behavior.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate button will have a toggle behavior.

**7.2.1.8.1.12 BTN\_TWOTONE Macro****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_TWOTONE 0x0100 // Bit to indicate the button is a two tone type.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the button is a two tone type.

**7.2.1.8.1.13 BTN\_NOPANEL Macro****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BTN_NOPANEL 0x0200 // Bit to indicate the button will be drawn without a panel  
(for faster drawing when the button image used is larger than the button panel).
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the button will be drawn without a panel (for faster drawing when the button image used is larger than the button panel).

**7.2.1.8.2 BtnCreate Function****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
BUTTON * BtnCreate(  
    WORD ID,  
    SHORT left,  
    SHORT top,  
    SHORT right,  
    SHORT bottom,  
    SHORT radius,  
    WORD state,  
    void * pBitmap,  
    XCHAR * pText,  
    GOL_SCHEME * pscheme
```

);

**Module**

Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
SHORT radius	Radius of the rounded edge.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
void * pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap used on the face of the button dimension of the bitmap must match the dimension of the button.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text of the button.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
BUTTON *buttons[3];
WORD state;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = BTN_DRAW;

buttons[0] = BtnCreate(1,20,64,50,118,0, state, NULL, "ON", pScheme);
// check if button 0 is created
if (buttons[0] == NULL)
    return 0;

buttons[1] = BtnCreate(2,52,64,82,118,0, state, NULL, "OFF", pScheme);
// check if button 1 is created
if (buttons[1] == NULL)
    return 0;

buttons[2] = BtnCreate(3,84,64,114,118,0, state, NULL, "HI", pScheme);
// check if button 2 is created
if (buttons[2] == NULL)
    return 0;

return 1;

```

**Overview**

This function creates a BUTTON (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
BUTTON (█) *BtnCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, SHORT radius, void *pBitmap,
XCHAR (█) *pText, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

### 7.2.1.8.3 BtnDraw Function

#### File

Button.h

#### C

```
WORD BtnDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

#### Module

Button (█)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pB	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

#### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

#### Example

```
void MyGOLDraw() {
    static OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj = NULL;
    int done;

    // There are no objects
    if(GOLGetList() == NULL)
        return;

    // If it's last object jump to head
    if(pCurrentObj == NULL)
        pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();

    done = 0;

    // this only process Button and Window
    while(pCurrentObj != NULL){
        // check if object state indicates redrawing
        done = pCurrentObj->draw(pCurrentObj);

        if(done){
            // reset only the state if drawing was finished
            pCurrentObj->state = 0;
        }else{
            // done processing the list
            return;
        }
    }
    // go to next object
    pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
}
```

## Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

The text on the face of the button is drawn on top of the bitmap. Text is always rendered centered on the face of the button.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

## Syntax

```
WORD BtnDraw(void *pObj)
```

### 7.2.1.8.4 BtnGetText Macro

#### File

Button.h

#### C

```
#define BtnGetText(pB) ((BUTTON *)pB)->pText
```

#### Module

Button (█)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pB	Pointer to the object.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns pointer to the text string being used.

#### Preconditions

none

#### Example

```
XCHAR *pChar;
BUTTON Button[2];

pChar = BtnGetText(Button[0]);
```

## Overview

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

## Syntax

```
BtnGetText(pB)
```

### 7.2.1.8.5 BtnSetText Function

#### File

Button.h

#### C

```
void BtnSetText(
    BUTTON * pB,
```

```
XCHAR * pText  
) ;
```

**Module**

Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
BUTTON * pB	The pointer to the object whose text will be modified.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text that will be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
XCHAR Label0[] = "ON";  
XCHAR Label1[] = "OFF";  
BUTTON Button[2];  
  
BtnSetText(Button[0], Label0);  
BtnSetText(Button[1], Label1);
```

**Overview**

This function sets the string used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
BtnSetText(BUTTON (█) *pB, XCHAR (█) *pText)
```

## 7.2.1.8.6 BtnGetBitmap Macro

**File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BtnGetBitmap(pB) ((BUTTON *)pB)->pBitmap
```

**Module**

Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pB	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the current bitmap used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
BUTTON *pButton;
BITMAP_FLASH *pUsedBitmap;

pUsedBitmap = BtnGetBitmap(pButton);
```

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the currently used bitmap for the object.

**Syntax**

```
BtnGetBitmap(pB)
```

**7.2.1.8.7 BtnSetBitmap Macro****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
#define BtnSetBitmap(pB, pBitmap) ((BUTTON *)pB)->pBitmap = pBitmap
```

**Module**

Button (  )

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pB	Pointer to the object.
pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap to be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
extern BITMAP_FLASH myIcon;
BUTTON *pButton;

BtnSetBitmap(pButton, &myIcon);
```

**Overview**

This macro sets the bitmap used in the object. The size of the bitmap must match the face of the button.

**Syntax**

```
BtnSetBitmap(pB, pBitmap)
```

**7.2.1.8.8 BtnMsgDefault Function****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
void BtnMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
```

```

    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);

```

**Module**

Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
void * pObj	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
BTN_MSG_PRESSED	Touch Screen, Keyboard	Set BTN_PRESSED (█)	Button (█) will be redrawn in the pressed state.
BTN_MSG_RELEASED	Touch Screen, Keyboard	Clear BTN_PRESSED (█)	Button (█) will be redrawn in the unpressed state.
BTN_MSG_CANCELPRESS	Touch Screen,	Clear BTN_PRESSED (█)	Button (█) will be redrawn in the unpressed state.

**Syntax**

BtnMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void \*pObj, GOL\_MSG (█)\* pMsg)

**7.2.1.8.9 BtnTranslateMsg Function****File**

Button.h

**C**

```

WORD BtnTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);

```

**Module**

Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
void * pObj	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- BTN\_MSG\_PRESSED – Button (■) is pressed
- BTN\_MSG\_RELEASED – Button (■) is released
- BTN\_MSG\_CANCELPRESS – Button (■) will be released, user cancels press action on the button
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Button (■) is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void MyGOLMsg (GOL_MSG *pMsg) {
    OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj;
    WORD objMsg;

    if(pMsg->uiEvent == EVENT_INVALID)
        return;
    pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();

    while(pCurrentObj != NULL){
        // If the object must be redrawn
        // It cannot accept message
        if(!IsObjUpdated(pCurrentObj)){
            translatedMsg = pCurrentObj->MsgObj(pCurrentObj, pMsg);

            if(translatedMsg != OBJ_MSG_INVALID)
            {
                if(GOLMsgCallback(translatedMsg, pCurrentObj, pMsg))
                    if(pCurrentObj->MsgDefaultObj)
                        pCurrentObj->MsgDefaultObj(translatedMsg, pCurrentObj, pMsg);
            }
        }
        pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
    }
}
```

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
BTN_MSG_PRESSED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of the button while the button is not pressed.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_CR_PRESSED (■) or SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (■) while the button is not pressed.

BTN_MSG_STILLPRESSED	Touch Screen	EVENT_STILLPRESS	If event occurs and the x,y position does not change from the previous press position in the face of the button.
BTN_MSG_RELEASED	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of the button while the button is pressed.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_CR_RELEASED (█) or SCAN_SPACE_RELEASED (█) while the button is pressed.
BTN_MSG_CANCELPRESS	Touch Screen	EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs outside the face of the button and the button is currently pressed.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
BtnTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.8.10 BUTTON Structure****File**

Button.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT radius;
    SHORT textWidth;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
    void * pBitmap;
} BUTTON;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
SHORT radius;	Radius for rounded buttons.
SHORT textWidth;	Computed text width, done at creation.
SHORT textHeight;	Computed text height, done at creation.
XCHAR * pText;	Pointer to the text used.
void * pBitmap;	Pointer to bitmap used.

**Module**

Button (█)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a button Object. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the button:

1. Width is determined by right - left.
2. Height is determined by top - bottom.
3. Radius - specifies if the button will have a rounded edge. If zero then the button will have sharp (cornered) edge.
4. If  $2 \times \text{radius} = \text{height} = \text{width}$ , the button is a circular button.

## 7.2.1.9 Chart

Chart is an Object that draws a bar chart or a pie chart representation of a single data or series of data.

### Functions

Name	Description
ChCreate ( )	This function creates a CHART ( ) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
ChDraw ( )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. The colors of the bars of the bar chart or sectors of the pie chart can be the default color table or user defined color table set by ChSetColorTable ( )() function. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is... more ( )
ChAddDataSeries ( )	This function creates a DATASERIES ( ) object and populates the structure with the given parameters.
ChRemoveDataSeries ( )	This function removes DATASERIES ( ) object from the list of DATASERIES ( ) objects and frees the memory used of that removed object. The position of the object to be removed is specified by the number parameter. If the list has only one member, it removes the member regardless of the number given.
ChSetValueRange ( )	This function sets the minimum and maximum range of values that the bar chart will show. The criteria is that min <= max.
ChSetPercentRange ( )	This function sets the minimum and maximum range of percentage that the bar chart will show. The criteria is that min <= max. This affects bar charts only and CH_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.
ChSetSampleRange ( )	This function sets the sample start and sample end when drawing the chart. Together with the data series' SHOW_DATA ( ) flags the different way of displaying the chart data is achieved.
ChFreeDataSeries ( )	This function removes DATASERIES ( ) object from the list of DATASERIES ( ) objects and frees the memory used of that removed object.
ChTranslateMsg ( )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

### Macros

Name	Description
ChShowSeries ( )	This macro sets the specified data series number show flag to be set to SHOW_DATA ( ).
ChHideSeries ( )	This macro sets the specified data series number show flag to be set to HIDE_DATA ( ).
ChGetShowSeriesCount ( )	This macro shows the number of data series that has its show flag set to SHOW_DATA ( ).
ChGetShowSeriesStatus ( )	This macro returns the show ID status of the DATASERIES ( ).
ChSetValueLabel ( )	This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the value axis label of the bar chart.
ChGetValueLabel ( )	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the value axis label of the bar chart.
ChGetValueMax ( )	This macro returns the current maximum value that will be drawn for bar charts.
ChGetValueMin ( )	This macro returns the current minimum value that will be drawn for bar charts.
ChGetValueRange ( )	This macro gets the current range for bar charts. The value returned is calculated from the current (valMax - valMin) set. To get the minimum use ChGetValueMin ( )() and to get the maximum use ChGetValueMax ( )().

ChSetSampleLabel (█)	This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the sample axis label of the bar chart.
ChGetSampleLabel (█)	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the sample axis label of the bar chart.
ChGetSampleStart (█)	This macro returns the sampling start value.
ChGetSampleEnd (█)	This macro returns the sampling end value.
ChGetPercentRange (█)	This macro gets the percentage range for bar charts. The value returned is calculated from percentage max - min. To get the minimum use ChGetPercentMin (█)() and to get the maximum use ChGetPercentMax (█)().
ChGetSampleRange (█)	This macro gets the sample range for pie or bar charts. The value returned is calculated from smplEnd - smplStart.
ChGetPercentMax (█)	This macro returns the current maximum value of the percentage range that will be drawn for bar charts when CH_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.
ChGetPercentMin (█)	This macro returns the current minimum value of the percentage range that will be drawn for bar charts when CH_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.
ChSetColorTable (█)	This macro sets the color table used to draw the data in pie and bar charts.
ChGetColorTable (█)	This macro returns the current color table used for the pie and bar charts.
ChSetTitle (█)	This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the title of the chart.
ChGetTitle (█)	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the title of the chart.
ChSetTitleFont (█)	This macro sets the location of the font used for the title of the chart.
ChGetTitleFont (█)	This macro returns the location of the font used for the title of the chart.
ChGetAxisLabelFont (█)	This macro returns the location of the font used for the X and Y axis labels of the chart.
ChSetAxisLabelFont (█)	This macro sets the location of the font used for the X and Y axis labels of the chart.
ChGetGridLabelFont (█)	This macro returns the location of the font used for the X and Y axis grid labels of the chart.
ChSetGridLabelFont (█)	This macro sets the location of the font used for the X and Y axis grid labels of the chart.

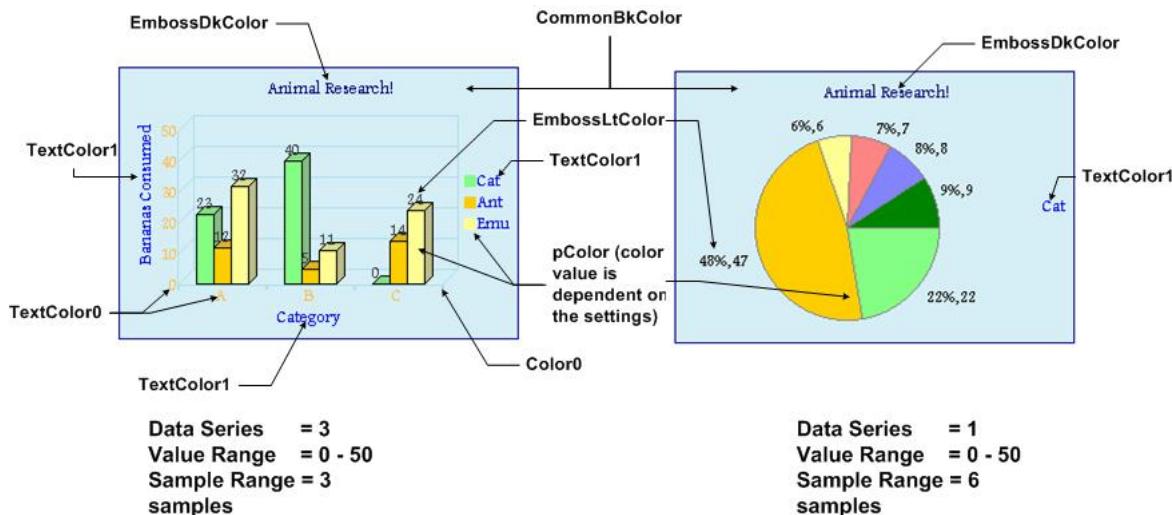
## Structures

Name	Description
CHART (█)	Defines the parameters required for a chart Object.
DATASERIES (█)	Defines a variable for the CHART (█) object. It specifies the number of samples, pointer to the array of samples for the data series and pointer to the next data series. A member of this structure (show) is used as a flag to determine if the series is to be drawn or not. Together with the smplStart and smplEnd it will determine what kind of chart will be drawn.
CHARTPARAM (█)	Defines the parameters for the CHART (█) object.

## Description

It supports only Keyboard inputs, replying to any touch screen events with the message: CH\_MSG\_SELECTED.

The Chart Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



### Chart Terminologies

1. Value Axis - This is the vertical range of a chart for normal bar charts and horizontal range of the chart for horizontally drawn bar charts. In most cases this axis will represent values (\$ amounts), temperatures, or other numeric data.
2. Sample Axis - This is the horizontal range of a chart for normal bar charts and vertical range of the chart for horizontally drawn bar charts. In most cases this axis will represent categories, such as months, sample segments, or other non-numeric data.
3. Title - The text used to define the Title of the chart.
4. Data Points (or the sample points) These are the individual points where a value is graphed, as a point on a line, a bar, or a pie slice.
5. Data Series - A complete series of data, distinguished by the same color and type of sample point.
6. Legend - Labels that indicate how each data series is displayed on the chart. Each color represents a different data series. For pie charts with only one data series shown, each color represents one sector or one sample point.
7. Data Sample Range - The scale for the data sample axis. Example: months from January to December. Internally, this range is represented by:
  - Numeric Sequence 1, 2, 3, ... and so on
  - Alphabet Sequence A, B, C, .. and so on.
8. Value Range - The scale for the value axis. Example: range of numbers from the lowest to the highest to be charted.

### 7.2.1.9.1 Chart States

#### Macros

Name	Description
CH_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
CH_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate chart must be redrawn.
CH_DRAW_DATA (█)	Bit to indicate data portion of the chart must be redrawn.
CH_3D_ENABLE (█)	Bit to indicate that bar charts are to be drawn with 3-D effect
CH_BAR (█)	Bit to indicate the chart is type bar. If both PIE and BAR types are set BAR type has higher priority.
CH_BAR_HOR (█)	These bits (with CH_BAR (█) bit set), sets the bar chart to be drawn horizontally.
CH_DONUT (█)	These bits (with CH_PIE (█) bit set), sets the pie chart to be drawn in a donut shape.
CH_LEGEND (█)	Bit to indicate that legend is to be shown. Usable only when seriesCount > 1.

CH_NUMERIC (图)	This bit is used only for bar charts. If this bit is set, it indicates that the bar chart labels for variables are numeric. If this bit is not set, it indicates that the bar chart labels for variables are alphabets.
CH_PERCENT (图)	Bit to indicate that the pie chart will be drawn with percentage values shown for the sample data. For bar chart, if CH_VALUE (图) is set, it toggles the value shown to percentage.
CH_PIE (图)	Bit to indicate the chart is type pie. If both PIE and BAR types are set BAR type has higher priority.
CH_VALUE (图)	Bit to indicate that the values of the bar chart data or pie chart data are to be shown
CH_HIDE (图)	Bit to indicate chart must be removed from screen.

**Module**

Chart (图)

**Description**

List of Chart (图) bit states.

**7.2.1.9.1.1 CH\_DISABLED Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

#define CH\_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.

**Description**

Bit for disabled state.

**7.2.1.9.1.2 CH\_DRAW Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

#define CH\_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate chart must be redrawn.

**Description**

Bit to indicate chart must be redrawn.

**7.2.1.9.1.3 CH\_DRAW\_DATA Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

#define CH\_DRAW\_DATA 0x2000 // Bit to indicate data portion of the chart must be redrawn.

**Description**

Bit to indicate data portion of the chart must be redrawn.

**7.2.1.9.1.4 CH\_3D\_ENABLE Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_3D_ENABLE 0x0008      // Bit to indicate that bar charts are to be drawn with
3-D effect
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that bar charts are to be drawn with 3-D effect

**7.2.1.9.1.5 CH\_BAR Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_BAR 0x0200      // Bit to indicate the chart is type bar. If both PIE and BAR
types are set BAR type has higher priority.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the chart is type bar. If both PIE and BAR types are set BAR type has higher priority.

**7.2.1.9.1.6 CH\_BAR\_HOR Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_BAR_HOR 0x0240      // These bits (with CH_BAR bit set), sets the bar chart to
be drawn horizontally.
```

**Description**

These bits (with CH\_BAR (■) bit set), sets the bar chart to be drawn horizontally.

**7.2.1.9.1.7 CH\_DONUT Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_DONUT 0x0140      // These bits (with CH_PIE bit set), sets the pie chart to be
drawn in a donut shape.
```

**Description**

These bits (with CH\_PIE (■) bit set), sets the pie chart to be drawn in a donut shape.

**7.2.1.9.1.8 CH\_LEGEND Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_LEGEND 0x0001      // Bit to indicate that legend is to be shown. Usable only
when seriesCount > 1.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that legend is to be shown. Usable only when seriesCount > 1.

### 7.2.1.9.1.9 CH\_NUMERIC Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_NUMERIC 0x0080      // This bit is used only for bar charts. If this bit is set,
it indicates that the
```

**Description**

This bit is used only for bar charts. If this bit is set, it indicates that the bar chart labels for variables are numeric. If this bit is not set, it indicates that the bar chart labels for variables are alphabets.

### 7.2.1.9.1.10 CH\_PERCENT Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_PERCENT 0x0010      // Bit to indicate that the pie chart will be drawn with
percentage values shown for the sample data.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that the pie chart will be drawn with percentage values shown for the sample data. For bar chart, if CH\_VALUE (■) is set, it toggles the value shown to percentage.

### 7.2.1.9.1.11 CH\_PIE Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_PIE 0x0100      // Bit to indicate the chart is type pie. If both PIE and BAR
types are set BAR type has higher priority.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the chart is type pie. If both PIE and BAR types are set BAR type has higher priority.

### 7.2.1.9.1.12 CH\_VALUE Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_VALUE 0x0004      // Bit to indicate that the values of the bar chart data or
pie chart data are to be shown
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that the values of the bar chart data or pie chart data are to be shown

### 7.2.1.9.1.13 CH\_HIDE Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_HIDE 0x8000      // Bit to indicate chart must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate chart must be removed from screen.

## 7.2.1.9.2 Data Series Status Settings

**Macros**

Name	Description
HIDE_DATA (█)	Macro used to reset the data series show flag or indicate that the data series will not be shown when the chart is drawn.
SHOW_DATA (█)	Macro used to set the data series show flag or indicate that the data series will be shown when the chart is drawn.

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Description**

Data Series show status flag settings.

### 7.2.1.9.2.1 HIDE\_DATA Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define HIDE_DATA 0           // Macro used to reset the data series show flag or
                           // indicate that the data series will not be shown when the chart is drawn.
```

**Description**

Macro used to reset the data series show flag or indicate that the data series will not be shown when the chart is drawn.

### 7.2.1.9.2.2 SHOW\_DATA Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define SHOW_DATA 1          // Macro used to set the data series show flag or
                           // indicate that the data series will be shown when the chart is drawn.
```

**Description**

Macro used to set the data series show flag or indicate that the data series will be shown when the chart is drawn.

## 7.2.1.9.3 Chart Examples

Examples of generated bar charts based on settings.

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Description**

The following are some examples of settings and output chart that will be generated.

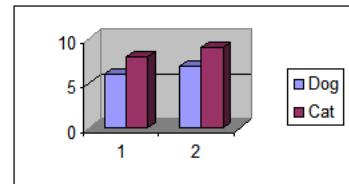
**Example 1**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 1
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,2);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
1	6	7	x
2	8	9	x

smplStart      smplEnd

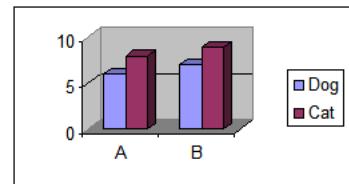
**Example 2**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 0
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,2);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
A	6	7	x
B	8	9	x

smplStart      smplEnd

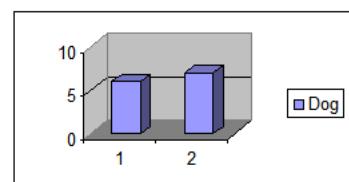
**Example 3**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 1
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,2);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
1	6	7	x
2	8	9	

smplStart      smplEnd

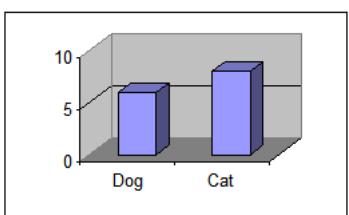
**Example 4**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 1
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,1);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
1	6	7	x
2	8	9	x

smplStart  
smplEnd

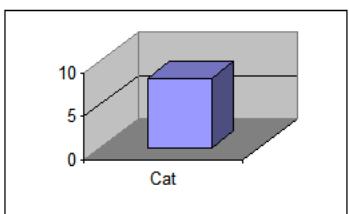
**Example 5**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 1
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,1);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
--	----------	----------	------

smplStart  
smplEnd

**More Customization...**

```
CH_NUMERIC = 1
SERIESDATA Series
SERIESDATA Series
```

***ChSetSampleRange(1,2);***

	Sample 1	Sample 2	Show
--	----------	----------	------

smplStart      smplEnd

\*pTitle  
\*pSmplLabel  
\*pValLabel

Animal Trend  
Year  
Number of Animal

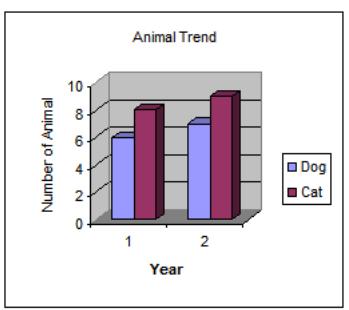
**7.2.1.9.4 ChCreate Function****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
CHART * ChCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    DATASERIES * pData,
    CHARTPARAM * pParam,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Chart (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
DATASERIES * pData	Pointer to the data for the contents of the chart. NULL can be assigned initially when creating the object.
CHARTPARAM * pParam	Pointer to the chart parameters. NULL can be assigned initially when creating the object and the chart parameters can be populated using the API provided.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used. When set to NULL, the default style scheme will be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
extern const FONT_FLASH GOLSsmallFont;
extern const FONT_FLASH GOLMediumFont;

// Note that strings are declared as such to cover cases
// where XCHAR type is declared as short (2 bytes).
XCHAR ChTitle[] = {'E','x','a','m','p','l','e',0};
XCHAR SampleName[] = {'C','a','t','e','g','o','r','y',0};
XCHAR ValueName[] = {'#','H','i','t','s',0};
XCHAR SeriesName[2] = {
    {'V','1',0},
    {'V','2',0},
};

V1Data[2] = { 50, 100 };
V2Data[2] = { 5, 10 };

GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
CHART *pChart;
CHARTPARAM Contents;
WORD state;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
```

```

state = CH_BAR|CH_DRAW|CH_BAR_HOR; // Bar Chart to be drawn with horizontal orientation

pChart = ChCreate(0x01, // ID
                  0, 0, // dimensions
                  GetMaxX(), // state of the chart
                  GetMaxY(), // data not initialized yet
                  state, // no parameters yet
                  NULL, // style scheme used
                  NULL,
                  pScheme);

if (pMyChart == NULL) // check if chart was allocated memory
    return 0;

ChSetTitleFont(pChart, (void*)&GOLMediumFont);
ChSetTitle(pChart, ChTitle); // set the title

// set the grid labels and axis labels font
ChSetGridLabelFont(pChart, (void*)&GOLS SmallFont);
ChSetAxisLabelFont(pChart, (void*)&GOLS SmallFont);

// set the labels for the X and Y axis
ChSetSampleLabel(pChart, (XCHAR*)SampleName);
ChSetValueLabel(pChart, (XCHAR*)ValueName);

ChAddDataSeries(pChart, 2, V1Data, (XCHAR*)SeriesName[0]);
ChAddDataSeries(pChart, 2, V2Data, (XCHAR*)SeriesName[1]);

// set the range of the sample values
ChSetValueRange(pChart, 0, 100);

// show all two samples to be displayed (start = 1, end = 2)
ChSetSampleRange(pChart, 1, 2);

GOLDraw(); // draw the chart

```

## Overview

This function creates a CHART (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
CHART (■) *ChCreate( WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, DATASERIES (■) *pData, CHARTPARAM (■) *pParam, GOL_SCHEME (■) *pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.9.5 ChDraw Function

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
WORD ChDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Chart (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none.

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

The colors of the bars of the bar chart or sectors of the pie chart can be the default color table or user defined color table set by ChSetColorTable (■)() function.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD ChDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.9.6 ChAddDataSeries Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
DATASERIES * ChAddDataSeries(
    CHART * pCh,
    WORD nSamples,
    WORD * pData,
    XCHAR * pName
);
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
CHART * pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
WORD nSamples	The number of samples or data points.
WORD * pData	Pointer to the array of samples or data points.
XCHAR * pName	Pointer to the string used to label the data series.

**Side Effects**

Appends to the list of DATASERIES (■) that the chart is operating on. By default, the show flag of the newly added data series is set to SHOW\_DATA (■) or enabled.

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the data variable (DATASERIES (■)) object created. If NULL is returned, the addition of the new object failed due to not enough memory for the object.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChCreate (§) example.

**Overview**

This function creates a DATASERIES (§) object and populates the structure with the given parameters.

**Syntax**

```
ChAddDataSeries(CHART (§) *pCh, WORD nSamples, WORD *pData, XCHAR (§) *pName)
```

## 7.2.1.9.7 ChRemoveDataSeries Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
void ChRemoveDataSeries(
    CHART * pCh,
    WORD number
);
```

**Module**

Chart (§)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
CHART * pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
WORD number	The position of the object to be removed in the list where the first object in the list is assigned a value of 1. If this parameter is set to zero, the whole list of DATA_SERIES is removed.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void ClearChartData(CHART *pCh) {
    if(pCh->pChData != NULL)
        // remove the all data series
        ChRemoveDataSeries(pCh, 0);
}
```

**Overview**

This function removes DATASERIES (§) object from the list of DATASERIES (§) objects and frees the memory used of that removed object. The position of the object to be removed is specified by the number parameter. If the list has only one member, it removes the member regardless of the number given.

**Syntax**

```
ChRemoveDataSeries(CHART (§) *pCh, WORD number)
```

## 7.2.1.9.8 ChShowSeries Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChShowSeries(pCh, seriesNum) (ChSetDataSeries(pCh, seriesNum, SHOW_DATA))
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
seriesNum	The data series number that will be modified. If this number is zero, all the entries' flag in the list will be set to SHOW_DATA ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ).

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the same passed number if successful otherwise -1 if unsuccessful.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
// from the example in ChCreate() we change the items to be shown when
// GOLDraw() is called.

// reset all data series to be HIDE_DATA
ChHideSeries(pMyChart, 0);
// set data series 1 (V1Data) to be shown
ChShowSeries(pMyChart, 1);
// draw the chart
GOLDraw();
.....
*
```

### Overview

This macro sets the specified data series number show flag to be set to SHOW\_DATA ([🔗](#)).

### Syntax

SHORT ChShowSeries(CHART ([🔗](#)) \*pCh, WORD seriesNum)

## 7.2.1.9.9 ChHideSeries Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChHideSeries(pCh, seriesNum) (ChSetDataSeries(pCh, seriesNum, HIDE_DATA))
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
seriesNum	The data series number that will be modified. If this number is zero, all the entries' flag in the list will be set to HIDE_DATA (█).

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the same passed number if successful otherwise -1 if unsuccessful.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChShowSeries (█)() example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the specified data series number show flag to be set to HIDE\_DATA (█).

**Syntax**

```
SHORT ChHideSeries(CHART (█) *pCh, WORD seriesNum)
```

## 7.2.1.9.10 ChGetShowSeriesCount Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetShowSeriesCount(pCh) (pCh->prm.seriesCount)
```

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the number of data series with its show flag set to SHOW\_DATA (█).

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro shows the number of data series that has its show flag set to SHOW\_DATA (█)

**Syntax**

```
ChGetShowSeriesCount(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.11 ChGetShowSeriesStatus Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChGetShowSeriesStatus(pDSeries) (pDSeries->show)
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pDSeries	Pointer to the data series(DATASERIES ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )) that is being checked.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the show flag. 1 - (SHOW\_DATA ([🔗](#))) means that the show status flag is set. 0 - (HIDE\_DATA ([🔗](#))) means that the show status flag is not set.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro returns the show ID status of the DATASERIES ([🔗](#)).

### Syntax

```
ChGetShowSeriesStatus(pDSeries)
```

## 7.2.1.9.12 ChSetValueLabel Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChSetValueLabel(pCh, pNewValueLabel) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pValLabel = pNewValueLabel)
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewYLabel	pointer to the string to be used as an value axis label of the bar chart.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none.

### Preconditions

none

**Example**

See ChCreate (■) example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the value axis label of the bar chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetValueLabel(pCh, pNewYLabel)
```

**7.2.1.9.13 ChGetValueLabel Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetValueLabel(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pValLabel)
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the current value axis label text of the bar chart.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the value axis label of the bar chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetValueLabel(pCh)
```

**7.2.1.9.14 ChGetValueMax Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetValueMax(pCh) (pCh->prm.valMax)
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the maximum value set when bar charts are drawn.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current maximum value that will be drawn for bar charts.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetValueMax(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.15 ChGetValueMin Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetValueMin(pCh) (pCh->prm.valMin)
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the minimum value set when bar charts are drawn.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current minimum value that will be drawn for bar charts.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetValueMin(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.16 ChSetValueRange Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
void ChSetValueRange(
    CHART * pCh,
    WORD min,
    WORD max
);
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
CHART * pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
WORD min	Minimum value that will be displayed in the bar chart.
WORD max	Maximum value that will be displayed in the bar chart.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the minimum and maximum range of values that the bar chart will show. The criteria is that min <= max.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetValueRange(CHART (■) *pCh, WORD min, WORD max)
```

## 7.2.1.9.17 ChGetValueRange Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetValueRange(pCh) (pCh->prm.valMax - pCh->prm.valMin)
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Value range computed from valMax-valMin.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro gets the current range for bar charts. The value returned is calculated from the current (valMax - valMin) set. To get the minimum use ChGetValueMin (■)() and to get the maximum use ChGetValueMax (■)().

**Syntax**

```
ChGetValueRange(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.18 ChSetSampleLabel Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChSetSampleLabel(pCh, pNewXLabel) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pSmpLabel = pNewXLabel)
```

### Module

Chart (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewXLabel	pointer to the string to be used as an sample axis label of the bar chart.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See ChCreate (█)() example.

### Overview

This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the sample axis label of the bar chart.

### Syntax

```
ChSetSampleLabel(pCh, pNewXLabel)
```

## 7.2.1.9.19 ChGetSampleLabel Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChGetSampleLabel(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pSmpLabel)
```

### Module

Chart (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the current sample axis label text of the bar chart.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the sample axis label of the bar chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetSampleLabel(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.20 ChGetSampleStart Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetSampleStart(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.smplStart)
```

**Module**

Chart (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the sample start point.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the sampling start value.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetSampleStart(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.21 ChGetSampleEnd Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetSampleEnd(pCh) ((CHART *)pCh)->prm.smplEnd
```

**Module**

Chart (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the sample end point.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the sampling end value.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetSampleEnd(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.22 ChSetPercentRange Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
void ChSetPercentRange(
    CHART * pCh,
    WORD min,
    WORD max
);
```

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
CHART * pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
WORD min	Minimum percentage value that will be displayed in the bar chart.
WORD max	Maximum percentage value that will be displayed in the bar chart.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the minimum and maximum range of percentage that the bar chart will show. The criteria is that min <= max. This affects bar charts only and CH\_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetPercentRange(CHART (█) *pCh, WORD min, WORD max)
```

## 7.2.1.9.23 ChGetPercentRange Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetPercentRange(pCh) (pCh->prm.perMax - pCh->prm.perMin)
```

**Module**Chart ([🔗](#))**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Percentage range computed from max-min.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro gets the percentage range for bar charts. The value returned is calculated from percentage max - min. To get the minimum use ChGetPercentMin ([🔗](#)()) and to get the maximum use ChGetPercentMax ([🔗](#)()).

**Syntax**

ChGetPercentRange(pCh)

## 7.2.1.9.24 ChSetSampleRange Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
void ChSetSampleRange(
    CHART * pCh,
    WORD start,
    WORD end
);
```

**Module**Chart ([🔗](#))**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
CHART * pCh	Pointer to the chart object.
WORD start	Start point of the data samples to be displayed.
WORD end	End point of the data samples to be displayed.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChCreate ([🔗](#)()) example.

## Overview

This function sets the sample start and sample end when drawing the chart. Together with the data series' SHOW\_DATA (■) flags the different way of displaying the chart data is achieved.

Start & End Value	The # of Data Series Flag Set	Chart (■) Description
Start <= End	1	Show the data indicated by Start and End points of the DATASERIES (■) with the flag set
Start = End	1	Show the data indicated by Start or End points of the DATASERIES (■) with the flag set
Start, End = > 1		Show the data indicated by Start point of the DATASERIES (■) with the flag set. Each samples of all checked data series are grouped together according to sample number.

## Syntax

```
ChSetSampleRange(CHART (■) *pCh, WORD start, WORD end)
```

## 7.2.1.9.25 ChGetSampleRange Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChGetSampleRange(pCh) (ChGetSampleEnd(pCh) - ChGetSampleStart(pCh))
```

### Module

Chart (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.

### Side Effects

none.

### Returns

Sample range computed from smplEnd - smplStart.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro gets the sample range for pie or bar charts. The value returned is calculated from smplEnd - smplStart.

## Syntax

```
ChGetSampleRange(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.26 ChGetPercentMax Macro

### File

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetPercentMax(pCh) (pCh->prm.perMax)
```

**Module**

Chart ([Diagram](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the maximum percentage value set when bar charts are drawn.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current maximum value of the percentage range that will be drawn for bar charts when CH\_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetPercentMax(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.27 ChGetPercentMin Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetPercentMin(pCh) (pCh->prm.perMin)
```

**Module**

Chart ([Diagram](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the minimum percentage value when bar charts are drawn.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current minimum value of the percentage range that will be drawn for bar charts when CH\_PERCENTAGE bit state is set.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetPercentMin(pCh)
```

## 7.2.1.9.28 ChSetColorTable Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChSetColorTable(pCh, pNewTable) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pColor) = pNewTable
```

### Module

Chart (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewTable	Pointer to the color table that will be used.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro sets the color table used to draw the data in pie and bar charts.

### Syntax

```
ChSetColorTable(pCh, pNewTable)
```

## 7.2.1.9.29 ChGetColorTable Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChGetColorTable(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pColor)
```

### Module

Chart (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the address of the color table used.

### Preconditions

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current color table used for the pie and bar charts.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetColorTable(pCh)
```

**7.2.1.9.30 ChSetTitle Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChSetTitle(pCh, pNewTitle) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pTitle = pNewTitle)
```

**Module**

Chart (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewTitle	pointer to the string to be used as a title of the chart.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChCreate () example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the address of the current text string used for the title of the chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetTitle(pCh, pNewTitle)
```

**7.2.1.9.31 ChGetTitle Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetTitle(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pTitle)
```

**Module**

Chart (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the current title text used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the title of the chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetTitle(pCh)
```

**7.2.1.9.32 ChSetTitleFont Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChSetTitleFont(pCh, pNewFont) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pTitleFont = pNewFont)
```

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewFont	Pointer to the font used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChCreate (█)() example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the location of the font used for the title of the chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetTitleFont(pCh, pNewFont)
```

**7.2.1.9.33 ChGetTitleFont Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChGetTitleFont(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pTitleFont)
```

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the address of the current font used for the title text.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the font used for the title of the chart.

**Syntax**

ChGetTitleFont(pCh)

## 7.2.1.9.34 ChGetAxisLabelFont Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

#define ChGetAxisLabelFont(pCh) (((CHART \*)pCh)-&gt;prm.pAxisLabelsFont)

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the address of the current font used for the title text.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the font used for the X and Y axis labels of the chart.

**Syntax**

ChGetAxisLabelFont(pCh)

## 7.2.1.9.35 ChSetAxisLabelFont Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChSetAxisLabelFont(pCh, pNewFont) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pAxisLabelsFont = pNewFont)
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewFont	Pointer to the font used.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See ChCreate ([🔗](#)()) example.

### Overview

This macro sets the location of the font used for the X and Y axis labels of the chart.

### Syntax

ChSetAxisLabelFont(pCh, pNewFont)

## 7.2.1.9.36 ChGetGridLabelFont Macro

### File

Chart.h

### C

```
#define ChGetGridLabelFont(pCh) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pGridLabelsFont)
```

### Module

Chart ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the address of the current font used for the title text.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the font used for the X and Y axis grid labels of the chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChGetGridLabelFont(pCh)
```

**7.2.1.9.37 ChSetGridLabelFont Macro****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define ChSetGridLabelFont(pCh, pNewFont) (((CHART *)pCh)->prm.pGridLabelsFont = pNewFont)
```

**Module**

Chart ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the object.
pNewFont	Pointer to the font used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See ChCreate ([🔗](#)()) example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the location of the font used for the X and Y axis grid labels of the chart.

**Syntax**

```
ChSetGridLabelFont(pCh, pNewFont)
```

**7.2.1.9.38 ChFreeDataSeries Function****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
void ChFreeDataSeries(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Chart ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pCh	Pointer to the chart object.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void ClearChartData(CHART *pCh) {
    if(pCh->pChData != NULL)
        // remove the all data series
        ChFreeDataSeries(pCh);
}
```

**Overview**

This function removes DATASERIES (■) object from the list of DATASERIES (■) objects and frees the memory used of that removed object.

**Syntax**

```
void ChFreeDataSeries(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.9.39 ChTranslateMsg Function

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
WORD ChTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pCh	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- CH\_MSG\_SELECTED – Chart (■) area is selected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Chart (■) is not affected

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
CH_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the chart.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
ChTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.9.40 CHART Structure****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    CHARTPARAM prm;
    DATASERIES * pChData;
} CHART;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
CHARTPARAM prm;	Structure for the parameters of the chart.
DATASERIES * pChData;	Pointer to the first chart data series in the link list of data series.

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a chart Object.

**7.2.1.9.41 DATASERIES Structure****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    XCHAR * pSData;
    WORD samples;
    BYTE show;
    WORD * pData;
    void * pNextData;
} DATASERIES;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
XCHAR * pSData;	Pointer to the data series name.
WORD samples;	Indicates the number of data samples (or data points) contained in the array specified by pData.
BYTE show;	The flag to indicate if the data series will be shown or not. If this flag is set to SHOW_DATA (█), the data series will be shown. If HIDE_DATA (█), the data series will not be shown.
WORD * pData;	Pointer to the array of data samples.
void * pNextData;	Pointer to the next data series. NULL if no other data series follows.

**Module**

Chart (█)

**Overview**

Defines a variable for the CHART (█) object. It specifies the number of samples, pointer to the array of samples for the data series and pointer to the next data series. A member of this structure (show) is used as a flag to determine if the series is to be drawn or not. Together with the smplStart and smplEnd it will determine what kind of chart will be drawn.

**7.2.1.9.42 CHARTPARAM Structure****File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    XCHAR * pTitle;
    XCHAR * pSmplLabel;
    XCHAR * pValLabel;
    SHORT seriesCount;
    WORD smplStart;
    WORD smplEnd;
    WORD valMax;
    WORD valMin;
    WORD perMax;
    WORD perMin;
    GFX_COLOR * pColor;
    void * pTitleFont;
    void * pAxisLabelsFont;
    void * pGridLabelsFont;
} CHARTPARAM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
XCHAR * pTitle;	Pointer to the Title of the chart.
XCHAR * pSmplLabel;	Pointer to the bar chart sample axis label. Depending
XCHAR * pValLabel;	Pointer to the bar chart value axis label. Depending
SHORT seriesCount;	Number of data series that will be displayed when chart is drawn.
WORD smplStart;	Start point of data sample range to be displayed (minimum/default value = 1)
WORD smplEnd;	End point of data sample range to be displayed.
WORD valMax;	Maximum value of a sample that can be displayed.
WORD valMin;	Minimum value of a sample that can be displayed.
WORD perMax;	Maximum value of the percentage range that can be displayed.
WORD perMin;	Minimum value of the percentage range that can be displayed.
GFX_COLOR * pColor;	Pointer to the color table used to draw the chart data.
void * pTitleFont;	Pointer to the font used for the title label of the chart.

void * pAxisLabelsFont;	Pointer to the font used for X and Y axis labels.
void * pGridLabelsFont;	Pointer to the font used for X and Y axis grid labels.

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters for the CHART (■) object.

## 7.2.1.9.43 Color Table

**Macros**

Name	Description
CH_CLR0 (■)	Bright Blue
CH_CLR1 (■)	Bright Red
CH_CLR2 (■)	Bright Green
CH_CLR3 (■)	Bright Yellow
CH_CLR4 (■)	Orange
CH_CLR5 (■)	Blue
CH_CLR6 (■)	Red
CH_CLR7 (■)	Green
CH_CLR8 (■)	Yellow
CH_CLR9 (■)	Dark Orange
CH_CLR10 (■)	Light Blur
CH_CLR11 (■)	Light Red
CH_CLR12 (■)	Light Green
CH_CLR13 (■)	Light Yellow
CH_CLR14 (■)	Light Orange
CH_CLR15 (■)	Gold

**Module**

Chart (■)

**Description**

Default color table used to draw data points in a chart.

### 7.2.1.9.43.1 CH\_CLR0 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

#define CH\_CLR0 WHITE

**Description**

Bright Blue

### 7.2.1.9.43.2 CH\_CLR1 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR1 BLACK
```

**Description**

Bright Red

### 7.2.1.9.43.3 CH\_CLR2 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR2 WHITE
```

**Description**

Bright Green

### 7.2.1.9.43.4 CH\_CLR3 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR3 BLACK
```

**Description**

Bright Yellow

### 7.2.1.9.43.5 CH\_CLR4 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR4 WHITE
```

**Description**

Orange

### 7.2.1.9.43.6 CH\_CLR5 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR5 BLACK
```

**Description**

Blue

### 7.2.1.9.43.7 CH\_CLR6 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR6 WHITE
```

**Description**

Red

### 7.2.1.9.43.8 CH\_CLR7 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR7 BLACK
```

**Description**

Green

### 7.2.1.9.43.9 CH\_CLR8 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR8 WHITE
```

**Description**

Yellow

### 7.2.1.9.43.10 CH\_CLR9 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR9 BLACK
```

**Description**

Dark Orange

### 7.2.1.9.43.11 CH\_CLR10 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR10 WHITE
```

**Description**

Light Blur

### 7.2.1.9.43.12 CH\_CLR11 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR11 BLACK
```

**Description**

Light Red

### 7.2.1.9.43.13 CH\_CLR12 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR12 WHITE
```

**Description**

Light Green

### 7.2.1.9.43.14 CH\_CLR13 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR13 BLACK
```

**Description**

Light Yellow

### 7.2.1.9.43.15 CH\_CLR14 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR14 WHITE
```

**Description**

Light Orange

### 7.2.1.9.43.16 CH\_CLR15 Macro

**File**

Chart.h

**C**

```
#define CH_CLR15 BLACK
```

**Description**

Gold

## 7.2.1.10 Checkbox

Check Box is an Object that simulates a check box on paper. Usually it is used as an option setting where the checked or filled state means the option is enabled and the unfilled or unchecked state means the option is disabled.

## Functions

Name	Description
CbCreate (■)	This function creates a CHECKBOX (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
CbDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
CbSetText (■)	This function sets the text that will be used.
CbMsgDefault (■)	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
CbTranslateMsg (■)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

## Macros

Name	Description
CbGetText (■)	This macro returns the location of the text used for the check box.

## Structures

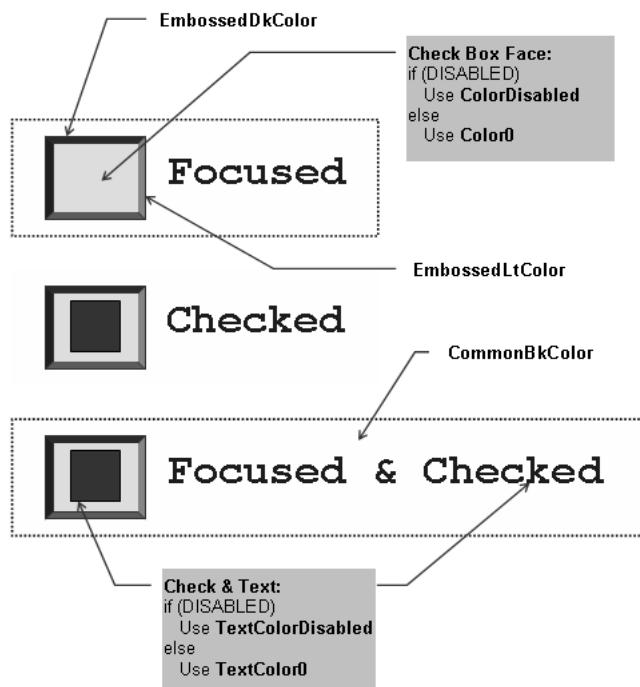
Name	Description
CHECKBOX (■)	The structure contains check box data

## Description

Check Box supports Keyboard and Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. CB\_MSG\_UNCHECKED - When the check box is unchecked.
2. CB\_MSG\_CHECKED - When check box is checked.

The Check Box Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



### 7.2.1.10.1 Check Box States

#### Macros

Name	Description
CB_CHECKED (█)	Checked state
CB_DISABLED (█)	Disabled state
CB_DRAW (█)	Whole check box must be redrawn
CB_DRAW_CHECK (█)	Check box mark should be redrawn
CB_DRAW_FOCUS (█)	Focus must be redrawn
CB_FOCUSED (█)	Focus state
CB_HIDE (█)	Check box must be removed from screen

#### Module

Checkbox (█)

#### Description

List of Checkbox (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.10.1.1 CB\_CHECKED Macro

#### File

CheckBox.h

#### C

```
#define CB_CHECKED 0x0004 // Checked state
```

#### Description

Checked state

### 7.2.1.10.1.2 CB\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
#define CB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Disabled state
```

**Description**

Disabled state

### 7.2.1.10.1.3 CB\_DRAW Macro

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
#define CB_DRAW 0x4000 // Whole check box must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Whole check box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.10.1.4 CB\_DRAW\_CHECK Macro

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
#define CB_DRAW_CHECK 0x1000 // Check box mark should be redrawn
```

**Description**

Check box mark should be redrawn

### 7.2.1.10.1.5 CB\_DRAW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
#define CB_DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000 // Focus must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Focus must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.10.1.6 CB\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
#define CB_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Focus state
```

**Description**

Focus state

### 7.2.1.10.1.7 CB\_HIDE Macro

#### File

CheckBox.h

#### C

```
#define CB_HIDE 0x8000 // Check box must be removed from screen
```

#### Description

Check box must be removed from screen

### 7.2.1.10.2 CbCreate Function

#### File

CheckBox.h

#### C

```
CHECKBOX * CbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

#### Module

Checkbox (■)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text of the check box.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object created

#### Preconditions

none

#### Example

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
CHECKBOX *pCb[ 2 ];

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
pCb = CbCreate(ID_CHECKBOX1,           // ID
                20,135,150,175,      // dimension
```

```

        CB_DRAW,           // Draw the object
        "Scale",          // text
        pScheme);         // use this scheme

pCb = CbCreate(ID_CHECKBOX2,
                170, 135, 300, 175,
                CB_DRAW,
                "Animate",
                pScheme);         // ID
                           // dimension
                           // Draw the object
                           // text
                           // use this scheme

while( !CbDraw(pCb[0]));           // draw the objects
while( !CbDraw(pCb[1]));

```

## Overview

This function creates a CHECKBOX (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
CHECKBOX (█) *CbCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, XCHAR (█)
*pText, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

### 7.2.1.10.3 CbDraw Function

#### File

CheckBox.h

#### C

```
WORD CbDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

#### Module

Checkbox (█)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

#### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

#### Example

See CbCreate (█)() Example.

#### Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object

is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

### Syntax

```
WORD CbDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.10.4 CbGetText Macro

### File

CheckBox.h

### C

```
#define CbGetText(pCb) pCb->pText
```

### Module

Checkbox (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pCb	Pointer to the object

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the location of the text used.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro returns the location of the text used for the check box.

### Syntax

```
CbGetText(pCb)
```

## 7.2.1.10.5 CbSetText Function

### File

CheckBox.h

### C

```
void CbSetText(
    CHECKBOX * pCb,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

### Module

Checkbox (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
CHECKBOX * pCb	The pointer to the check box whose text will be modified.
XCHAR * pText	The pointer to the text that will be used.

### Side Effects

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the text that will be used.

**Syntax**

```
CbSetText(CHECKBOX (■) *pCb, XCHAR (■) *pText)
```

## 7.2.1.10.6 CbMsgDefault Function

**File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
void CbMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Checkbox (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message
pCb	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
CB_MSG_CHECKED	Touch Screen, Keyboard	Set CB_CHECKED (■)	Check Box will be redrawn in checked state.
CB_MSG_UNCHECKED	Touch Screen, Keyboard	Clear CB_CHECKED (■)	Check Box will be redrawn in un-checked state.

**Syntax**

```
CbMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■)* pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.10.7 CbTranslateMsg Function

### File

CheckBox.h

### C

```
WORD CbTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Checkbox (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	pointer to the message struct containing the message the user
pCb	the pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- CB\_MSG\_CHECKED – Check Box is checked.
- CB\_MSG\_UNCHECKED – Check Box is unchecked.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Check Box is not affected.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (■)() example.

### Overview

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
CB_MSG_CHECKED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the check box while the check box is unchecked.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_CR_PRESSED (■) or SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (■) while the check box is unchecked.
CB_MSG_UNCHECKED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the check box while the check box is checked.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_CR_PRESSED (■) or SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (■) while the check box is checked.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD CbTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.10.8 CHECKBOX Structure****File**

CheckBox.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
} CHECKBOX;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height
XCHAR * pText;	Pointer to text

**Module**

Checkbox (■)

**Overview**

The structure contains check box data

**7.2.1.11 Round Dial**

Dial is an Object that can be used to display emulate a turn dial that can both go in clockwise or counterclockwise.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
✿	RdiaCreate (■)	This function creates a ROUNDDIAL (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
✿	RdiaDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the center (x,y) position and the radius parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
✿	RdiaMsgDefault (■)	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
✿	RdiaTranslateMsg (■)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
RdialIncVal (■)	Used to directly increment the value. The delta change used is the resolution setting (res).
RdiaDecVal (■)	Used to directly decrement the value. The delta change used is the resolution setting (res).
RdiaGetVal (■)	Returns the current dial value. Value is always in the 0-max range inclusive.

RdiaSetVal (█)	Sets the value to the given new value. Value set must be in 0-max range inclusive.
----------------	--

**Structures**

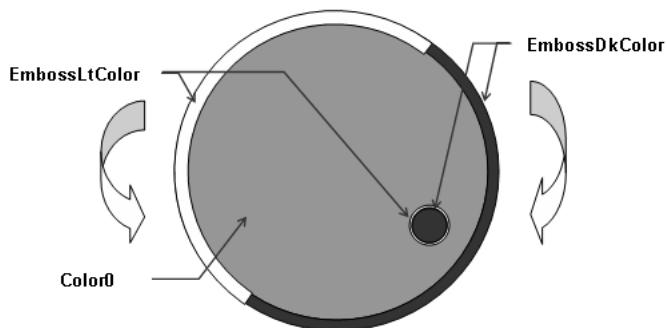
Name	Description
ROUNDDIAL (█)	Defines the parameters required for a dial Object. The curr_xPos, curr_yPos, new_xPos and new_yPos parameters are internally generated to aid in the redrawing of the dial. User must avoid modifying these values.

**Description**

Dial supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. RD\_MSG\_CLOCKWISE - When movement of the touch is in the face of the dial and in the clockwise direction.
2. RD\_MSG\_CTR\_CLOCKWISE - When movement of the touch is in the face of the dial and in the counter clockwise direction.

The Dial object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



**CommonBkColor** – used to hide the slider from the screen.

**7.2.1.11.1 Dial States****Macros**

Name	Description
RDIA_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
RDIA_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
RDIA_HIDE (█)	Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
RDIA_ROT_CCW (█)	Bit for rotate counter clockwise state.
RDIA_ROT_CW (█)	Bit for rotate clockwise state.

**Module**

Round Dial (█)

**Description**

List of Dial (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.11.1.1 RDIA\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RDIA_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.11.1.2 RDIA\_DRAW Macro

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RDIA_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.11.1.3 RDIA\_HIDE Macro

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RDIA_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.

### 7.2.1.11.1.4 RDIA\_ROT\_CCW Macro

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RDIA_ROT_CCW 0x0008 // Bit for rotate counter clockwise state.
```

**Description**

Bit for rotate counter clockwise state.

### 7.2.1.11.1.5 RDIA\_ROT\_CW Macro

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RDIA_ROT_CW 0x0004 // Bit for rotate clockwise state.
```

**Description**

Bit for rotate clockwise state.

## 7.2.1.11.2 RdiaCreate Function

### File

RoundDial.h

### C

```
ROUNDDIAL * RdiaCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT x,
    SHORT y,
    SHORT radius,
    WORD state,
    SHORT res,
    SHORT value,
    SHORT max,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

### Module

Round Dial (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT x	Location of the center of the dial in the x coordinate.
SHORT y	Location of the center of the dial in the y coordinate.
SHORT radius	Defines the radius of the dial.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
SHORT res	Sets the resolution of the dial when rotating clockwise or counter clockwise.
SHORT value	Sets the initial value of the dial.
SHORT max	Sets the maximum value of the dial.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object created.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
ROUNDDIAL *pDial;
WORD state;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = RDIA_DRAW;

// creates a dial at (50,50) x,y location, with an initial value
// of 50, a resolution of 2 and maximum value of 100.
pDial = RdiaCreate(1,50,50,25,118,0, state, 2, 50, 100, pScheme);
// check if dial was created
if (pDial == NULL)
    return 0;

return 1;
```

## Overview

This function creates a ROUNDDIAL (圆) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
ROUNDDIAL (圆) *RdiaCreate( WORD ID, SHORT x, SHORT y, SHORT radius, WORD state, SHORT res, SHORT value,
                            SHORT max, GOL_SCHEME (图) *pScheme);
```

## 7.2.1.11.3 RdiaDraw Function

### File

RoundDial.h

### C

```
WORD RdiaDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Round Dial (圆)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pDia	Pointer to the object

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the center (x,y) position and the radius parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

## Syntax

```
WORD RdiaDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.11.4 RdiaIncVal Macro

### File

RoundDial.h

### C

```
#define RdiaIncVal(pDia) RdiaSetVal(pDia, (pDia->val + pDia->res))
```

### Module

Round Dial (圆)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDia	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

WORD updatedVal, prevVal;
ROUNDDIAL *pDia;

// assuming pDia is initialized to an existing dial Object
// assume GetInput() is a function that retrieves source data
prevVal = RdiaGetVal(pDia);
updatedVal = GetInput();
if (updatedVal > prevVal)
    RdiaIncVal(pDia);
if (updatedVal < prevVal)
    RdiaDecVal(pDia);

```

**Overview**

Used to directly increment the value. The delta change used is the resolution setting (res).

**Syntax**

```
RdiaIncVal(pDia)
```

**7.2.1.11.5 RdiaDecVal Macro****File**

```
RoundDial.h
```

**C**

```
#define RdiaDecVal(pDia) RdiaSetVal(pDia, (pDia->pos - pDia->res))
```

**Module**

```
Round Dial (█)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDia	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Refer to RdialIncVal (█)() example.

**Overview**

Used to directly decrement the value. The delta change used is the resolution setting (res).

**Syntax**

```
RdiaDecVal(pDia)
```

**7.2.1.11.6 RdiaGetVal Macro****File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RdiaGetVal(pDia) (pDia)->value
```

**Module**

Round Dial ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDia	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the current value of the dial.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WORD currVal;
ROUNDDIAL *pDia;

// assuming pDia is initialized to an existing dial Object
currVal = RdiaGetVal(pDia);
```

**Overview**

Returns the current dial value. Value is always in the 0-max range inclusive.

**Syntax**

```
RdiaGetVal(pDia)
```

**7.2.1.11.7 RdiaSetVal Macro****File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
#define RdiaSetVal(pDia, newVal) (pDia)->value = newVal
```

**Module**

Round Dial ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDia	Pointer to the object.
newVal	New dial value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WORD updatedVal;
ROUNDDIAL *pDia;

// assuming pDia is initialized to an existing dial Object
// assume GetInput() is a function that retrieves source data
updatedVal = GetInput();
RdiaSetVal(pDia, updatedVal);
```

**Overview**

Sets the value to the given new value. Value set must be in 0-max range inclusive.

**Syntax**

```
RdiaSetVal(pDia, newVal)
```

## 7.2.1.11.8 RdiaMsgDefault Function

**File**

RoundDial.h

**C**

```
void RdiaMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Round Dial (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message
pDia	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

## Example

See RdiaTranslateMsg (■)() example.

## Overview

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
RD_MSG_CLOCKWISE	Touch Screen	Set RDIA_ROT_CW (■), Set RDIA_DRAW (■)	Dial (■) will be redrawn with clockwise update.
RD_MSG_CTR_CLOCKWISE	Touch Screen	Set RDIA_ROT_CCW (■), Set RDIA_DRAW (■)	Dial (■) will be redrawn with counter clockwise update.

## Syntax

```
RdiaMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■)* pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.11.9 RdiaTranslateMsg Function

### File

RoundDial.h

### C

```
WORD RdiaTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Round Dial (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pDia	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- RD\_MSG\_CLOCKWISE – Dial (■) is moved in a clockwise direction.
- RD\_MSG\_CTR\_CLOCKWISE – Dial (■) is moved in a counter clockwise direction.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Dial (■) is not affected

### Preconditions

none

## Example

```
void MyGOLMsg (GOL_MSG *pMsg) {
    OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj;
    WORD objMsg;

    if (pMsg->event == EVENT_INVALID)
```

```

    return;
pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();

while(pCurrentObj != NULL){
    // Process only ROUNDDIAL
    if(!IsObjUpdated(pCurrentObj))){
        switch(pCurrentObj->type){
            case OBJ_ROUNDDIAL:
                objMsg = RdiaTranslateMsg((ROUNDDIAL*)pCurrentObj, pMsg);
                if(objMsg == OBJ_MSG_INVALID)
                    break;
                if(GOLMsgCallback(objMsg,pCurrentObj,pMsg))
                    RdiaMsgDefault(objMsg,(ROUNDDIAL*)pCurrentObj);
                break;
            default: break;
        }
    }
    pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
}

```

## Overview

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
RD_MSG_CLOCKWISE	Touch Screen	EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of the Dial (■) and moving in the clockwise rotation.
RD_MSG_CTR_CLOCKWISE	Touch Screen	EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of the Dial (■) and moving in the counter clockwise rotation.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

## Syntax

RdiaTranslateMsg(void \*pObj, GOL\_MSG (■) \*pMsg)

## 7.2.1.11.10 ROUNDDIAL Structure

### File

RoundDial.h

### C

```

typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT xCenter;
    SHORT yCenter;
    SHORT radius;
    SHORT value;
    WORD max;
    WORD res;
    SHORT curr_xPos;
    SHORT curr_yPos;
    SHORT new_xPos;
    SHORT new_yPos;
    SHORT vAngle;
} ROUNDDIAL;

```

### Members

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).

SHORT xCenter;	x coordinate center position.
SHORT yCenter;	y coordinate center position.
SHORT radius;	Radius of the dial.
SHORT value;	Initial value of the dial.
WORD max;	Maximum value of variable value (maximum = 65535).
WORD res;	Resolution of movement.
SHORT curr_xPos;	Current x position.
SHORT curr_yPos;	Current y position.
SHORT new_xPos;	New x position.
SHORT new_yPos;	New y position.

**Module**[Round Dial \(■\)](#)**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a dial Object. The curr\_xPos, curr\_yPos, new\_xPos and new\_yPos parameters are internally generated to aid in the redrawing of the dial. User must avoid modifying these values.

**7.2.1.11.11 Files****7.2.1.12 Digital Meter**

DigitalMeter is an Object that can be used to display a value of a sampled variable. This Object is ideal when fast refresh of the value is needed. The Object refreshes only the digits that needs to change. A limitation of this Object is that the font used should have equal character widths.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	DmCreate (■)	This function creates a DIGITALMETER (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	DmDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
≡	DmSetValue (■)	This function sets the value that will be used for the object.
≡	DmTranslateMsg (■)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
DmGetValue (■)	This macro returns the current value used for the object.
DmDecVal (■)	This macro is used to directly decrement the value.
DmlncVal (■)	This macro is used to directly increment the value.

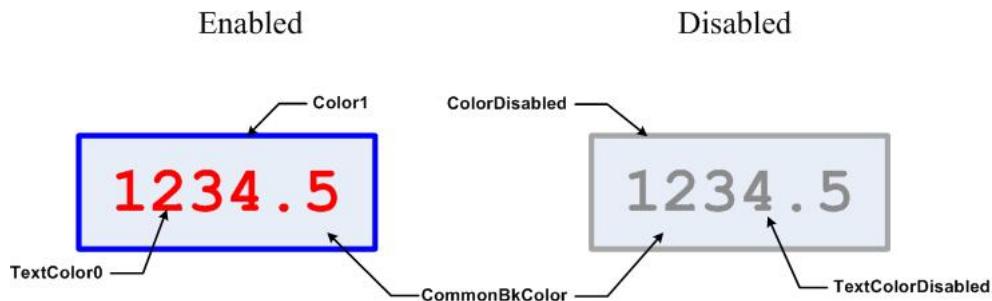
**Structures**

Name	Description
DIGITALMETER (■)	Defines the parameters required for a Digital Meter Object.

## Description

DigitalMeter supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to touch screen events with the message:  
DM\_MSG\_SELECTED.

The DigitalMeter object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments for the digital meter.



### 7.2.1.12.1 Digital Meter States

#### Macros

Name	Description
DM_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
DM_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
DM_HIDE (█)	Bit to remove object from screen.
DM_CENTER_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate value is center aligned.
DM_RIGHT_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate value is left aligned.
DM_FRAME (█)	Bit to indicate frame is displayed.
DM_UPDATE (█)	Bit to indicate that only text must be redrawn.

#### Module

Digital Meter (█)

#### Description

List of Digital Meter (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.12.1.1 DM\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

DigitalMeter.h

#### C

```
#define DM_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

#### Description

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.12.1.2 DM\_DRAW Macro

#### File

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.12.1.3 DM\_HIDE Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to remove object from screen.

### 7.2.1.12.1.4 DM\_CENTER\_ALIGN Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_CENTER_ALIGN 0x0008 // Bit to indicate value is center aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate value is center aligned.

### 7.2.1.12.1.5 DM\_RIGHT\_ALIGN Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_RIGHT_ALIGN 0x0004 // Bit to indicate value is left aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate value is left aligned.

### 7.2.1.12.1.6 DM\_FRAME Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_FRAME 0x0010 // Bit to indicate frame is displayed.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate frame is displayed.

### 7.2.1.12.1.7 DM\_UPDATE Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DM_UPDATE 0x2000 // Bit to indicate that only text must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that only text must be redrawn.

**7.2.1.12.2 DmCreate Function****File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
DIGITALMETER * DmCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    DWORD Value,
    BYTE NoOfDigits,
    BYTE DotPos,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Digital Meter (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
DWORD Value	Sets the initial value to be displayed
BYTE NoOfDigits	Sets the number of digits to be displayed
BYTE DotPos	Sets the position of decimal point in the display
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
DIGITALMETER *pDm;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = DM_DRAW | DM_FRAME | DM_CENTER_ALIGN;
DmCreate(ID_DIGITALMETER1,           // ID
         30,80,235,160,        // dimension
```

```

state,           // has frame and center aligned
789,4,1,        // to display 078.9
pScheme);       // use given scheme

while(!DmDraw(pDm));      // draw the object

```

**Overview**

This function creates a DIGITALMETER (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
DIGITALMETER (■) *DmCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state , DWORD
Value, BYTE NoOfDigits, BYTE DotPos, GOL_SCHEME (■) *pScheme)
```

**7.2.1.12.3 DmDraw Function****File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
WORD DmDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Digital Meter (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDm	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See DmCreate (■)() Example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD DmDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.12.4 DmGetValue Macro

### File

DigitalMeter.h

### C

```
#define DmGetValue(pDm) pDm->Cvalue
```

### Module

Digital Meter ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pDm	Pointer to the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the value used.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro returns the current value used for the object.

### Syntax

```
DmGetValue(pDm)
```

## 7.2.1.12.5 DmSetValue Function

### File

DigitalMeter.h

### C

```
void DmSetValue(
    DIGITALMETER * pDm,
    DWORD Value
);
```

### Module

Digital Meter ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
DIGITALMETER * pDm	The pointer to the object whose value will be modified.
DWORD Value	New value to be set for the Digital Meter ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ).

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the value that will be used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
DmSetValue(DIGITALMETER (■) *pDm, DWORD Value)
```

## 7.2.1.12.6 DmDecVal Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DmDecVal(pDm, deltaValue) DmSetValue(pDm, (pDm->Cvalue - deltaValue))
```

**Module**

Digital Meter (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDm	Pointer to the object.
deltaValue	Number to be subtracted to the current Digital Meter (■) value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro is used to directly decrement the value.

**Syntax**

```
DmDecVal(pDm, deltaValue)
```

## 7.2.1.12.7 DmIncVal Macro

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
#define DmIncVal(pDm, deltaValue) DmSetValue(pDm, (pDm->Cvalue + deltaValue))
```

**Module**

Digital Meter (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pDm	Pointer to the object.
deltaValue	Number to be added to the current Digital Meter (■) value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro is used to directly increment the value.

**Syntax**

```
DmIncVal(pDm, deltaValue)
```

## 7.2.1.12.8 DmTranslateMsg Function

**File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
WORD DmTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Digital Meter (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pDm	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- DM\_MSG\_SELECTED – Digital Meter () is selected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Digital Meter () is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg () example.

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
DM_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the Digital Meter (█).
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD DmTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.12.9 DIGITALMETER Structure****File**

DigitalMeter.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textHeight;
    DWORD Cvalue;
    DWORD Pvalue;
    BYTE NoOfDigits;
    BYTE DotPos;
} DIGITALMETER;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height
DWORD Cvalue;	Current value
DWORD Pvalue;	Previous value
BYTE NoOfDigits;	Number of digits to be displayed
BYTE DotPos;	Position of decimal point

**Module**

Digital Meter (█)

**Description**

Structure: DIGITALMETER

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a Digital Meter (█) Object.

**7.2.1.13 Edit Box**

Edit Box is an Object that emulates a cell or a text area that can be edited dynamically.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
💡	EbCreate (█)	This function creates a EDITBOX (█) object with the parameters given and initializes the default settings. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

	EbDraw ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
	EbSetText ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function sets the text to be used for the object.
	EbAddChar ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function inserts a character at the end of the text used by the object.
	EbDeleteChar ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function removes a character at the end of the text used by the object.
	EbMsgDefault ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
	EbTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
EbGetText ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

**Structures**

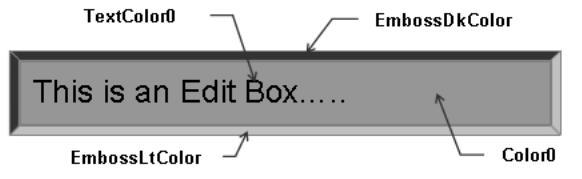
Name	Description
EDITBOX ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	Defines the parameters required for a Edit Box Object.

**Description**

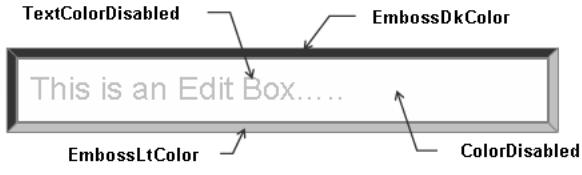
Edit Box supports only Keyboard inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. EB\_MSG\_CHAR - when a character is to be inserted at the end of the current text.
2. EB\_MSG\_DEL - when a character is to be removed from the current text.

The Edit Box Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



**Edit Box in enabled state**



**Edit Box in disabled state**

## 7.2.1.13.1 Edit Box States

### Macros

Name	Description
EB_CENTER_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate text is center aligned.
EB_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
EB_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn.
EB_HIDE (█)	Bit to remove object from screen.
EB_FOCUSED (█)	Bit for focused state. Cursor caret will be drawn when EB_DRAW_CARET (█) is also set.
EB_RIGHT_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
EB_DRAW_CARET (█)	Bit to indicate the cursor caret will be drawn if EB_FOCUSED (█) state bit is set and erase when EB_FOCUSED (█) state bit is not set.
EB_CARET (█)	Bit to indicate the cursor caret will always be shown.

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Description

List of Edit Box bit states.

### 7.2.1.13.1.1 EB\_CENTER\_ALIGN Macro

#### File

EditBox.h

#### C

```
#define EB_CENTER_ALIGN 0x0008 // Bit to indicate text is center aligned.
```

#### Description

Bit to indicate text is center aligned.

### 7.2.1.13.1.2 EB\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

EditBox.h

#### C

```
#define EB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

#### Description

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.13.1.3 EB\_DRAW Macro

#### File

EditBox.h

#### C

```
#define EB_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn.
```

#### Description

Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.13.1.4 EB\_HIDE Macro

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
#define EB_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to remove object from screen.

### 7.2.1.13.1.5 EB\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
#define EB_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focused state. Cursor caret will be drawn when  
EB_DRAW_CARET is also set.
```

**Description**

Bit for focused state. Cursor caret will be drawn when EB\_DRAW\_CARET (☒) is also set.

### 7.2.1.13.1.6 EB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN Macro

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
#define EB_RIGHT_ALIGN 0x0004 // Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is left aligned.

### 7.2.1.13.1.7 EB\_DRAW\_CARET Macro

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
#define EB_DRAW_CARET 0x2000 // Bit to indicate the cursor caret will be drawn if  
EB_FOCUSED state bit is set and erase when EB_FOCUSED (☒) state bit is not set.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the cursor caret will be drawn if EB\_FOCUSED (☒) state bit is set and erase when EB\_FOCUSED (☒) state bit is not set.

### 7.2.1.13.1.8 EB\_CARET Macro

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
#define EB_CARET 0x0010 // Bit to indicate the cursor caret will always be shown.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the cursor caret will always be shown.

## 7.2.1.13.2 EbCreate Function

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
EDITBOX * EbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    XCHAR * pText,
    WORD charMax,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text to be used.
WORD charMax	Defines the maximum number of characters in the edit box.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object created.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
#define ID_MYEDITBOX      101
EDITBOX *pEb;

pEb = EbCreate(ID_MYEDITBOX,          // ID
                10,                 // left
                10,                 // top
                100,                // right
                30,                 // bottom
                EB_DRAW,             // redraw after creation
                NULL,                // no text yet
                4,                  // display only four characters
                pScheme);            // pointer to the style scheme

if( pEb == NULL )
{
    // MEMORY ERROR. Object was not created.
}
```

## Overview

This function creates a EDITBOX (█) object with the parameters given and initializes the default settings. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
EDITBOX (█) *EbCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state , XCHAR (█)
*pText, WORD charMax, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.13.3 EbDraw Function

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
WORD EbDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pEb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

## Syntax

```
WORD EbDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.13.4 EbGetText Macro

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
#define EbGetText(pEb) (pEb->pBuffer)
```

**Module**

Edit Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pEb	Pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns pointer to the text string being used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

**Syntax**

EbGetText(pEb)

## 7.2.1.13.5 EbSetText Function

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
void EbSetText(
    EDITBOX * pEb,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Edit Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
EDITBOX * pEb	The pointer to the object whose text will be modified.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text that will be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the text to be used for the object.

**Syntax**

EbSetText(EDITBOX (█) \*pEb, XCHAR (█) \*pText)

## 7.2.1.13.6 EbAddChar Function

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
void EbAddChar(
    EDITBOX * pEb,
    XCHAR ch
);
```

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
EDITBOX * pEb	The pointer to the object whose text will be modified.
XCHAR ch	Character to be inserted.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function inserts a character at the end of the text used by the object.

### Syntax

```
void EbAddChar(EDITBOX (█)* pEb, XCHAR (█) ch)
```

## 7.2.1.13.7 EbDeleteChar Function

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
void EbDeleteChar(
    EDITBOX * pEb
);
```

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
EDITBOX * pEb	The pointer to the object to be modified.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function removes a character at the end of the text used by the object.

**Syntax**

```
void EbDeleteChar(EDITBOX (*) pEb)
```

## 7.2.1.13.8 EbMsgDefault Function

**File**

EditBox.h

**C**

```
void EbMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Edit Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pEb	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnMsgDefault (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
EB_MSG_CHAR	Keyboard	Set EB_DRAW (█)	New character is added and Edit Box will be redrawn.
EB_MSG_DEL	Keyboard	Set EB_DRAW (█)	Last character is removed and Edit Box will be redrawn.

**Syntax**

```
void EbMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (*) pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.13.9 EbTranslateMsg Function

### File

EditBox.h

### C

```
WORD EbTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Edit Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pEb	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- EB\_MSG\_CHAR – New character should be added.
- EB\_MSG\_DEL – Last character should be removed.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Object is not affected.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

### Overview

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
EB_MSG_CHAR	Keyboard	EVENT_CHARCODE	New character should be added.
EB_MSG_DEL	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYPRESS	Last character should be removed.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

### Syntax

```
WORD EbTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█) *pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.13.10 EDITBOX Structure

### File

EditBox.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pBuffer;
    WORD charMax;
    WORD length;
} EDITBOX;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height.
XCHAR * pBuffer;	Pointer to text buffer.
WORD charMax;	Maximum number of characters in the edit box.
WORD length;	Current text length.

**Module**

Edit Box (█)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a Edit Box Object.

## 7.2.1.14 Grid

Grid is an Object that draws a grid on the screen with each cell capable of displaying an image or a string.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	GridCreate (█)	This function creates a GRID (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	GridDraw (█)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
≡	GridClearCellState (█)	This function clears the state of the cell (or Grid Item) specified by the column and row.
≡	GridFreeItems (█)	This function removes all grid items for the given Grid and frees the memory used.
≡	GridGetCell (█)	This function removes all grid items for the given Grid and frees the memory used.
≡	GridSetCell (█)	This function sets the Grid Item state and data.
≡	GridSetCellState (█)	This function sets the state of the Grid Item or cell.
≡	GridSetFocus (█)	This function sets the focus of the specified Grid Item or cell.
≡	GridMsgDefault (█)	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
≡	GridTranslateMsg (█)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
GridGetFocusX (§)	This macro returns the x position of the focused cell.
GridGetFocusY (§)	This macro returns the y position of the focused cell.
GRID_OUT_OF_BOUNDS (§)	Status of an out of bounds cell GridSetCell (§)() operation.
GRID_SUCCESS (§)	Status of a successful GridSetCell (§)() operation.

**Structures**

Name	Description
GRID (§)	Defines the parameters required for a grid Object. Clipping is not supported in grid object.
GRIDITEM (§)	Defines the grid item.

**Description**

Grid supports Keyboard and Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. GRID\_MSG\_TOUCHED
2. GRID\_MSG\_ITEM\_SELECTED
3. GRID\_MSG\_LEFT
4. GRID\_MSG\_RIGHT
5. GRID\_MSG\_UP
6. GRID\_MSG\_DOWN

See GridTranslateMsg (§)() and GridMsgDefault (§)() for details.

The Grid lines are drawn using the EmbossLitColor, the string drawn using the TextColor0 and the background is drawn using the CommonBkColor.

### 7.2.1.14.1 Grid States

**Macros**

Name	Description
GRID_FOCUSED (§)	Bit for focused state
GRID_DISABLED (§)	Bit for disabled state
GRID_SHOW_LINES (§)	Display grid lines
GRID_SHOW_FOCUS (§)	Highlight the focused cell.
GRID_SHOW_BORDER_ONLY (§)	Draw only the outside border of the grid.
GRID_SHOW_SEPARATORS_ONLY (§)	Draw only the lines between cells (like Tic-tac-toe)
GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (§)	Bit to indicate that at least one item must be redrawn, but not the entire grid.
GRID_DRAW_ALL (§)	Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
GRID_HIDE (§)	Bit to remove object from screen

**Module**

Grid (§)

**Description**

List of Grid (§) bit states.

### 7.2.1.14.1.1 GRID\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focused state
```

**Description**

Bit for focused state

### 7.2.1.14.1.2 GRID\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state

### 7.2.1.14.1.3 GRID\_SHOW\_LINES Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_SHOW_LINES 0x0004 // Display grid lines
```

**Description**

Display grid lines

### 7.2.1.14.1.4 GRID\_SHOW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_SHOW_FOCUS 0x0008 // Highlight the focused cell.
```

**Description**

Highlight the focused cell.

### 7.2.1.14.1.5 GRID\_SHOW\_BORDER\_ONLY Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_SHOW_BORDER_ONLY 0x0010 // Draw only the outside border of the grid.
```

**Description**

Draw only the outside border of the grid.

### 7.2.1.14.1.6 GRID\_SHOW\_SEPARATORS\_ONLY Macro

#### File

Grid.h

#### C

```
#define GRID_SHOW_SEPARATORS_ONLY 0x0020 // Draw only the lines between cells (like Tic-tac-toe)
```

#### Description

Draw only the lines between cells (like Tic-tac-toe)

### 7.2.1.14.1.7 GRID\_DRAW\_ITEMS Macro

#### File

Grid.h

#### C

```
#define GRID_DRAW_ITEMS 0x1000 // Bit to indicate that at least one item must be redrawn, but not the entire grid.
```

#### Description

Bit to indicate that at least one item must be redrawn, but not the entire grid.

### 7.2.1.14.1.8 GRID\_DRAW\_ALL Macro

#### File

Grid.h

#### C

```
#define GRID_DRAW_ALL 0x4000 // Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
```

#### Description

Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.14.1.9 GRID\_HIDE Macro

#### File

Grid.h

#### C

```
#define GRID_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen
```

#### Description

Bit to remove object from screen

## 7.2.1.14.2 Grid Item States

### Macros

Name	Description
GRIDITEM_SELECTED (▣)	The cell is selected.
GRIDITEM_IS_TEXT (▣)	The grid item is a text string.
GRIDITEM_IS_BITMAP (▣)	The grid item is a bitmap.
GRIDITEM_TEXTBOTTOM (▣)	Bit to indicate text is top aligned.
GRIDITEM_TEXTLEFT (▣)	Text in the cell is left aligned.

GRIDITEM_TEXtright (█)	Text in the cell is right aligned.
GRIDITEM_TEXTTOP (█)	Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.
GRIDITEM_DRAW (█)	Draw this cell

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Description**

List of Grid (█) Items bit states.

**7.2.1.14.2.1 GRIDITEM\_SELECTED Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_SELECTED 0x0001 // The cell is selected.
```

**Description**

The cell is selected.

**7.2.1.14.2.2 GRIDITEM\_IS\_TEXT Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_IS_TEXT 0x0000 // The grid item is a text string.
```

**Description**

The grid item is a text string.

**7.2.1.14.2.3 GRIDITEM\_IS\_BITMAP Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_IS_BITMAP 0x0008 // The grid item is a bitmap.
```

**Description**

The grid item is a bitmap.

**7.2.1.14.2.4 GRIDITEM\_TEXTBOTTOM Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_TEXTBOTTOM 0x0040 // Bit to indicate text is top aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is top aligned.

### 7.2.1.14.2.5 GRIDITEM\_TEXTLEFT Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_TEXTLEFT 0x0020 // Text in the cell is left aligned.
```

**Description**

Text in the cell is left aligned.

### 7.2.1.14.2.6 GRIDITEM\_TEXTRIGHT Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_TEXTRIGHT 0x0010 // Text in the cell is right aligned.
```

**Description**

Text in the cell is right aligned.

### 7.2.1.14.2.7 GRIDITEM\_TEXTTOP Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_TEXTTOP 0x0080 // Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is bottom aligned.

### 7.2.1.14.2.8 GRIDITEM\_DRAW Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRIDITEM_DRAW 0x0100 // Draw this cell
```

**Description**

Draw this cell

## 7.2.1.14.3 GridCreate Function

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
GRID * GridCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
```

```

    SHORT numColumns,
    SHORT numRows,
    SHORT cellWidth,
    SHORT cellHeight,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);

```

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
SHORT numColumns	Sets the number of columns for the grid.
SHORT numRows	Sets the number of rows for the grid.
SHORT cellWidth	Sets the width of each cell of the grid.
SHORT cellHeight	Sets the height of each cell of the grid.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used for the object. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function creates a GRID (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
GRID (█) *GridCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, SHORT
numColumns, SHORT numRows, SHORT cellWidth, SHORT cellHeight, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

**7.2.1.14.4 GridDraw Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```

WORD GridDraw(
    void * pObj
);

```

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD GridDraw(void *pObj)
```

**7.2.1.14.5 GridClearCellState Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
void GridClearCellState(
    GRID * pGrid,
    SHORT column,
    SHORT row,
    WORD state
);
```

**Module**

Grid (grid)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GRID * pGrid	Pointer to the object.
SHORT column	column index of the cell
SHORT row	row index of the cell
state	specifies the state to be cleared. See Grid (grid) Item State.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function clears the state of the cell (or Grid (█) Item) specified by the column and row.

**Syntax**

```
GridClearCellState(GRID (█) *pGrid, SHORT column, SHORT row, WORD state)
```

**7.2.1.14.6 GridGetFocusX Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GridGetFocusX(pGrid) pGrid->focusX
```

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGrid	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the x position of the focused cell.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the x position of the focused cell.

**Syntax**

```
GridGetFocusX(pGrid)
```

**7.2.1.14.7 GridGetFocusY Macro****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GridGetFocusY(pGrid) pGrid->focusY
```

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGrid	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the y position of the focused cell.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the y position of the focused cell.

**Syntax**

```
GridGetFocusY(pGrid)
```

## 7.2.1.14.8 GRID\_OUT\_OF\_BOUNDS Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_OUT_OF_BOUNDS 0x0001 // Status of an out of bounds cell GridSetCell() operation.
```

**Module**

Grid (

**Description**

Status of an out of bounds cell GridSetCell ()() operation.

## 7.2.1.14.9 GRID\_SUCCESS Macro

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
#define GRID_SUCCESS 0x0000 // Status of a successful GridSetCell() operation.
```

**Module**

Grid (

**Description**

Status of a successful GridSetCell ()() operation.

## 7.2.1.14.10 GridFreeItems Function

**File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
void GridFreeItems(  
    void * pObj  
) ;
```

**Module**

Grid (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGrid	The pointer to the Grid (grid) object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function removes all grid items for the given Grid (grid) and frees the memory used.

**Syntax**

```
GridFreeItems(void *pObj)
```

**7.2.1.14.11 GridGetCell Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
void * GridGetCell(
    GRID * pGrid,
    SHORT column,
    SHORT row,
    WORD * cellType
);
```

**Module**

Grid (grid)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GRID * pGrid	The pointer to the Grid (grid) object.
SHORT column	the column index of the cell
SHORT row	the row index of the cell
WORD * cellType	pointer that will receive the type of grid item or cell (GRIDITEM_IS_TEXT (text) or GRIDITEM_IS_BITMAP (bitmap)).

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns a pointer to the grid item or cell data.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function removes all grid items for the given Grid (grid) and frees the memory used.

**Syntax**

```
*GridGetCell(GRID (grid) *pGrid, SHORT column, SHORT row, WORD *cellType)
```

## 7.2.1.14.12 GridSetCell Function

### File

Grid.h

### C

```
WORD GridSetCell(
    GRID * pGrid,
    SHORT column,
    SHORT row,
    WORD state,
    void * data
);
```

### Module

Grid (

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GRID * pGrid	The pointer to the Grid (  object.
SHORT column	the column index of the cell
SHORT row	the row index of the cell
WORD state	sets the state of the Grid (  Item specified.
void * data	pointer to the data used for the Grid (  Item.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the operation

- GRID\_SUCCESS ( - if the set succeeded
- GRID\_OUT\_OF\_BOUNDS ( - if the row and column given results in an out of bounds location.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Overview

This function sets the Grid ( Item state and data.

### Syntax

```
WORD GridSetCell(GRID *pGrid, SHORT column, SHORT row, WORD state, void *data)
```

## 7.2.1.14.13 GridSetCellState Function

### File

Grid.h

### C

```
void GridSetCellState(
    GRID * pGrid,
    SHORT column,
    SHORT row,
    WORD state
);
```

### Module

Grid (

**Input Parameters**

<b>Input Parameters</b>	<b>Description</b>
GRID * pGrid	The pointer to the Grid (grid) object.
SHORT column	the column index of the cell
SHORT row	the row index of the cell
WORD state	sets the state of the Grid (grid) Item specified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function sets the state of the Grid (grid) Item or cell.

**Syntax**

```
GridSetCellState(GRID (grid) *pGrid, SHORT column, SHORT row, WORD state)
```

**7.2.14.14 GridSetFocus Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
void GridSetFocus(
    GRID * pGrid,
    SHORT column,
    SHORT row
);
```

**Module**

Grid (grid)

**Input Parameters**

<b>Input Parameters</b>	<b>Description</b>
GRID * pGrid	The pointer to the Grid (grid) object.
SHORT column	the column index of the cell
SHORT row	the row index of the cell

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function sets the focus of the specified Grid (grid) Item or cell.

**Syntax**

```
GridSetFocus(GRID (■) *pGrid, SHORT column, SHORT row)
```

**7.2.1.14.15 GridMsgDefault Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
void GridMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Grid (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pGrid	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
GRID_MSG_TOUCHED	Touch Screen	none	Grid (■) will have no state change because of this event.
GRID_MSG_ITEM_SELECTED	Keyboard	Set GRIDITEM_SELECTED (■), GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	Grid (■) Item selected will be redrawn.
GRID_MSG_UP	Keyboard	Set GRIDITEM_DRAW (■), GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	Grid (■) Item above the currently focused item will be redrawn.
GRID_MSG_DOWN	Keyboard	Set GRIDITEM_DRAW (■), GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	Grid (■) Item below the currently focused item will be redrawn.
GRID_MSG_LEFT	Keyboard	Set GRIDITEM_DRAW (■), GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	Grid (■) Item to the left of the currently focused item will be redrawn.

GRID_MSG_RIGHT	Keyboard	Set (, GRID_DRAW_ITEMS (	GRIDITEM_DRAW	Grid () Item to the right of the currently focused item will be redrawn.

**Syntax**

```
GridMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG () *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.14.16 GridTranslateMsg Function****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
WORD GridTranslateMsg(  
    void * pObj,  
    GOL_MSG * pMsg  
) ;
```

**Module**

Grid (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pGrid	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- GRID\_MSG\_TOUCHED - when the grid object is touched.
- GRID\_MSG\_ITEM\_SELECTED – when key scan SCAN\_SPACE\_PRESSED () or SCAN\_CR\_PRESSED () are detected.
- GRID\_MSG\_UP – when key scan SCAN\_UP\_PRESSED () is detected.
- GRID\_MSG\_DOWN – when key scan SCAN\_DOWN\_PRESSED () is detected.
- GRID\_MSG\_LEFT – when key scan SCAN\_LEFT\_PRESSED () is detected.
- GRID\_MSG\_RIGHT – when key scan SCAN\_RIGHT\_PRESSED () is detected.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Button () is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
GRID_MSG_TOUCHED	Touch Screen	none	If any touch events occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of the grid.

GRID_MSG_ITEM_SELECTED	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (█) or SCAN_CR_PRESSED (█).
GRID_MSG_UP	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_UP_PRESSED (█).
GRID_MSG_DOWN	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_DOWN_PRESSED (█).
GRID_MSG_LEFT	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_LEFT_PRESSED (█).
GRID_MSG_RIGHT	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_RIGHT_PRESSED (█).
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
GridTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.14.17 GRID Structure****File**

Grid.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT numColumns;
    SHORT numRows;
    SHORT cellHeight;
    SHORT cellWidth;
    SHORT focusX;
    SHORT focusY;
    GRIDITEM * gridObjects;
} GRID;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
SHORT numColumns;	Number of columns drawn for the Grid (█).
SHORT numRows;	Number of rows drawn for the Grid (█).
SHORT cellHeight;	The height of each cell in pixels.
SHORT cellWidth;	The width of each cell in pixels.
SHORT focusX;	The x position of the cell to be focused.
SHORT focusY;	The y position of the cell to be focused.
GRIDITEM * gridObjects;	The pointer to grid items

**Module**

Grid (█)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a grid Object. Clipping is not supported in grid object.

## 7.2.1.14.18 GRIDITEM Structure

### File

Grid.h

### C

```
typedef struct {
    void * data;
    WORD status;
} GRIDITEM;
```

### Members

Members	Description
void * data;	Indicates if the Grid (■) Item is type GRIDITEM_IS_TEXT (■) or GRIDITEM_IS_BITMAP (■)
WORD status;	indicates the status of the Grid (■) Item

### Module

Grid (■)

### Overview

Defines the grid item.

## 7.2.1.15 Group Box

Group Box is an Object that can be used to group Objects together in the screen.

### Functions

	Name	Description
✳	GbCreate (■)	This function creates a GROUPBOX (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
✳	GbDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
✳	GbSetText (■)	This function sets the text used by passing the pointer to the static string.
✳	GbTranslateMsg (■)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

### Macros

Name	Description
GbGetText (■)	This macro returns the location of the text used.

### Structures

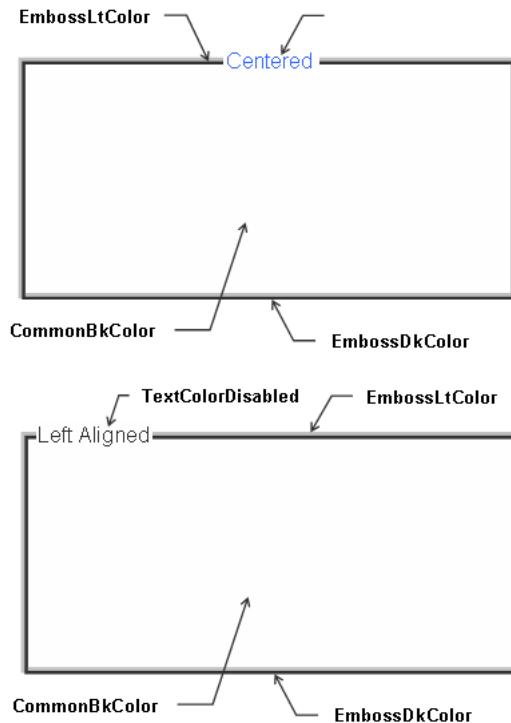
Name	Description
GROUPBOX (■)	Defines the parameters required for a group box Object. The textwidth and textHeight is not checked with the actual dimension of the object. Clipping is not supported in group box object. It is possible for the text to exceed the dimension of the Object.

## Description

Group Box supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the message:

GB\_MSG\_SELECTED - when the touch is within the dimension of the object.

The Group box object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



### 7.2.1.15.1 Group Box States

#### Macros

Name	Description
GB_CENTER_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate text is center aligned
GB_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state
GB_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate group box must be redrawn
GB_HIDE (█)	Bit to remove object from screen
GB_RIGHT_ALIGN (█)	Bit to indicate text is right aligned

#### Module

Group Box (█)

#### Description

List of Group Box bit states.

### 7.2.1.15.1.1 GB\_CENTER\_ALIGN Macro

#### File

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GB_CENTER_ALIGN 0x0008 // Bit to indicate text is center aligned
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is center aligned

### 7.2.1.15.1.2 GB\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state

### 7.2.1.15.1.3 GB\_DRAW Macro

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GB_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate group box must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate group box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.15.1.4 GB\_HIDE Macro

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GB_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen
```

**Description**

Bit to remove object from screen

### 7.2.1.15.1.5 GB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN Macro

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GB_RIGHT_ALIGN 0x0004 // Bit to indicate text is right aligned
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is right aligned

## 7.2.1.15.2 GbCreate Function

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
GROUPBOX * GbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
) ;
```

**Module**

Group Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
XCHAR * pText	The pointer to the text used for the group box. Length of string must be checked not to exceed the object's width. Clipping is not supported for the text of this object.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used for the object. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
GROUPBOX *groupbox[ 2 ];
WORD state;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = GB_DRAW | GB_RIGHT_ALIGN;
groupbox[ 0 ] = GbCreate( 10, 14,48,152,122,
                        state, "Power", scheme );
if (groupbox[ 0 ] == NULL)
    return 0;
state = GB_DRAW;
groupbox[ 1 ] = GbCreate( 11, 160,48,298,122,
                        state, "Pressure", scheme );
if (groupbox[ 1 ] == NULL)
    return 0;

while( !GbDraw(groupbox[ 0 ]));
while( !GbDraw(groupbox[ 1 ]));
return 1;
```

**Overview**

This function creates a GROUPBOX (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
GROUPBOX (█) *GbCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, XCHAR (█)
*pText, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

**7.2.1.15.3 GbDraw Function****File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
WORD GbDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Group Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See GbCreate (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD GbDraw(void *pObj)
```

**7.2.1.15.4 GbGetText Macro****File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
#define GbGetText(pB) pGb->pText
```

**Module**

Group Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pGb	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the address of the text string used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the text used.

**Syntax**

GbGetText(pGb)

## 7.2.1.15.5 GbSetText Function

**File**

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
void GbSetText(
    GROUPBOX * pGb,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Group Box (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GROUPBOX * pGb	the pointer to the object whose state will be modified.
XCHAR * pText	pointer to the text that will be used.

**Side Effects**

Modifies the object width and height depending on the selected string width and font height.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

The style scheme used for the object MUST be initialized with a valid font. If font is not valid, textWidth and textHeight parameter of GROUPBOX (█) will be undefined.

**Overview**

This function sets the text used by passing the pointer to the static string.

**Syntax**

GbSetText(GROUPBOX (█) \*pGb, XCHAR (█) \*pText)

## 7.2.1.15.6 GbTranslateMsg Function

### File

GroupBox.h

### C

```
WORD GbTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Group Box (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pGb	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- GB\_MSG\_SELECTED – Group Box is selected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Group Box is not affected

### Preconditions

none

### Example

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

### Overview

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
GB_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the group box.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

### Syntax

```
WORD GbTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█) *pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.15.7 GROUPBOX Structure

### File

GroupBox.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textWidth;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
} GROUPBOX;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
SHORT textWidth;	Pre-computed text width.
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height.
XCHAR * pText;	Text string used.

**Module**

Group Box (■)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a group box Object. The textwidth and textHeight is not checked with the actual dimension of the object. Clipping is not supported in group box object. It is possible for the text to exceed the dimension of the Object.

## 7.2.1.16 List Box

List Box is an Object that defines a scrollable area where items are listed. User can select a single item or set of items.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	LbCreate (■)	This function creates a LISTBOX (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	LbDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. The text or items drawn in the visible window of the list box is dependent on the alignment set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
≡	LbAddItem (■)	This function allocates memory for the LISTITEM (■) and adds it to the list box. The newly created LISTITEM (■) will store the location of pText, pBitmap and other parameters describing the added item.
≡	LbDellItem (■)	This function removes an item from the list box and frees the memory used.
≡	LbChangeSel (■)	This function changes the selection status of an item in the list box. If the item is currently selected, it resets the selection. If the item is currently not selected it is set to be selected.
≡	LbGetSel (■)	This function searches for selected items from the list box. A starting position can optionally be given. If starting position is set to NULL, search will begin from the first item list. It returns the pointer to the first selected item found or NULL if there are no items selected.
≡	LbGetFocusedItem (■)	This function returns the index of the focused item in the list box.
≡	LbSetFocusedItem (■)	This function sets the focus for the item with the given index.
≡	LbDellItemsList (■)	This function removes all items from the list box and frees the memory used.

	LbMsgDefault ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
	LbTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
LbGetItemList ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This function returns the pointer to the current item list used in the list box.
LbSetSel ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This macro sets the selection status of an item to selected.
LbGetCount ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This macro returns the number of items in the list box.
LbGetVisibleCount ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This macro returns the number of items visible in the list box window.
LbSetBitmap ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This macro sets the bitmap used in the item.
LbGetBitmap ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This macro returns the location of the currently used bitmap for the item.

**Structures**

Name	Description
LISTBOX ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	Defines the parameters required for a list box Object.
LISTITEM ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	Defines the parameters required for a list item used in list box.

**Description**

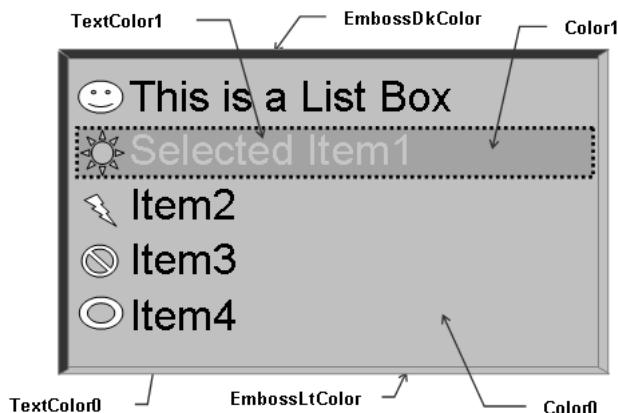
List Box supports both Touchscreen and Keyboard inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

LB\_MSG\_TOUCHSCREEN – Item is selected using touch screen

LB\_MSG\_MOVE – Focus is moved to the next item depending on the key pressed (UP or DOWN key).

LB\_MSG\_SEL – Selection is set to the currently focused item.

The List Box Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments. Icons can be added to each item when adding items to the list using LbAddItem ([\[?\]](#)()).



## 7.2.1.16.1 List Box States

### Macros

Name	Description
LB_RIGHT_ALIGN (图)	Bit to indicate text is left aligned
LB_SINGLE_SEL (图)	Bit to indicate the only item can be selected
LB_CENTER_ALIGN (图)	Bit to indicate text is center aligned
LB_DISABLED (图)	Bit for disabled state
LB_DRAW (图)	Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
LB_DRAW_FOCUS (图)	Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
LB_DRAW_ITEMS (图)	Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
LB_FOCUSED (图)	Bit for focused state
LB_HIDE (图)	Bit to remove object from screen

### Module

List Box (图)

### Description

List of List Box bit states.

## 7.2.1.16.1.1 LB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN Macro

### File

ListBox.h

### C

```
#define LB_RIGHT_ALIGN 0x0004 // Bit to indicate text is left aligned
```

### Description

Bit to indicate text is left aligned

## 7.2.1.16.1.2 LB\_SINGLE\_SEL Macro

### File

ListBox.h

### C

```
#define LB_SINGLE_SEL 0x0010 // Bit to indicate the only item can be selected
```

### Description

Bit to indicate the only item can be selected

## 7.2.1.16.1.3 LB\_CENTER\_ALIGN Macro

### File

ListBox.h

### C

```
#define LB_CENTER_ALIGN 0x0008 // Bit to indicate text is center aligned
```

### Description

Bit to indicate text is center aligned

### 7.2.1.16.1.4 LB\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state

### 7.2.1.16.1.5 LB\_DRAW Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LB_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.16.1.6 LB\_DRAW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LB_DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000 // Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.16.1.7 LB\_DRAW\_ITEMS Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LB_DRAW_ITEMS 0x1000 // Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate whole edit box must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.16.1.8 LB\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LB_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focused state
```

**Description**

Bit for focused state

### 7.2.1.16.1.9 LB\_HIDE Macro

#### File

ListBox.h

#### C

```
#define LB_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen
```

#### Description

Bit to remove object from screen

### 7.2.1.16.2 List Item Status

#### Macros

Name	Description
LB_STS_SELECTED (🔗)	Item is selected.
LB_STS_REDRAW (🔗)	Item is to be redrawn.

#### Module

List Box (🔗)

#### Description

List of items status.

### 7.2.1.16.2.1 LB\_STS\_SELECTED Macro

#### File

ListBox.h

#### C

```
#define LB_STS_SELECTED 0x0001 // Item is selected.
```

#### Description

Item is selected.

### 7.2.1.16.2.2 LB\_STS\_REDRAW Macro

#### File

ListBox.h

#### C

```
#define LB_STS_REDRAW 0x0002 // Item is to be redrawn.
```

#### Description

Item is to be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.16.3 LbCreate Function

#### File

ListBox.h

#### C

```
LISTBOX * LbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
```

```

    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pscheme
);

```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the Object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the initialization text for the items.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

#define LISTBOX_ID    10

const XCHAR ItemList[] = "Line1n" "Line2n";

GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
LISTBOX *pLb;
XCHAR *pTemp;
WORD state, counter;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = LB_DRAW;

// create an empty listbox with default style scheme
pLb = LbCreate( LISTBOX_ID,           // ID number
                10,10,150,200,      // dimension
                state,              // initial state
                NULL,               // set items to be empty
                NULL);              // use default style scheme

// check if Listbox was created
if (pLb == NULL)
    return 0;

// create the list of items to be placed in the listbox
// Add items (each line will become one item,
// lines must be separated by 'n' character)
pTemp = ItemList;
counter = 0;
while(*pTemp){
    // since each item is appended NULL is assigned to
    // LISTITEM pointer.
    if(NULL == LbAddItem(pLb, NULL, pTemp, NULL, 0, counter))
        break;
}

```

```

        while( (unsigned XCHAR)*pTemp++ > (unsigned XCHAR)31 );
        if( *(pTemp-1) == 0 )
            break;
        counter++;
    }
}

```

**Overview**

This function creates a LISTBOX (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

LISTBOX (■) \*LbCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, XCHAR (■)\* pText, GOL\_SCHEME (■) \*pScheme)

**7.2.1.16.4 LbDraw Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```

WORD LbDraw(
    void * pObj
);

```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

The text or items drawn in the visible window of the list box is dependent on the alignment set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

WORD LbDraw(void \*pObj)

## 7.2.1.16.5 LbGetItemList Macro

### File

ListBox.h

### C

```
#define LbGetItemList(pLb) ((LISTITEM *)((LISTBOX *)pLb)->pItemList)
```

### Module

List Box (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	The pointer to the list box object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the LISTITEM (■) used in the list box.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See LbAddItem (■)() example.

### Overview

This function returns the pointer to the current item list used in the list box.

### Syntax

```
LISTITEM (■) LbGetItemList(LISTBOX (■)* pLb)
```

## 7.2.1.16.6 LbAddItem Function

### File

ListBox.h

### C

```
LISTITEM * LbAddItem(
    LISTBOX * pLb,
    LISTITEM * pPrevItem,
    XCHAR * pText,
    void * pBitmap,
    WORD status,
    WORD data
);
```

### Module

List Box (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
LISTITEM * pPrevItem	Pointer to the item after which a new item must be inserted, if this pointer is NULL, the item will be appended at the end of the items list.

XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text that will be inserted. Text must persist in memory for as long as it is referenced by an item in the list box.
void * pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap for the item. Bitmap must persist in memory for as long as it is referenced by the an item in the list box.
WORD status	This parameter specifies if the item being added will be selected or redrawn (LB_STS_SELECTED (■) or LB_STS_REDRAW (■)). Refer to LISTITEM (■) structure for details.
WORD data	User assigned data associated with the item.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Return a pointer to the item created, NULL if the operation was not successful.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

const XCHAR ItemList[] = "Line1n" "Line2n" "Line3n";

extern BITMAP_FLASH myIcon;
LISTBOX *pLb;
LISTITEM *pItem, *pItemList;
XCHAR *pTemp;

// Assume that pLb is pointing to an existing list box in memory
// that is empty (no list).

// Create the list of the list box

// Initialize this to NULL to indicate that items will be added
// at the end of the list if the list exist on the list box or
// start a new list if the list box is empty.
pItem = NULL;
pTemp = ItemList;
pItem = LbAddItem(pLb, pItem, pTemp, NULL, LB_STS_SELECTED, 1)
if(pItem == NULL)
    return 0;
LbSetBitmap(pItem, &myIcon);

// Adjust pTemp to point to the next line
while((unsigned XCHAR)*pTemp++ > (unsigned XCHAR)31);

// add the next item
pItem = LbAddItem(pLb, pItem, pTemp, NULL, 0, 2)
if(pItem == NULL)
    return 0;
LbSetBitmap(pItem, &myIcon);

// Adjust pTemp to point to the next line
while((unsigned XCHAR)*pTemp++ > (unsigned XCHAR)31);

// this time insert the next item after the first item on the list
pItem = LbGetItemList(pLb);
pItem = LbAddItem(pLb, pItem, pTemp, NULL, 0, 3)
if(pItem == NULL)
    return 0;
LbSetBitmap(pItem, &myIcon);

```

**Overview**

This function allocates memory for the LISTITEM (■) and adds it to the list box. The newly created LISTITEM (■) will store the location of pText, pBitmap and other parameters describing the added item.

**Syntax**

```
LISTITEM (*) LbAddItem(LISTBOX (*) *pLb, LISTITEM (*) *pPrevItem, XCHAR (*) *pText, void* pBitmap, WORD status, WORD data)
```

**7.2.1.16.7 LbDellItem Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
void LbDellItem(
    LISTBOX * pLb,
    LISTITEM * pItem
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
LISTITEM * pItem	The pointer to the item that will be removed.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function removes an item from the list box and frees the memory used.

**Syntax**

```
void LbDellItem(LISTBOX (*) *pLb, LISTITEM (*) *pItem)
```

**7.2.1.16.8 LbChangeSel Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
void LbChangeSel(
    LISTBOX * pLb,
    LISTITEM * pItem
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
LISTITEM * pItem	The pointer to the item the selection status will be changed.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function changes the selection status of an item in the list box. If the item is currently selected, it resets the selection. If the item is currently not selected it is set to be selected.

**Syntax**

```
void LbChangeSel(LISTBOX (■) *pLb, LISTITEM (■) *pItem)
```

## 7.2.1.16.9 LbSetSel Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LbSetSel(pLb, pItem) \
    if(!(pItem->status & LB_STS_SELECTED)) \
        LbChangeSel((LISTBOX *)pLb, pItem);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
pItem	The pointer to the item the selection status will be set.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro sets the selection status of an item to selected.

**Syntax**

```
LbSetSel(pLb, pItem)
```

## 7.2.1.16.10 LbGetSel Function

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
LISTITEM * LbGetSel(
```

```

LISTBOX * pLb,
LISTITEM * pFromItem
);

```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
LISTITEM * pFromItem	The pointer to the item the search must start from, if the pointer is NULL the search begins from the start of the items list.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

pointer to the selected item, NULL if there are no items selected

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function searches for selected items from the list box. A starting position can optionally be given. If starting position is set to NULL, search will begin from the first item list. It returns the pointer to the first selected item found or NULL if there are no items selected.

**Syntax**

```
LISTITEM (■)* LbGetSel(LISTBOX (■) *pLb, LISTITEM (■) *pFromItem)
```

**7.2.1.16.11 LbGetFocusedItem Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```

SHORT LbGetFocusedItem(
    LISTBOX * pLb
);

```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the index of the focused item in the list box.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function returns the index of the focused item in the list box.

**Syntax**

```
SHORT LbGetFocusedItem(LISTBOX (■)* pLb)
```

**7.2.1.16.12 LbSetFocusedItem Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
void LbSetFocusedItem(
    LISTBOX * pLb,
    SHORT index
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
LISTBOX * pLb	The pointer to the list box object.
SHORT index	The index number of the item to be focused. First item on the list is always indexed 0.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the focus for the item with the given index.

**Syntax**

```
void LbSetFocusedItem(LISTBOX (■)* pLb, SHORT index)
```

**7.2.1.16.13 LbGetCount Macro****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LbGetCount(pLb) ((LISTBOX *)pLb)->itemsNumber
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	The pointer to the list box object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

The number of items the list box contains.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the number of items in the list box.

**Syntax**

```
LbGetCount(pLb)
```

## 7.2.16.14 LbGetVisibleCount Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LbGetVisibleCount(pLb) \
( \
    (((LISTBOX *)pLb)->hdr.bottom - ((LISTBOX *)pLb)->hdr.top - 2 * \
(GOL_EMBOSSED_SIZE + LB_INDENT)) / \
    ((LISTBOX \
*pLb)->textHeight \
) \
)
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	The pointer to the list box object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

The number of items visible in the list box window.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the number of items visible in the list box window.

**Syntax**

```
LbGetVisibleCount(pLb)
```

## 7.2.16.15 LbSetBitmap Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
#define LbSetBitmap(pItem, pBtmap) ((LISTITEM *)pItem)->pBitmap = pBtmap
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pItem	Pointer to the item.
pBtmap	Pointer to the bitmap to be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See LbAddItem (■)() example.

**Overview**

This macro sets the bitmap used in the item.

**Syntax**

LbSetBitmap(pItem, pBtmap)

## 7.2.1.16 LbGetBitmap Macro

**File**

ListBox.h

**C**

#define LbGetBitmap(pItem) ((LISTITEM \*)pItem)-&gt;pBitmap

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pItem	Pointer to the list item.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the current bitmap used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
// Assume pLb is initialized to an existing list box
LISTITEM *pItem;
void *pBitmap;

pItem = LbGetItemList(pLb);
pBitmap = LbGetBitmap(pItem);
```

**Overview**

This macro returns the location of the currently used bitmap for the item.

**Syntax**

```
LbGetBitmap(plItem)
```

**7.2.1.16.17 LbDelItemsList Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
void LbDelItemsList(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pLb	The pointer to the list box object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function removes all items from the list box and frees the memory used.

**Syntax**

```
void LbDelItemsList(void *pObj)
```

**7.2.1.16.18 LbMsgDefault Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
void LbMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message

GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pB	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
LB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN	Touch Screen	Set LB_FOCUSED (■),	If focus is enabled, the focus state bit LB_FOCUSED (■) will be set. LB_DRAW_FOCUS (■) draw state bit will force
		Set LB_DRAW_FOCUS (■)	the List Box to be redrawn with focus.
		Set LB_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	List Box will be redrawn with selected item(s).
LB_MSG_MOVE	KeyBoard	Set LB_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	List Box will be redrawn with focus on one item.
LB_MSG_SEL	KeyBoard	Set LB_DRAW_ITEMS (■)	List Box will be redrawn with selection on the current item focused.

**Syntax**

```
void LbMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.16.19 LbTranslateMsg Function****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
WORD LbTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

List Box (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pLB	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- LB\_MSG\_TOUCHSCREEN – Item is selected using touch screen.
- LB\_MSG\_MOVE – Focus is moved to the next item depending on the key pressed (UP or DOWN key).
- LB\_MSG\_SEL – Selection is set to the currently focused item.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
LB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN	Touch Screen	Any	Item is selected using touch screen.
LB_MSG_MOVE	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	Focus is moved to the next item depending on the key pressed (UP or DOWN key).
LB_MSG_SEL	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	LB_MSG_SEL – Selection is set to the currently focused item.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD LbTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.16.20 LISTBOX Structure****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    LISTITEM * pItemList;
    LISTITEM * pFocusItem;
    WORD itemsNumber;
    SHORT scrollY;
    SHORT textHeight;
} LISTBOX;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
LISTITEM * pItemLst;	Pointer to the list of items.
LISTITEM * pFocusItem;	Pointer to the focused item.
WORD itemsNumber;	Number of items in the list box.
SHORT scrollY;	Scroll (■) displacement for the list.
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height.

**Module**

List Box ([🔗](#))

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a list box Object.

**7.2.1.16.21 LISTITEM Structure****File**

ListBox.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    void * pPrevItem;
    void * pNextItem;
    WORD status;
    XCHAR * pText;
    void * pBitmap;
    WORD data;
} LISTITEM;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
void * pPrevItem;	Pointer to the next item
void * pNextItem;	Pointer to the previous item
WORD status;	Specifies the status of the item.
XCHAR * pText;	Pointer to the text for the item
void * pBitmap;	Pointer to the bitmap
WORD data;	Some data associated with the item

**Module**

List Box ([🔗](#))

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a list item used in list box.

**7.2.1.17 Meter**

Meter is an Object that can be used to graphically display a sampled input.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
	MtrCreate ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function creates a METER ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
	MtrDraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. Depending on the defined settings, value of the meter will be displayed or hidden. Displaying the value will require a little bit more rendering time depending on the size of the meter and font used. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the... more ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )

	MtrSetVal ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function sets the value of the meter to the passed newVal. newVal is checked to be in the minValue-maxValue range inclusive. If newVal is not in the range, minValue maxValue is assigned depending on the given newVal if less than minValue or above maxValue.
	MtrMsgDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. Meter value is set based on parameter 2 of the message given. The following state changes are supported:
	MtrTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

## Macros

Name	Description
MtrGetVal ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the current value of the meter. Value is always in the minValue-maxValue range inclusive.
MtrDecVal ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro is used to directly decrement the value.
MtrIncVal ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro is used to directly increment the value.
MtrSetScaleColors ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Scale colors can be used to highlight values of the meter. User can set these colors to define the arc colors and scale colors. This also sets the color of the meter value when displayed. Limitation is that color settings are set to the following angles: Color Boundaries Type Whole Type Half Type Quarter Arc ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) 6 225 to 180 not used not used Arc ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) 5 179 to 135 179 to 135 not used Arc ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) 4 134 to 90 134 to 90 not used Arc ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) 3 89 to 45 89 to 45 89 to 45 Arc ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) 2 44 to 0 44... more ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )
MtrSetTitleFont ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function sets the font of title.
MtrSetValueFont ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function sets the font of value.
METER_TYPE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	<p>This is a compile time setting to select the type if meter shape. There are three types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MTR_WHOLE_TYPE - Meter drawn with 6 octants used.</li> <li>• MTR_HALF_TYPE - Meter drawn with semi circle shape.</li> <li>• MTR_QUARTER_TYPE - Meter drawn with quarter circle shape.</li> </ul> <p>Set only one value at a time. This is done to save code space. User can define the colors of the arcs for each type. MTR_WHOLE_TYPE will use all the arc colors (arcColor1 - arcColor6) MTR_HALF_TYPE will use arc colors (arcColor5, arcColor4, arcColor3, arcColor2) MTR_QUARTER_TYPE will use arc colors (arcColor3, arcColor2) Set the meter type in Meter.h file and... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</p>
MTR_ACCURACY ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets the meter accuracy to one decimal places when displaying the values. Application must multiply the minValue, maxValue and values passed to the widget by RESOLUTION.

## Structures

Name	Description
METER ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Defines the parameters required for a meter Object. Depending on the type selected the meter is drawn with the defined shape parameters and values set on the given fields.

## Description

There are three meter types that you can draw:

1. MTR\_WHOLE\_TYPE
2. MTR\_HALF\_TYPE
3. MTR\_QUARTER\_TYPE

It supports only System inputs, replying to the event EVENT\_SET with the message: MTR\_MSG\_SET (see MtrTranslateMsg ([🔗](#))() for details). This action ID means that the message contains the new value of the meter on the parameter 2 of the message.

The Meter Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme, value range colors (see `MtrSetScaleColors()` for details) and compile time settings. The following figure illustrates the assignments for a MTR\_HALF\_TYPE meter.



**Default Half Meter**



**Half Meter with Arc enabled**

**Note:**  
Normal, Critical and Danger Colors  
are not part of the style scheme  
struct. They are fields in the METER  
struct.

### 7.2.1.17.1 Meter States

#### Macros

Name	Description
<code>MTR_DISABLED</code> (🔗)	Bit for disabled state.
<code>MTR_DRAW</code> (🔗)	Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
<code>MTR_HIDE</code> (🔗)	Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
<code>MTR_RING</code> (🔗)	Bit for ring type, scales are drawn over the ring default is only scales drawn.
<code>MTR_DRAW_UPDATE</code> (🔗)	Bit to indicate an update only.

#### Module

`Meter` (🔗)

#### Description

List of Meter (🔗) bit states.

### 7.2.1.17.1.1 MTR\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

`Meter.h`

#### C

```
#define MTR_DISABLED 0x0002      // Bit for disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.17.1.2 MTR\_DRAW Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MTR_DRAW 0x4000      // Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.17.1.3 MTR\_HIDE Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MTR_HIDE 0x8000      // Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.

### 7.2.1.17.1.4 MTR\_RING Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MTR_RING 0x0004      // Bit for ring type, scales are drawn over the ring
```

**Description**

Bit for ring type, scales are drawn over the ring default is only scales drawn.

### 7.2.1.17.1.5 MTR\_DRAW\_UPDATE Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MTR_DRAW_UPDATE 0x1000      // Bit to indicate an update only.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate an update only.

## 7.2.1.17.2 MtrCreate Function

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
METER * MtrCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
```

```

    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    SHORT value,
    SHORT minValue,
    SHORT maxValue,
    void * pTitleFont,
    void * pValueFont,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pscheme
);

```

**Module**

Meter (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
SHORT value	Initial value set to the meter.
SHORT minValue	The minimum value the meter will display.
SHORT maxValue	The maximum value the meter will display.
void * pTitleFont	Pointer to the font used for the Title.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text label of the meter.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the font used for the Value. Pointer to the style scheme used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

#define ID_METER 101

extern const FONT_FLASH GOLMediumFont;           // medium font
extern const FONT_FLASH GOLSsmallFont;           // small font

GOL_SCHEME *pMeterScheme;
METER *pMtr;

pMeterScheme = GOLCreateScheme();

pMtr = MtrCreate(
    ID_METER,                      // assign ID
    30, 50, 150, 180,               // set dimension
    MTR_DRAW|MTR_RING,             // draw object after creation
    0,                             // set initial value
    0, 100,                         // set minimum and maximum value
    (void*)&GOLMediumFont,          // set title font
    (void*)&GOLSsmallFont,           // set value font
    "Speed",                        // Text Label
    pMeterScheme);                 // style scheme

```

```

// check if meter was created
if (pMtr == NULL)
    return 0;

// Change range colors: Normal values to WHITE
//                               Critical values to BLUE
//                               Danger values to RED
// assume that WHITE, GREEN, YELLOW and RED have been defined.
MtrSetScaleColors(pMtr, WHITE, WHITE, WHITE, GREEN, YELLOW, RED);

// use GOLDraw() to draw the meter and all other objects you created
while(!GOLDraw());
// OR to draw the meter manually use this:
//while(!MtrDraw(pMtr));

```

## Overview

This function creates a METER (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
METER (█) *MtrCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, SHORT value,
SHORT minValue, SHORT maxValue, void *pTitleFont, void *pValueFont, XCHAR (█) *pText, GOL_SCHEME (█)
*pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.17.3 MtrDraw Function

### File

Meter.h

### C

```
WORD MtrDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Meter (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Example

See MtrCreate (█)() example.

## Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is

determined by the style scheme set.

Depending on the defined settings, value of the meter will displayed or hidden. Displaying the value will require a little bit more rendering time depending on the size of the meter and font used.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

### Syntax

```
WORD MtrDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.17.4 MtrSetVal Function

### File

Meter.h

### C

```
void MtrSetVal(
    METER * pMtr,
    SHORT newVal
);
```

### Module

Meter ([¶](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
METER * pMtr	The pointer to the object.
SHORT newVal	New value to be set for the Meter ( <a href="#">¶</a> ).

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function sets the value of the meter to the passed newVal. newVal is checked to be in the minValue-maxValue range inclusive. If newVal is not in the range, minValue maxValue is assigned depending on the given newVal if less than minValue or above maxValue.

### Syntax

```
MtrSetVal(METER (¶) *pMtr, SHORT newVal)
```

## 7.2.1.17.5 MtrGetVal Macro

### File

Meter.h

### C

```
#define MtrGetVal(pMtr) ((pMtr)->value)
```

### Module

Meter ([¶](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns current value of the meter.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current value of the meter. Value is always in the minValue-maxValue range inclusive.

**Syntax**

MtrGetVal(pMtr)

## 7.2.1.17.6 MtrDecVal Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

#define MtrDecVal(pMtr, deltaValue) MtrSetVal(pMtr, ((pMtr)-&gt;value - deltaValue))

**Module**Meter ([¶](#))**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.
deltaValue	Number to be subtracted to the current Meter ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro is used to directly decrement the value.

**Syntax**

MtrDecVal(pMtr, deltaValue)

## 7.2.1.17.7 MtrIncVal Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MtrIncVal(pMtr, deltaValue) MtrSetVal(pMtr, ((pMtr)->value + deltaValue))
```

**Module**

Meter ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.
deltaValue	Number to be added to the current Meter ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro is used to directly increment the value.

**Syntax**

```
MtrIncVal(pMtr, deltaValue)
```

## 7.2.1.17.8 MtrSetScaleColors Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MtrSetScaleColors(pMtr, arc1, arc2, arc3, arc4, arc5, arc6) \
{ \
    pMtr->arcColor6 = arc6; \
    pMtr->arcColor5 = arc5; \
    pMtr->arcColor4 = arc4; \
    pMtr->arcColor3 = arc3; \
    pMtr->arcColor2 = arc2; \
    pMtr->arcColor1 = arc1; \
}
```

**Module**

Meter ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.
arc1	color for arc 1.
arc2	color for arc 2.
arc3	color for arc 3.
arc4	color for arc 4.
arc5	color for arc 5.
arc6	color for arc 6.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

The object must be created (using MtrCreate ( )) before a call to this macro is performed.

**Overview**

Scale colors can be used to highlight values of the meter. User can set these colors to define the arc colors and scale colors. This also sets the color of the meter value when displayed. Limitation is that color settings are set to the following angles: Color Boundaries Type Whole Type Half Type Quarter Arc ( ) 6 225 to 180 not used not used Arc ( ) 5 179 to 135 179 to 135 not used Arc ( ) 4 134 to 90 134 to 90 not used Arc ( ) 3 89 to 45 89 to 45 89 to 45 Arc ( ) 2 44 to 0 44 to 0 44 to 0 Arc ( ) 1 -45 to -1 not used not used As the meter is drawn colors are changed depending on the angle of the scale and label being drawn.

**Syntax**

```
MtrSetScaleColors(pMtr, arc1, arc2, arc3, arc4, arc5, arc6) { pMtr->arcColor6=arc6; pMtr->arcColor5=arc5;
pMtr->arcColor4=arc4; pMtr->arcColor3=arc3; pMtr->arcColor2=arc2; pMtr->arcColor1=arc1; }
```

## 7.2.1.17.9 MtrSetTitleFont Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MtrSetTitleFont(pMtr, pNewFont) (((METER *)pMtr)->pTitleFont = pNewFont)
```

**Module**

Meter ( )

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.
pNewFont	Pointer to the new font used for the title.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

N/A

**Preconditions**

Font must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function sets the font of title.

**Syntax**

```
MtrSetTitleFont(pMtr, pNewFont) (((METER (*)pMtr)->pTitleFont = pNewFont)
```

## 7.2.1.17.10 MtrSetValueFont Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MtrSetValueFont(pMtr, pNewFont) (((METER *)pMtr)->pValueFont = pNewFont)
```

**Module**

Meter (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pMtr	Pointer to the object.
pNewFont	Pointer to the new font used for the value.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

N/A

**Preconditions**

Font must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function sets the font of value.

**Syntax**

```
MtrSetValueFont(pMtr, pNewFont) (((METER ()*)pMtr)->pValueFont = pNewFont)
```

## 7.2.1.17.11 METER\_TYPE Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define METER_TYPE MTR_WHOLE_TYPE
```

**Module**

Meter (

**Overview**

This is a compile time setting to select the type if meter shape. There are three types:

- MTR\_WHOLE\_TYPE - Meter () drawn with 6 octants used.
- MTR\_HALF\_TYPE - Meter () drawn with semi circle shape.
- MTR\_QUARTER\_TYPE - Meter () drawn with quarter circle shape.

Set only one value at a time. This is done to save code space. User can define the colors of the arcs for each type.

MTR\_WHOLE\_TYPE will use all the arc colors (arcColor1 - arcColor6) MTR\_HALF\_TYPE will use arc colors (arcColor5, arcColor4, arcColor3, arcColor2) MTR\_QUARTER\_TYPE will use arc colors (arcColor3, arcColor2) Set the meter type in Meter.h file and arc colors using MtrSetScaleColors ((pMtr, arc1, arc2, arc3, arc4, arc5, arc6) macro.

## 7.2.1.17.12 MTR\_ACCURACY Macro

**File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
#define MTR_ACCURACY 0x0008      // Sets the meter accuracy to one decimal places
```

**Module**

Meter (█)

**Description**

Sets the meter accuracy to one decimal places when displaying the values. Application must multiply the minValue, maxValue and values passed to the widget by RESOLUTION.

**7.2.1.17.13 MtrMsgDefault Function****File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
void MtrMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Meter (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pMtr	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. Meter (█) value is set based on parameter 2 of the message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
MTR_MSG_SET	System	Set MTR_DRAW_UPDATE (█)	Meter (█) will be redrawn to update the needle position and value displayed.

**Syntax**

```
MtrMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█)* pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.17.14 MtrTranslateMsg Function****File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
WORD MtrTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Meter ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pMtr	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- MTR\_MSG\_SET - Meter ([🔗](#)) ID is given in parameter 1 for a TYPE\_SYSTEM message.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID - Meter ([🔗](#)) is not affected.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
MTR_MSG_SET	System	EVENT_SET	If event set occurs and the meter ID is sent in parameter 1.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD MtrTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (🔗) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.17.15 METER Structure****File**

Meter.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    XCHAR * pText;
    SHORT value;
    SHORT minValue;
    SHORT maxValue;
    SHORT xCenter;
    SHORT yCenter;
    SHORT radius;
    SHORT xPos;
    SHORT yPos;
    WORD arcColor6;
```

```

WORD arcColor5;
WORD arcColor4;
WORD arcColor3;
WORD arcColor2;
WORD arcColor1;
void * pTitleFont;
void * pValueFont;
} METER;

```

## Members

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
XCHAR * pText;	The text label of the meter.
SHORT value;	Current value of the meter.
SHORT minValue;	minimum value the meter can display
SHORT maxValue;	maximum value the meter can display (range is maxValue - minValue)
SHORT xCenter;	The x coordinate center position. This is computed automatically.
SHORT yCenter;	The y coordinate center position. This is computed automatically.
SHORT radius;	Radius of the meter, also defines the needle length.
SHORT xPos;	The current x position of the needle. This is computed automatically.
SHORT yPos;	The current y position of the needle. This is computed automatically.
WORD arcColor6;	Arc (█) 6 color parameter.
WORD arcColor5;	Arc (█) 5 color parameter
WORD arcColor4;	Arc (█) 4 color parameter
WORD arcColor3;	Arc (█) 3 color parameter
WORD arcColor2;	Arc (█) 2 color parameter
WORD arcColor1;	Arc (█) 1 color parameter
void * pTitleFont;	Pointer to the font used in the title of the meter
void * pValueFont;	Pointer to the font used in the current reading (if displayed) of the meter

## Module

Meter (█)

## Overview

Defines the parameters required for a meter Object. Depending on the type selected the meter is drawn with the defined shape parameters and values set on the given fields.

## 7.2.1.17.16 Files

## 7.2.1.18 Picture Control

Picture is an Object that can be used to transform a bitmap to be an Object in the screen and have control on the bitmap rendering. This object can be used to create animation using a series of bitmaps.

## Functions

	Name	Description
!	PictCreate (█)	This function creates a PICTURE (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

	PictDraw ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
	PictTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event accepted by the PICTURE ( <a href="#">Link</a> ) Object.

**Macros**

Name	Description
PictSetBitmap ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This macro sets the bitmap used in the object.
PictGetBitmap ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This macro returns the pointer to the bitmap used in the object.
PictGetScale ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This macro returns the current scale factor used to render the bitmap.
PictSetScale ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	This macro sets the scale factor used to render the bitmap used in the object.

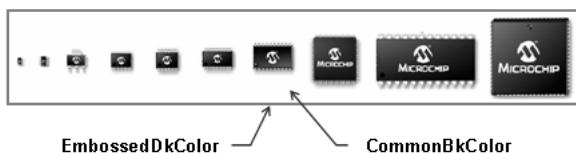
**Structures**

Name	Description
PICTURE ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	The structure contains data for picture control

**Description**

It supports only Keyboard inputs, replying to any touch screen events with the message: PICT\_MSG\_SELECTED.

The Picture Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.

**7.2.1.18.1 Picture States****Macros**

Name	Description
PICT_DISABLED ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	Bit to indicate Picture ( <a href="#">Link</a> ) is in a disabled state.
PICT_DRAW ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	Bit to indicate Picture ( <a href="#">Link</a> ) will be redrawn.
PICT_FRAME ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	Bit to indicate Picture ( <a href="#">Link</a> ) has a frame.
PICT_HIDE ( <a href="#">Link</a> )	Bit to indicate Picture ( <a href="#">Link</a> ) must be hidden.

**Module**

Picture Control ([Link](#))

**Description**

List of Picture ([Link](#)) Control bit states.

### 7.2.1.18.1.1 PICT\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PICT_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit to indicate Picture is in a disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Picture (■) is in a disabled state.

### 7.2.1.18.1.2 PICT\_DRAW Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PICT_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate Picture will be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Picture (■) will be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.18.1.3 PICT\_FRAME Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PICT_FRAME 0x0004 // Bit to indicate Picture has a frame.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Picture (■) has a frame.

### 7.2.1.18.1.4 PICT\_HIDE Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PICT_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate Picture must be hidden.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Picture (■) must be hidden.

## 7.2.1.18.2 PictCreate Function

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
PICTURE * PictCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
```

```

    char scale,
    void * pBitmap,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);

```

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
char scale	Sets the scale factor used to render the bitmap.
void * pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap that will be used.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme
radius	Radius of the rounded edge.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function creates a PICTURE (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
PICTURE (■) *PictCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, char scale, void
*pBitmap, GOL_SCHEME (■) *pScheme)
```

### 7.2.1.18.3 PictDraw Function

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```

WORD PictDraw(
    void * pObj
);

```

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pPict	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD PictDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.18.4 PictSetBitmap Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PictSetBitmap(pPict, pBtmap) ((PICTURE*)pPict)->pBitmap = pBtmap
```

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pPict	Pointer to the object
pBtMap	Pointer to the bitmap to be used

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro sets the bitmap used in the object.

**Syntax**

```
PictSetBitmap(pPict,pBtMap)
```

## 7.2.1.18.5 PictGetBitmap Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PictGetBitmap(pPict) ((PICTURE*)pPict)->pBitmap
```

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pPict	Pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the bitmap used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the pointer to the bitmap used in the object.

**Syntax**

```
PictGetBitmap(pPict)
```

## 7.2.1.18.6 PictGetScale Macro

**File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
#define PictGetScale(pPict) pPict->scale
```

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pPict	Pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the current scale factor used to display the bitmap.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current scale factor used to render the bitmap.

**Syntax**

```
PictGetScale(pPict,scl)
```

## 7.2.1.18.7 PictSetScale Macro

### File

Picture.h

### C

```
#define PictSetScale(pPict, scl) pPict->scale = scl
```

### Module

Picture Control (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pPict	Pointer to the object
scl	The scale factor that will be used to display the bitmap.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro sets the scale factor used to render the bitmap used in the object.

### Syntax

```
PictSetScale(pPict,scl)
```

## 7.2.1.18.8 PictTranslateMsg Function

### File

Picture.h

### C

```
WORD PictTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Picture Control (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pPict	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- PICT\_MSG\_SELECTED – Picture (■) is touched.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Picture (■) is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event accepted by the PICTURE (■) Object.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
PICT_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the picture.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD PictTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.18.9 PICTURE Structure****File**

Picture.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    char scale;
    void * pBitmap;
} PICTURE;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
char scale;	Scale factor for the bitmap
void * pBitmap;	Pointer to the bitmap

**Module**

Picture Control (■)

**Overview**

The structure contains data for picture control

**7.2.1.19 Progress Bar**

Progress Bar (■) is an Object that can be used to display the progress of a task such as a file download or transfer.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
■	PbCreate (■)	This function creates a PROGRESSBAR (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

	PbDraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
	PbSetRange ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function sets the range of the progress bar. Calling this function also resets the position equal to the new range value.
	PbSetPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function sets the position of the progress bar. Position should be in the given range inclusive.
	PbTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
PbGetRange ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the current range of the progress bar.
PbGetPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the current progress bar position.

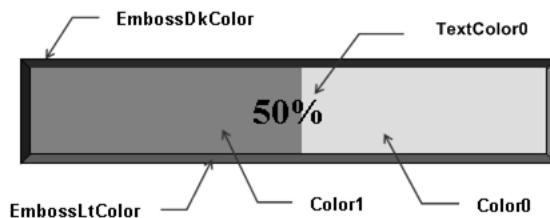
**Structures**

Name	Description
PROGRESSBAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	The structure contains data for the progress bar

**Description**

Progress Bar ([🔗](#)) supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the message: PB\_MSG\_SELECTED.

The Progress Bar ([🔗](#)) Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



**CommonBkColor** – used to hide/remove the progress bar from the screen.

### 7.2.1.19.1 Progress Bar States

**Macros**

Name	Description
PB_DISABLED ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Bit to indicate Progress Bar ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) is in a disabled state.
PB_DRAW ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Bit to indicate Progress Bar ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) must be redrawn.
PB_DRAW_BAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Bit to indicate Progress Bar ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) must be redrawn.
PB_HIDE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Bit to indicate Progress Bar ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) must be hidden.
PB_VERTICAL ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)

**Module**

Progress Bar (█)

**Description**

List of Progress Bar (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.19.1.1 PB\_DISABLED Macro

**File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
#define PB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit to indicate Progress Bar is in a disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Progress Bar (█) is in a disabled state.

### 7.2.1.19.1.2 PB\_DRAW Macro

**File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
#define PB_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate Progress Bar must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Progress Bar (█) must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.19.1.3 PB\_DRAW\_BAR Macro

**File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
#define PB_DRAW_BAR 0x2000 // Bit to indicate Progress Bar must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Progress Bar (█) must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.19.1.4 PB\_HIDE Macro

**File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
#define PB_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate Progress Bar must be hidden.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate Progress Bar (█) must be hidden.

### 7.2.1.19.1.5 PB\_VERTICAL Macro

**File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
#define PB_VERTICAL 0x0004 // Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)
```

**Description**

Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)

**7.2.1.19.2 PbCreate Function****File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
PROGRESSBAR * PbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    WORD pos,
    WORD range,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Progress Bar (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the Object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the Object.
WORD pos	Defines the initial position of the progress.
WORD range	This specifies the maximum value of the progress bar when the progress bar is at 100% position.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used for the object. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
PROGRESSBAR *pPBar;
void CreateProgressBar(){
    pPBar = PbCreate(ID_PROGRESSBAR1,
                      50,90,270,140,
                      PB_DRAW,
                      25,
                      50,
                      NULL); // use default GOL scheme
```

```

    while( !PbDraw( pPBar ) );
}

```

## Overview

This function creates a PROGRESSBAR (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
PROGRESSBAR (■) *PbCreate( WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, WORD pos, WORD range, GOL_SCHEME (■) *pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.19.3 PbDraw Function

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
WORD PbDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Progress Bar (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pPb	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

### Preconditions

Object must be created before this function is called.

### Example

See PbCreate (■)() example.

### Overview

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

### Syntax

```
WORD PbDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.19.4 PbSetRange Function

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
void PbSetRange(
    PROGRESSBAR * pPb,
    WORD range
);
```

### Module

Progress Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
PROGRESSBAR * pPb	Pointer to the object

### Side Effects

Sets the position equal to the new range.

### Returns

none.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function sets the range of the progress bar. Calling this function also resets the position equal to the new range value.

### Syntax

PbSetRange(PROGRESSBAR (█) \*pPb, WORD range)

## 7.2.1.19.5 PbGetRange Macro

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
#define PbGetRange(pPb) (pPb->range)
```

### Module

Progress Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pPb	Pointer to the object

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the range value.

### Preconditions

none

## Overview

This macro returns the current range of the progress bar.

## Syntax

PbGetRange(pPb)

## 7.2.1.19.6 PbSetPos Function

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
void PbSetPos(
    PROGRESSBAR * pPb,
    WORD position
);
```

### Module

Progress Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
PROGRESSBAR * pPb	Pointer to the object
WORD position	New position.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
PROGRESSBAR *pPb;
BYTE direction = 1;

// this code increments and decrements the progress bar by 1
// assume progress bar was created and initialized before
while (1) {
    if(direction) {
        if(pPb ->pos == pPb ->range)
            direction = 0;
        else
            PbSetPos(pPb,PbGetPos(pPb)+1);
    } else {
        if(pPb ->pos == 0)
            direction = 1;
        else
            PbSetPos(pPb,PbGetPos(pPb)-1);
    }
}
```

## Overview

This function sets the position of the progress bar. Position should be in the given range inclusive.

## Syntax

void PbSetPos(PROGRESSBAR (█) \*pPb, WORD position)

## 7.2.1.19.7 PbGetPos Macro

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
#define PbGetPos(pPb) pPb->pos
```

### Module

Progress Bar ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pPb	Pointer to the object

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the progress bar position.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See PbSetPos ([🔗](#))() exmaple.

### Overview

This macro returns the current progress bar position.

### Syntax

PbGetPos(pPb)

## 7.2.1.19.8 PbTranslateMsg Function

### File

ProgressBar.h

### C

```
WORD PbTranslateMsg(
    PROGRESSBAR * pPb,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Progress Bar ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
PROGRESSBAR * pPb	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.

### Side Effects

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- PB\_MSG\_SELECTED – Progress Bar (█) is selected.
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Progress Bar (█) is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
PB_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the progress bar.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

WORD PbTranslateMsg(PROGRESSBAR (█) \*pPb, GOL\_MSG (█) \*pMsg)

**7.2.1.19.9 PROGRESSBAR Structure****File**

ProgressBar.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    WORD pos;
    WORD prevPos;
    WORD range;
} PROGRESSBAR;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (█)).
WORD pos;	Current progress position.
WORD prevPos;	Previous progress position.
WORD range;	Sets the range of the object.

**Module**

Progress Bar (█)

**Overview**

The structure contains data for the progress bar

## 7.2.1.20 Radio Button

Radio Button (█) is an Object that can be used to offer set of choices to the user. Only one of the choices is selectable. Changing selection automatically removes the selection on the previous option.

### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	RbCreate (█)	This function creates a RADIobutton (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	RbDraw (█)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
≡	RbGetCheck (█)	This function returns the ID of the currently checked Radio Button (█) in the group.
≡	RbSetCheck (█)	This function sets the Radio Button (█) with the given ID to its checked state.
≡	RbSetText (█)	This function sets the string used for the object.
≡	RbMsgDefault (█)	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
≡	RbTranslateMsg (█)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

### Macros

Name	Description
RbGetText (█)	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

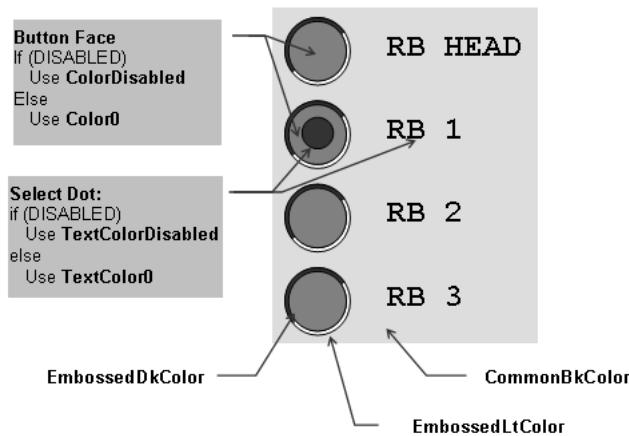
### Structures

Name	Description
RADIobutton (█)	the structure contains data for the Radio Button (█)

### Description

Radio Button (█) supports both Keyboard and Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the message: RB\_MSG\_CHECKED.

The Radio Button (█) Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



### 7.2.1.20.1 Radio Button States

#### Macros

Name	Description
RB_CHECKED (█)	Bit to indicate Radio Button (█) is checked.
RB_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state.
RB_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate whole Radio Button (█) must be redrawn.
RB_DRAW_CHECK (█)	Bit to indicate check mark should be redrawn.
RB_DRAW_FOCUS (█)	Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.
RB_FOCUSED (█)	Bit for focused state.
RB_GROUP (█)	Bit to indicate the first Radio Button (█) in the group.
RB_HIDE (█)	Bit to indicate that button must be removed from screen.

#### Module

Radio Button (█)

#### Description

List of Radio Button (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.20.1.1 RB\_CHECKED Macro

#### File

RadioButton.h

#### C

```
#define RB_CHECKED 0x0004 // Bit to indicate Radio Button is checked.
```

#### Description

Bit to indicate Radio Button (█) is checked.

### 7.2.1.20.1.2 RB\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

RadioButton.h

#### C

```
#define RB_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

**Description**

Bit for disabled state.

### 7.2.1.20.1.3 RB\_DRAW Macro

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate whole Radio Button must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate whole Radio Button (▣) must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.20.1.4 RB\_DRAW\_CHECK Macro

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_DRAW_CHECK 0x1000 // Bit to indicate check mark should be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate check mark should be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.20.1.5 RB\_DRAW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000 // Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate focus must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.20.1.6 RB\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focused state.
```

**Description**

Bit for focused state.

### 7.2.1.20.1.7 RB\_GROUP Macro

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_GROUP 0x0008 // Bit to indicate the first Radio Button in the group.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate the first Radio Button (█) in the group.

**7.2.1.20.1.8 RB\_HIDE Macro****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RB_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate that button must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that button must be removed from screen.

**7.2.1.20.2 RbCreate Function****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
RADIOBUTTON * RbCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Radio Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object pText – The pointer to the text used for the Radio Button (█).
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
RADIOBUTTON *pRb[ 3 ];
```

```

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
pRb[0] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON1,
                  255,40,310,80,
                  RB_DRAW|RB_GROUP|RB_CHECKED,
                  "RB1",
                  pScheme);                                // ID
                                                // dimension
                                                // will be displayed and
                                                // focused after creation
                                                // first button in the group
                                                // text
                                                // scheme used

pRb[1] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON2,
                  255,85,310,125,
                  RB_DRAW,
                  "RB2",
                  pScheme);                                // ID
                                                // dimension
                                                // will be displayed and
                                                // checked after creation
                                                // text
                                                // scheme used

pRb[2] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON3,
                  255,130,310,170,
                  RB_DRAW,
                  "RB3",
                  pScheme);                                // ID
                                                // dimension
                                                // will be displayed and
                                                // disabled after creation
                                                // text
                                                // scheme used

while( !RbDraw(pRb[0]));
while( !RbDraw(pRb[1]));
while( !RbDraw(pRb[2]));                                // draw the objects

```

## Overview

This function creates a RADIobutton ( object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

## Syntax

```
RADIOBUTTON () *RbCreate( WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, XCHAR () *pText, GOL_SCHEME () *pScheme)
```

## 7.2.1.20.3 RbDraw Function

### File

RadioButton.h

### C

```
WORD RbDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

### Module

Radio Button (

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pB	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See RbCreate (■)() example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD RbDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.20.4 RbGetCheck Function

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
WORD RbGetCheck(
    RADIOBUTTON * pRb
);
```

**Module**

Radio Button (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
RADIOBUTTON * pRb	Pointer to the Radio Button (■) in the group.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the ID of the selected button in the group. It returns -1 if there is no object checked.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
RADIOBUTTON *pRb[3];
SHORT ID;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
pRb[0] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON1,
                  255,40,310,80,
                  RB_DRAW|RB_GROUP|RB_CHECKED,
                  "RB1",
                  pScheme); // ID
// dimension
// will be displayed and
// focused after creation
// first button in the group
// text
// scheme used

pRb[1] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON2,
                  255,85,310,125,
                  RB_DRAW,
                  // ID
                  // dimension
                  // will be displayed and
```

```

        "RB2",
        pScheme);                                // checked after creation
                                                // text
                                                // scheme used

pRb[2] = RbCreate(ID_RADIOBUTTON3,
                   255, 130, 310, 170,
                   RB_DRAW,
                   "RB3",
                   pScheme);                                // ID
                                                // dimension
                                                // will be displayed and
                                                // disabled after creation
                                                // text
                                                // scheme used

// draw the Radio Buttons here

ID = RbGetCheck(pRb[2]);                      // can also use pRb[1] or
                                                // pRb[0] to search the
                                                // checked radio button of the
                                                // group. ID here should
                                                // be ID_RADIOBUTTON1

if (ID == ID_RADIOBUTTON1) {
    // do something here then clear the check
    ClrState(pRb[0], RB_CHECKED);
    // Change the checked object. Pointer used is any of the three.
    // the ID used will find the correct object to be checked
    RbSetCheck(pRb[3], ID_RADIOBUTTON2);
}

```

## Overview

This function returns the ID of the currently checked Radio Button (▣) in the group.

## Syntax

```
WORD RbGetCheck(RADIOBUTTON (▣) *pRb)
```

## 7.2.1.20.5 RbSetCheck Function

### File

RadioButton.h

### C

```
void RbSetCheck(
    RADIOBUTTON * pRb,
    WORD ID
);
```

### Module

Radio Button (▣)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
RADIOBUTTON * pRb	Pointer to the Radio Button (▣) in the group.
WORD ID	ID of the object to be checked.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See RbGetCheck (▣)() example.

**Overview**

This function sets the Radio Button (■) with the given ID to its checked state.

**Syntax**

```
void RbSetCheck(RADIOBUTTON (■) *pRb, WORD ID)
```

**7.2.1.20.6 RbGetText Macro****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
#define RbGetText(pRb) pRb->pText
```

**Module**

Radio Button (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pRb	Pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns pointer to the text string being used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
RbGetText(pRb)
```

**7.2.1.20.7 RbSetText Function****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
void RbSetText(
    RADIOBUTTON * pRb,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Radio Button (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
RADIOBUTTON * pRb	The pointer to the object whose text will be modified
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text that will be used

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the string used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
RbSetText(RADIOBUTTON (■) *pRb, XCHAR (■) *pText)
```

## 7.2.1.20.8 RbMsgDefault Function

**File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
void RbMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Radio Button (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message
pRb	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See BtnTranslateMsg (■)() example.

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
RB_MSG_CHECKED	Touch Screen,	Set RB_DRAW (■),	Depending on the current value of RB_CHECKED (■) Check Box will be redrawn.

	Keyboard	Set/Clear RB_CHECKED (█)	
--	----------	--------------------------	--

**Syntax**

```
RbMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█)* pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.20.9 RbTranslateMsg Function****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
WORD RbTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Radio Button (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pRb	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- RB\_MSG\_CHECKED – Radio Button (█) is checked
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Radio Button (█) is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
RB_MSG_CHECKED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS	If event occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the Radio Button (█) while the Radio Button (█) is not checked.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_CR_PRESSED (█) or SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (█) while the Radio Button (█) is not checked.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD RbTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.20.10 RADIobutton Structure****File**

RadioButton.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    OBJ_HEADER * pHead;
    OBJ_HEADER * pNext;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
} RADIobutton;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
OBJ_HEADER * pHead;	Pointer to the first Radio Button (■) in the group
OBJ_HEADER * pNext;	Pointer to the next Radio Button (■) in the group
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height
XCHAR * pText;	Pointer to the text

**Module**

Radio Button (■)

**Overview**

the structure contains data for the Radio Button (■)

**7.2.1.21 Slider/Scroll Bar**

Slider or Scrollbar is an Object that can be used to display a value or scrolling location in a predefined area.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
■	SldCreate (■)	This function creates a SLIDER (■) object with the parameters given. Depending on the SLD_SCROLLBAR (■) state bit slider or scrollbar mode is set. If SLD_SCROLLBAR (■) is set, mode is scrollbar; if not set mode is slider. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
■	SldDraw (■)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
■	SldSetPage (■)	This sets the page size of the object. Page size defines the delta change of the thumb position when incremented via SldIncPos (■)() or decremented via SldDecPos (■)(). Page size minimum value is 1. Maximum value is range/2.
■	SldSetPos (■)	This function sets the position of the slider thumb. Value should be in the set range inclusive. Object must be redrawn to reflect the change.
■	SldSetRange (■)	This sets the range of the thumb. If this field is changed Object must be completely redrawn to reflect the change.

	SldMsgDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:
	SldTranslateMsg ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
SldGetPage ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns the current page size of the object. Page size defines the delta change of the thumb position when incremented via SldIncPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()) or decremented via SldDecPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()). Page size minimum value is 1. Maximum value is range/2.
SldGetPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns returns the current position of the slider thumb.
SldGetRange ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns the current range of the thumb.
SldIncPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro increment the slider position by the delta change (page) value set. Object must be redrawn after this function is called to reflect the changes to the object.
SldDecPos ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro decrement the slider position by the delta change (page) value set. Object must be redrawn after this function is called to reflect the changes to the object.

**Structures**

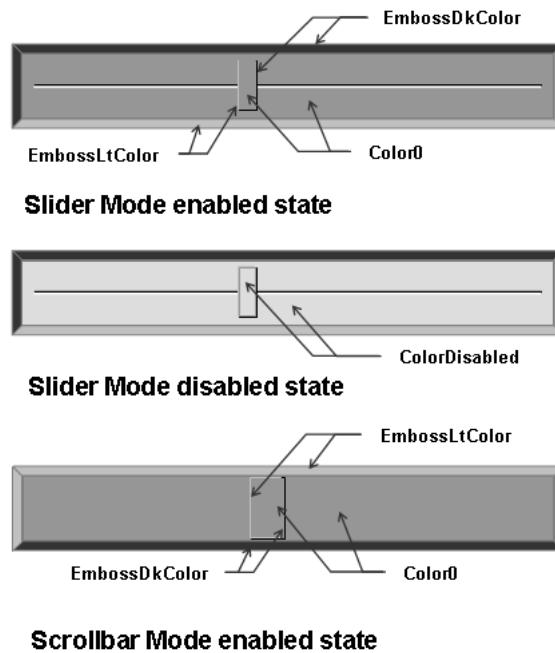
Name	Description
SLIDER ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Defines the parameters required for a slider/scrollbar Object. Depending on the SLD_SCROLLBAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) state bit slider or scrollbar mode is set. If SLD_SCROLLBAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) is set, mode is scrollbar; if not set mode is slider. For scrollbar mode, focus rectangle is not drawn.

**Description**

Slider or Scrollbar supports both Keyboard and Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. SLD\_MSG\_INC - when the thumb is to be incremented in position
2. SLD\_MSG\_DEC - when the thumb is to be decremented in position

The Slider object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



### 7.2.1.21.1 Slider States

#### Macros

Name	Description
SLD_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state
SLD_DRAW (█)	Bit to indicate whole slider must be redrawn
SLD_DRAW_FOCUS (█)	Bit to indicate that only the focus will be redrawn
SLD_DRAW_THUMB (█)	Bit to indicate that only thumb area must be redrawn
SLD_FOCUSED (█)	Bit for focus state
SLD_HIDE (█)	Bit to remove object from screen
SLD_SCROLLBAR (█)	Bit for type usage (0 - Slider (█), 1 - ScrollBar)
SLD_VERTICAL (█)	Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)

#### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

#### Description

List of Slider (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.21.1.1 SLD\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

Slider.h

#### C

```
#define SLD_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state
```

#### Description

Bit for disabled state

### 7.2.1.21.1.2 SLD\_DRAW Macro

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SLD_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate whole slider must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate whole slider must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.21.1.3 SLD\_DRAW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SLD_DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000 // Bit to indicate that only the focus will be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that only the focus will be redrawn

### 7.2.1.21.1.4 SLD\_DRAW\_THUMB Macro

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SLD_DRAW_THUMB 0x1000 // Bit to indicate that only thumb area must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that only thumb area must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.21.1.5 SLD\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SLD_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focus state
```

**Description**

Bit for focus state

### 7.2.1.21.1.6 SLD\_HIDE Macro

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SLD_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen
```

**Description**

Bit to remove object from screen

### 7.2.1.21.1.7 SLD\_SCROLLBAR Macro

#### File

Slider.h

#### C

```
#define SLD_SCROLLBAR 0x0010 // Bit for type usage (0 - Slider, 1 - ScrollBar)
```

#### Description

Bit for type usage (0 - Slider (█), 1 - ScrollBar)

### 7.2.1.21.1.8 SLD\_VERTICAL Macro

#### File

Slider.h

#### C

```
#define SLD_VERTICAL 0x0004 // Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)
```

#### Description

Bit for orientation (0 - horizontal, 1 - vertical)

## 7.2.1.21.2 SldCreate Function

#### File

Slider.h

#### C

```
SLIDER * SldCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    WORD range,
    WORD page,
    WORD pos,
    GOL_SCHEME * pscheme
);
```

#### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the Object.
WORD state	This defines the initial state of the Object.
WORD range	This specifies the maximum value of the slider when the thumb is on the rightmost position for a horizontal orientation and bottom most position for the vertical orientation. Minimum value is always at zero.

WORD page	This is the incremental change of the slider when user action requests to move the slider thumb. This value is added or subtracted to the current position of the thumb.
WORD pos	This defines the initial position of the thumb.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	The pointer to the style scheme used for the Object. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
SLIDER *slider[3];
WORD state;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();

// create a slider with
//     range = [0 - 50000]
//     delta = 500
//     initial position = 25000
state = SLD_DRAW;
slider[0] = SldCreate( 5,
                      150, 145, 285, 181,
                      state,
                      50000, 500, 25000,
                      pScheme);
if (slider[0] == NULL)
    return 0;

// create a scrollbar with
//     range = [0 - 100]
//     delta = 20
//     initial position = 0

state = SLD_DRAW|SLD_SCROLLBAR;
slider[1] = SldCreate( 6,
                      150, 190, 285, 220,
                      state,
                      100, 20, 0,
                      pScheme);
if (slider[1] == NULL)
    return 0;

// create a vertical slider with
//     range = [0 - 30]
//     delta = 2
//     initial position = 20

state = SLD_DRAW|SLD_VERTICAL;
slider[2] = SldCreate( 7,
                      120, 145, 140, 220,
                      state,
                      30, 2, 20,
                      pScheme);
if (slider[2] == NULL)
    return 0;

// draw the sliders
while(!sldDraw(slider[0]));      // draw the horizontal slider
while(!sldDraw(slider[1]));      // draw the horizontal scroll bar

```

```
while(!sldDraw(slider[2]);           // draw the vertical slider
      return 1;
```

**Overview**

This function creates a SLIDER (█) object with the parameters given. Depending on the SLD\_SCROLLBAR (█) state bit slider or scrollbar mode is set. If SLD\_SCROLLBAR (█) is set, mode is scrollbar; if not set mode is slider. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
SLIDER (█) *SldCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, SHORT range,
                      SHORT page, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme);
```

**7.2.1.21.3 SldDraw Function****File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
WORD SldDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See SldCreate (█)() example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD SldDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.21.4 SldSetPage Function

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
void SldSetPage(
    SLIDER * pSld,
    WORD newPage
);
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SLIDER * pSld	Pointer to the object.
WORD newPage	Value of the new page used.

### Side Effects

Position of the thumb may change when redrawn.

### Returns

None.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See SldIncPos ([🔗](#))() example.

### Overview

This sets the page size of the object. Page size defines the delta change of the thumb position when incremented via SldIncPos ([🔗](#))() or decremented via SldDecPos ([🔗](#))(). Page size minimum value is 1. Maximum value is range/2.

### Syntax

```
void SldSetPage(SLIDER (🔗) *pSld, WORD newPage)
```

## 7.2.1.21.5 SldGetPage Macro

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
#define SldGetPage(pSld) (((SLIDER*)pSld)->page)
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar ([🔗](#))

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object.

### Side Effects

none

**Returns**

Returns the current value of the slider page.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WORD page;
SLIDER *pSld;

page = SldGetPage(pSld);
```

**Overview**

Returns the current page size of the object. Page size defines the delta change of the thumb position when incremented via SldIncPos (█)() or decremented via SldDecPos (█)(). Page size minimum value is 1. Maximum value is range/2.

**Syntax**

```
SldGetPage(pSld)
```

## 7.2.1.21.6 SldSetPos Function

**File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
void SldSetPos(
    SLIDER * pSld,
    SHORT newPos
);
```

**Module**

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SLIDER * pSld	Pointer to the object.
SHORT newPos	The new position of the slider's thumb.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
SLIDER *pSlider;
DWORD ctr = 0;

// create slider here and initialize parameters
SetState(pSlider, SLD_DRAW);
SldDraw(pSlider);

while("some condition") {
    SldSetPos(pSlider, ctr);
    SetState(pSlider, SLD_DRAW_THUMB);
    SldDraw(pSlider);
    // update ctr here
}
```

```
    ctr = "some source of value";
}
```

## Overview

This function sets the position of the slider thumb. Value should be in the set range inclusive. Object must be redrawn to reflect the change.

## Syntax

```
SldSetPos(SLIDER (■) *pSld, SHORT newPos)
```

### 7.2.1.21.7 SldGetPos Macro

#### File

Slider.h

#### C

```
#define SldGetPos(pSld) (((SLIDER*)pSld)->pos)
```

#### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (■)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the current position of the slider's thumb.

#### Preconditions

none

#### Example

```
#define MAXVALUE 100;

SLIDER *pSlider;
DWORD ctr = 0;

// create slider here and initialize parameters
SetState(pSlider, SLD_DRAW);
SldDraw(pSlider);

while("some condition") {
    SldSetPos(pSlider, ctr);
    SetState(pSlider, SLD_DRAW_THUMB);
    SldDraw(pSlider);
    // update ctr here
    ctr = "some source of value";
}

if (SldGetPos(pSlider) > (MAXVALUE - 1))
    return 0;
else
    "do something else"
```

## Overview

Returns returns the current position of the slider thumb.

## Syntax

```
SldGetPos(pSld)
```

## 7.2.1.21.8 SldSetRange Function

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
void SldSetRange(
    SLIDER * pSld,
    SHORT newRange
);
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SLIDER * pSld	Pointer to the object.
SHORT newRange	Value of the new range used.

### Side Effects

Position of the thumb may change when redrawn.

### Returns

None.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
SLIDER *pSld;

SldSetRange(pSld, 100);
// to completely redraw the object when GOLDraw() is executed.
SetState(pSld, SLD_DRAW);
```

### Overview

This sets the range of the thumb. If this field is changed Object must be completely redrawn to reflect the change.

### Syntax

SldSetRange(SLIDER (█) \*pSld, SHORT newRange)

## 7.2.1.21.9 SldGetRange Macro

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
#define SldGetRange(pSld) (((SLIDER*)pSld)->range)
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the current range of the slider thumb.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WORD range;
SLIDER *pSld;

range = SldGetRange(pSld);
```

**Overview**

Returns the current range of the thumb.

**Syntax**

```
SldGetRange(pSld)
```

**7.2.1.21.10 SldIncPos Macro****File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
#define SldIncPos(pSld) \
    SldSetPos \
    ( \
    \ \
        pSld, \
    \ \
        (((DWORD) pSld->pos + (DWORD) ((SLIDER*)pSld)->page) <= (DWORD) \
        ((SLIDER*)pSld)->range) ? \
            (((SLIDER*)pSld)->pos + ((SLIDER*)pSld)->page) : \
        ((SLIDER*)pSld)->range \
    )
```

**Module**

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

## Example

```

void ControlSpeed(SLIDER* pSld, int setSpeed, int curSpeed)
{
    SldSetPage(pSld, 1);                                // set page size to 1
    if (setSpeed < curSpeed) {
        while(SldGetPos(pSld) < SetSpeed)
            SldIncPos(pSld);                            // increment by 1
    }
    else if (setSpeed > curSpeed) {
        while(SldGetPos(pSld) > SetSpeed)
            SldDecPos(pSld);                          // decrement by 1
    }
}

```

## Overview

This macro increments the slider position by the delta change (page) value set. Object must be redrawn after this function is called to reflect the changes to the object.

## Syntax

SIdIncPos(pSid)

### 7.2.1.21.11 SldDecPos Macro

File

Slider.h

C

```
#define SldDecPos(pSld) \
    SldSetPos

\
(
\
    pSld,
\
    (((LONG) ((SLIDER*)pSld)->pos - (LONG) ((SLIDER*)pSld)->page) >= 0) ?
?                                \
        (((SLIDER*)pSld)->pos - ((SLIDER*)pSld)->page) :
0                                \
)
}
```

Module

### Slider/Scroll Bar (↗)

## Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pSld	Pointer to the object.

## **Side Effects**

none

## Returns

none

## Preconditions

none

## Example

See `SldIncPos` ()() example.

## Overview

This macro decrement the slider position by the delta change (page) value set. Object must be redrawn after this function is called to reflect the changes to the object.

## Syntax

```
SldDecPos(pSld)
```

## 7.2.1.21.12 SldMsgDefault Function

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
void SldMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pSld	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

## Overview

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
SLD_MSG_INC	Touch Keyboard	Screen, Set SLD_DRAW_THUMB (█)	Slider (█) will be redrawn with thumb in the incremented position.
SLD_MSG_DEC	Touch Keyboard	Screen, Set SLD_DRAW_THUMB (█)	Slider (█) will be redrawn with thumb in the decremented position.

## Syntax

```
void SldMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█)* pMsg)
```

## 7.2.1.21.13 SldTranslateMsg Function

### File

Slider.h

### C

```
WORD SldTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Module

Slider/Scroll Bar (█)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pSld	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- SLD\_MSG\_INC – Increment slider position
- SLD\_MSG\_DEC – Decrement slider position
- OBJ\_MSG\_PASSIVE – Slider (█) is not affected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Slider (█) is not affected

### Preconditions

none

### Example

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (█)() example.

### Overview

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
SLD_MSG_INC	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the slider and the slider position is to the LEFT of the x,y position for a horizontal slider or BELOW the x,y position for a vertical slider.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_UP_PRESSED (█) or SCAN_LEFT_PRESSED (█).
SLD_MSG_DEC	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the slider and the slider position is to the RIGHT of the x,y position for a horizontal slider or ABOVE the x,y position for a vertical slider.
	Keyboard	EVENT_KEYSCAN	If event occurs and parameter1 passed matches the object's ID and parameter 2 passed matches SCAN_DOWN_PRESSED (█) or SCAN_RIGHT_PRESSED (█).

OBJ_MSG_PASSIVE	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the slider.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD SldTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.21.14 SLIDER Structure****File**

Slider.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    WORD currPos;
    WORD prevPos;
    WORD range;
    WORD pos;
    WORD page;
    WORD thWidth;
    WORD thHeight;
} SLIDER;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
WORD currPos;	Position of the slider relative to minimum.
WORD prevPos;	Previous position of the slider relative to minimum.
WORD range;	User defined range of the slider. Minimum value at 0 and maximum at 0x7FFF.
WORD pos;	Position of the slider in range domain.
WORD page;	User specified resolution to incrementally change the position
WORD thWidth;	Thumb width. This is computed internally.
WORD thHeight;	Thumb width. This is computed internally. User must not change this value.

**Module**

Slider/Scroll Bar (■)

**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a slider/scrollbar Object. Depending on the SLD\_SCROLLBAR (■) state bit slider or scrollbar mode is set. If SLD\_SCROLLBAR (■) is set, mode is scrollbar; if not set mode is slider. For scrollbar mode, focus rectangle is not drawn.

**7.2.1.22 Static Text**

Static Text is an Object that can be used to display a single or multi-line string of text in a predefined location.

**Functions**

	Name	Description
💡	StCreate (■)	This function creates a STATICTEXT (■) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

	StDraw ( )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
	StSetText ( )	This function sets the string that will be used for the object.
	StTranslateMsg ( )	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

**Macros**

Name	Description
StGetText ( )	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

**Structures**

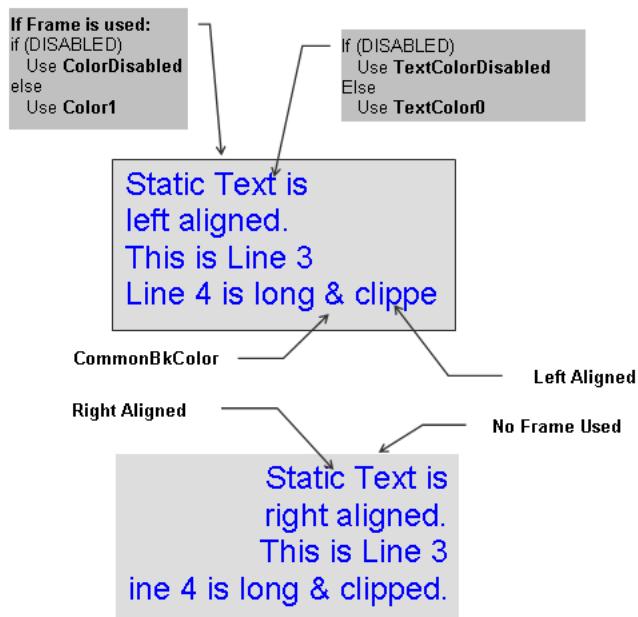
Name	Description
STATICTEXT ( )	Defines the parameters required for a Static Text Object.

**Description**

Static Text supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the message:

ST\_MSG\_SELECTED - when the touch is within the dimension of the object.

The Static Text Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



## 7.2.1.22.1 Static Text States

### Macros

Name	Description
ST_CENTER_ALIGN (🔗)	Bit to indicate text is center aligned.
ST_DISABLED (🔗)	Bit for disabled state.
ST_DRAW (🔗)	Bit to indicate static text must be redrawn.
ST_FRAME (🔗)	Bit to indicate frame is displayed.
ST_HIDE (🔗)	Bit to remove object from screen.
ST_RIGHT_ALIGN (🔗)	Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
ST_UPDATE (🔗)	Bit to indicate that text area only is redrawn.

### Module

Static Text (🔗)

### Description

List of Static Text bit states.

## 7.2.1.22.1.1 ST\_CENTER\_ALIGN Macro

### File

StaticText.h

### C

```
#define ST_CENTER_ALIGN 0x0008 // Bit to indicate text is center aligned.
```

### Description

Bit to indicate text is center aligned.

## 7.2.1.22.1.2 ST\_DISABLED Macro

### File

StaticText.h

### C

```
#define ST_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

### Description

Bit for disabled state.

## 7.2.1.22.1.3 ST\_DRAW Macro

### File

StaticText.h

### C

```
#define ST_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate static text must be redrawn.
```

### Description

Bit to indicate static text must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.22.1.4 ST\_FRAME Macro

**File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
#define ST_FRAME 0x0010 // Bit to indicate frame is displayed.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate frame is displayed.

### 7.2.1.22.1.5 ST\_HIDE Macro

**File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
#define ST_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to remove object from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to remove object from screen.

### 7.2.1.22.1.6 ST\_RIGHT\_ALIGN Macro

**File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
#define ST_RIGHT_ALIGN 0x0004 // Bit to indicate text is left aligned.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate text is left aligned.

### 7.2.1.22.1.7 ST\_UPDATE Macro

**File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
#define ST_UPDATE 0x2000 // Bit to indicate that text area only is redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate that text area only is redrawn.

## 7.2.1.22.2 StCreate Function

**File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
STATICTEXT * StCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
```

```
XCHAR * pText,
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Static Text (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text used in the static text.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme. Set to NULL if default style scheme is used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOL_SCHEME *pScheme;
STATICTEXT *pSt;

pScheme = GOLCreateScheme();
state = ST_DRAW | ST_FRAME | ST_CENTER_ALIGN;
StCreate(ID_STATICTEXT1,           // ID
         30,80,235,160,        // dimension
         state,                // has frame and center aligned
         "Static Textn Example", // text
         pScheme);              // use given scheme

while(!StDraw(pSt));             // draw the object
```

**Overview**

This function creates a STATICTEXT (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
STATICTEXT (█) *StCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state , XCHAR (█)
*pText, GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

**7.2.1.22.3 StDraw Function****File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
WORD StDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Static Text (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pSt	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See StCreate (█)() Example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

WORD StDraw(void \*pObj)

**7.2.1.22.4 StGetText Macro****File**

StaticText.h

**C**

#define StGetText(pSt) pSt-&gt;pText

**Module**

Static Text (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pSt	Pointer to the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the text string used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
StGetText(pSt)
```

**7.2.1.22.5 StSetText Function****File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
void StSetText(
    STATICTEXT * pSt,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Static Text (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
STATICTEXT * pSt	The pointer to the object whose text string will be modified.
XCHAR * pText	The pointer to the string that will be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the string that will be used for the object.

**Syntax**

```
StSetText(STATICTEXT () *pSt, XCHAR () *pText)
```

**7.2.1.22.6 StTranslateMsg Function****File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
WORD StTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Static Text (

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pSt	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- ST\_MSG\_SELECTED – Static Text is selected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Static Text is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (■)() example.

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen and keyboard inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
ST_MSG_SELECTED	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the area of the static text.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

WORD StTranslateMsg(void \*pObj, GOL\_MSG (■) \*pMsg)

**7.2.1.22.7 STATICTEXT Structure****File**

StaticText.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
} STATICTEXT;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height.
XCHAR * pText;	The pointer to text used.

**Module**

Static Text (■)

## Overview

Defines the parameters required for a Static Text Object.

### 7.2.1.23 Text Entry

Text Entry is an Object that can be used to emulate a key pad entry with a display area for the entered characters. The Object has a feature where you can define a key to reply with a translated message that signifies a command key was pressed. A command key example can be your enter or carriage return key or an escape key. Multiple keys can be assigned command keys. Application can utilize the command key to define the behavior of the program based on a command key press.

#### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	TeCreate ( )	This function creates a TEXTENTRY ( ) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	TeDraw ( )	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. This widget will draw the keys using the function GOLPanelDraw ( )(). The number of keys will depend on the horizontal and vertical parameters given (horizontalKeys*verticalKeys).
≡	TeSetBuffer ( )	This function sets the buffer used to display text. If the buffer is initialized with a string, the string must be a null terminated string. If the string length is greater than MaxSize, string will be truncated to MaxSize. pText must point to a valid memory location with size equal to MaxSize+1. The +1 is used for the string terminator.
≡	TeClearBuffer ( )	This function will clear the data in the display. You must set the drawing state bit TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ) to update the TEXTENTRY ( ) on the screen.
≡	TeGetKeyCommand ( )	This function will return the currently used command by a key with the given index.
≡	TeSetKeyCommand ( )	This function will assign a command (TE_DELETE_COM ( ), TE_SPACE_COM ( ) or TE_ENTER_COM ( )) to a key with the given index.
≡	TeCreateKeyMembers ( )	This function will create the list of KEYMEMBERS that holds the information on each key. The number of keys is determined by the equation (verticalKeys*horizontalKeys). The object creates the information holder for each key automatically and assigns each entry in the *pText[] array with the first entry automatically assigned to the key with an index of 1. The number of entries to *pText[] must be equal or greater than (verticalKeys*horizontalKeys). The last key is assigned with an index of (verticalKeys*horizontalKeys)-1. No checking is performed on the length of *pText[] entries to match (verticalKeys*horizontalKeys).
≡	TeAddChar ( )	This function will insert a character to the end of the buffer. The character inserted is dependent on the currently pressed key. Drawing states TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ) or TE_DRAW ( ) must be set to see the effect of this insertion.
≡	TelsKeyPressed ( )	This function will test if a key given by its index in the TextEntry object has been pressed.
≡	TeSpaceChar ( )	This function will insert a space character to the end of the buffer. Drawing states TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ) or TE_DRAW ( ) must be set to see the effect of this insertion.
≡	TeDelKeyMembers ( )	This function will delete the KEYMEMBER ( ) list assigned to the object from memory. Pointer to the KEYMEMBER ( ) list is then initialized to NULL.
≡	TeSetKeyText ( )	This function will set the test assigned to a key with the given index.
≡	TeMsgDefault ( )	This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

	TeTranslateMsg (🔗)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. If the message is valid, the keys in the Text Entry object will be scanned to detect which key was pressed. If True, the corresponding text will be displayed, the 'text' will also be stored in the TeOutput parameter of the object.
--	--------------------	--

**Macros**

Name	Description
TeGetBuffer (🔗)	This macro will return the currently used buffer in the TextEntry object.

**Structures**

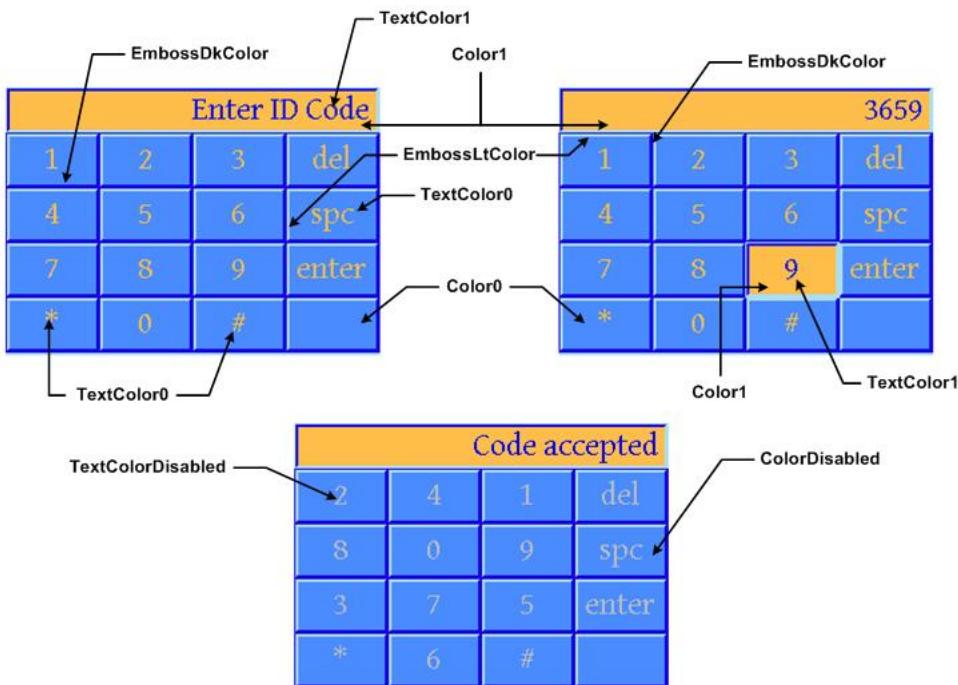
Name	Description
TEXTENTRY (🔗)	Defines the parameters required for a TextEntry Object.
KEYMEMBER (🔗)	Defines the parameters and the strings assigned for each key.

**Description**

Text Entry supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. TE\_MSG\_RELEASE – A key has been released.
2. TE\_MSG\_PRESS – A key is pressed.
3. TE\_MSG\_ADD\_CHAR – A key was released with character assigned.
4. TE\_MSG\_DELETE – A key was released with delete command assigned.
5. TE\_MSG\_SPACE - A key was released with space command assigned.
6. TE\_MSG\_ENTER - A key was released with enter command assigned.

The Text Entry Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



## 7.2.1.23.1 TextEntry States

### Macros

Name	Description
TE_KEY_PRESSED (🔗)	Bit for press state of one of the keys.
TE_DISABLED (🔗)	Bit for disabled state.
TE_ECHO_HIDE (🔗)	Bit to hide the entered characters and instead echo "*" characters to the display.
TE_DRAW (🔗)	Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
TE_HIDE (🔗)	Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
TE_UPDATE_KEY (🔗)	Bit to indicate redraw of a key is needed.
TE_UPDATE_TEXT (🔗)	Bit to indicate redraw of the text displayed is needed.

### Module

Text Entry (🔗)

### Description

List of Text Entry (🔗) bit states.

## 7.2.1.23.1.1 TE\_KEY\_PRESSED Macro

### File

TextEntry.h

### C

```
#define TE_KEY_PRESSED 0x0004 // Bit for press state of one of the keys.
```

### Description

Bit for press state of one of the keys.

## 7.2.1.23.1.2 TE\_DISABLED Macro

### File

TextEntry.h

### C

```
#define TE_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state.
```

### Description

Bit for disabled state.

## 7.2.1.23.1.3 TE\_ECHO\_HIDE Macro

### File

TextEntry.h

### C

```
#define TE_ECHO_HIDE 0x0008 // Bit to hide the entered characters and instead echo "*" characters to the display.
```

### Description

Bit to hide the entered characters and instead echo "\*" characters to the display.

### 7.2.1.23.1.4 TE\_DRAW Macro

**File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_DRAW 0x4000 // Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be redrawn.

### 7.2.1.23.1.5 TE\_HIDE Macro

**File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate object must be removed from screen.

### 7.2.1.23.1.6 TE\_UPDATE\_KEY Macro

**File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_UPDATE_KEY 0x2000 // Bit to indicate redraw of a key is needed.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate redraw of a key is needed.

### 7.2.1.23.1.7 TE\_UPDATE\_TEXT Macro

**File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_UPDATE_TEXT 0x1000 // Bit to indicate redraw of the text displayed is needed.
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate redraw of the text displayed is needed.

## 7.2.1.23.2 Key Command Types

**Macros**

Name	Description
TE_DELETE_COM (☒)	This macro is used to assign a "delete" command on a key.
TE_ENTER_COM (☒)	This macro is used to assign an "enter" (carriage return) command on a key.
TE_SPACE_COM (☒)	This macro is used to assign an insert "space" command on a key.

**Module**

Text Entry (☒)

**Description**

List of available Key command types.

**7.2.1.23.2.1 TE\_DELETE\_COM Macro****File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_DELETE_COM 0x01      // This macro is used to assign a "delete" command on a key.
```

**Description**

This macro is used to assign a "delete" command on a key.

**7.2.1.23.2.2 TE\_ENTER\_COM Macro****File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_ENTER_COM 0x03      // This macro is used to assign an "enter" (carriage return) command on a key.
```

**Description**

This macro is used to assign an "enter" (carriage return) command on a key.

**7.2.1.23.2.3 TE\_SPACE\_COM Macro****File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
#define TE_SPACE_COM 0x02      // This macro is used to assign an insert "space" command on a key.
```

**Description**

This macro is used to assign an insert "space" command on a key.

**7.2.1.23.3 TeCreate Function****File**

TextEntry.h

C

```
TEXTENTRY * TeCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    SHORT horizontalKeys,
    SHORT verticalKeys,
    XCHAR * pText[],
    void * pBuffer,
    WORD bufferLength,
    void * pDisplayFont,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance
SHORT left	Left most position of the object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	state of the widget.
SHORT horizontalKeys	Number of horizontal keys
SHORT verticalKeys	Number of vertical keys
XCHAR * pText[]	array of pointer to the custom "text" assigned by the user.
void * pBuffer	pointer to the buffer that holds the text to be displayed.
WORD bufferLength	length of the buffer assigned by the user.
void * pDisplayFont	pointer to the font image to be used on the editbox
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used. Output Returns the pointer to the object created.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Preconditions**

If the object will use customized keys, the structure CUSTOMKEYS must be populated before calling this function.

**Overview**

This function creates a TEXTENTRY (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

```
TEXTENTRY (█) *TeCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, SHORT
horizontalKeys, SHORT verticalKeys, XCHAR (█) *pText[], void *pBuffer, WORD bufferLength, void *pDisplayFont,
GOL_SCHEME (█) *pScheme)
```

**7.2.1.23.4 TeDraw Function****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
WORD TeDraw(
    void * pObj
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pTe	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object.

This widget will draw the keys using the function GOLPanelDraw (§). The number of keys will depend on the horizontal and vertical parameters given (horizontalKeys\*verticalKeys).

**Syntax**

```
WORD TeDraw(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.23.5 TeGetBuffer Macro

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
#define TeGetBuffer(pTe) (((TEXTENTRY *)pTe)->pTeOutput)
```

**Module**

Text Entry (§)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pTe	pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

It will return a pointer to the buffer used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro will return the currently used buffer in the TextEntry object.

**Syntax**

```
TeGetBuffer(pTe)
```

## 7.2.1.23.6 TeSetBuffer Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
void TeSetBuffer(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    XCHAR * pText,
    WORD MaxSize
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
XCHAR * pText	pointer to the new text buffer to be displayed
maxSize	maximum length of the new buffer to be used.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the buffer used to display text. If the buffer is initialized with a string, the string must be a null terminated string. If the string length is greater than MaxSize, string will be truncated to MaxSize. pText must point to a valid memory location with size equal to MaxSize+1. The +1 is used for the string terminator.

**Syntax**

```
void TeSetBuffer(TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe, XCHAR (■) *pText, WORD MaxSize)
```

## 7.2.1.23.7 TeClearBuffer Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
void TeClearBuffer(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will clear the data in the display. You must set the drawing state bit TE\_UPDATE\_TEXT (■) to update the TEXTENTRY (■) on the screen.

**Syntax**

```
void TeClearBuffer (TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe)
```

**7.2.1.23.8 TeGetKeyCommand Function****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
WORD TeGetKeyCommand(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    WORD index
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
WORD index	index to the key in the link list

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

It will return the command ID currently set for the key. If the given index is not in the list the function returns zero. 0x00 - no command is assigned or the index given does not exist. 0x01 - TE\_DELETE\_COM (■) 0x02 - TE\_SPACE\_COM (■) 0x03 - TE\_ENTER\_COM (■)

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will return the currently used command by a key with the given index.

**Syntax**

```
TeGetKeyCommand(pTe, index)
```

**7.2.1.23.9 TeSetKeyCommand Function****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
BOOL TeSetKeyCommand(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    WORD index,
    WORD command
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
WORD index	index to the key in the link list
WORD command	command assigned for the key

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns TRUE if successful and FALSE if not.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will assign a command (TE\_DELETE\_COM (█), TE\_SPACE\_COM (█) or TE\_ENTER\_COM (█)) to a key with the given index.

**Syntax**

```
void TeSetKeyCommand(TEXTENTRY (█) *pTe,WORD index,WORD command)
```

## 7.2.1.23.10 TeCreateKeyMembers Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
KEYMEMBER * TeCreateKeyMembers (
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    XCHAR * pText[])
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
XCHAR * pText[]	pointer to the text defined by the user

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the newly created KEYMEMBER (█) list. A NULL is returned if the list is not created successfully.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will create the list of KEYMEMBERS that holds the information on each key. The number of keys is determined by the equation (verticalKeys\*horizontalKeys). The object creates the information holder for each key automatically and

assigns each entry in the \*pText[] array with the first entry automatically assigned to the key with an index of 1. The number of entries to \*pText[] must be equal or greater than (verticalKeys\*horizontalKeys). The last key is assigned with an index of (verticalKeys\*horizontalKeys)-1. No checking is performed on the length of \*pText[] entries to match (verticalKeys\*horizontalKeys).

### Syntax

```
KEYMEMBER (■) *TeCreateKeyMembers(TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe,XCHAR (■) *pText[])
```

## 7.2.1.23.11 TeAddChar Function

### File

TextEntry.h

### C

```
void TeAddChar(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe
);
```

### Module

Text Entry (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object

### Side Effects

none.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function will insert a character to the end of the buffer. The character inserted is dependent on the currently pressed key. Drawing states TE\_UPDATE\_TEXT (■) or TE\_DRAW (■) must be set to see the effect of this insertion.

### Syntax

```
void TeAddChar(TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe)
```

## 7.2.1.23.12 TeIsKeyPressed Function

### File

TextEntry.h

### C

```
BOOL TeIsKeyPressed(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    WORD index
);
```

### Module

Text Entry (■)

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
WORD index	index to the key in the link list

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns a TRUE if the key is pressed. FALSE if key is not pressed or the given index does not exist in the list.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will test if a key given by its index in the TextEntry object has been pressed.

**Syntax**

```
BOOL TelsKeyPressed(TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe, WORD index)
```

## 7.2.1.23.13 TeSpaceChar Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
void TeSpaceChar(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (■)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will insert a space character to the end of the buffer. Drawing states TE\_UPDATE\_TEXT (■) or TE\_DRAW (■) must be set to see the effect of this insertion.

**Syntax**

```
void TeSpaceChar(TEXTENTRY (■) *pTe)
```

## 7.2.1.23.14 TeDelKeyMembers Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
void TeDelKeyMembers(
    void * pObj
```

) ;

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pTe	pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

none.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will delete the KEYMEMBER (█) list assigned to the object from memory. Pointer to the KEYMEMBER (█) list is then initialized to NULL.

**Syntax**

```
void TeDelKeyMembers(void *pObj)
```

## 7.2.1.23.15 TeSetKeyText Function

**File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
BOOL TeSetKeyText(
    TEXTENTRY * pTe,
    WORD index,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
TEXTENTRY * pTe	pointer to the object
WORD index	index to the key in the link list
XCHAR * pText	pointer to the new string to be used

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns TRUE if successful and FALSE if not.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function will set the test assigned to a key with the given index.

**Syntax**

```
TeSetKeyText(TEXTENTRY ( ) *pTe, WORD index, XCHAR ( ) *pText)
```

**7.2.1.23.16 TeMsgDefault Function****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
void TeMsgDefault(
    WORD translatedMsg,
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
) ;
```

**Module**

Text Entry ( )

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD translatedMsg	The translated message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	The pointer to the GOL message.
pTe	The pointer to the object whose state will be modified.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See BtnTranslateMsg ( )() example.

**Overview**

This function performs the actual state change based on the translated message given. The following state changes are supported:

Translated Message	Input Source	Set/Clear State Bit	Description
TE_MSG_ADD_CHAR	Touch Screen,	Set TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ), TE_UPDATE_KEY ( ), Clear TE_KEY_PRESSED ( )	Add a character in the buffer and update the text displayed.
TE_MSG_SPACE	Touch Screen,	Set TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ), TE_UPDATE_KEY ( ), Clear TE_KEY_PRESSED ( )	Insert a space character in the buffer and update the text displayed.
TE_MSG_DELETE	Touch Screen,	Set TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ), TE_UPDATE_KEY ( ), Clear TE_KEY_PRESSED ( )	Delete the most recent character in the buffer and update the text displayed.
TE_MSG_ENTER	Touch Screen,	Set TE_UPDATE_TEXT ( ), TE_UPDATE_KEY ( ),	User can define the use of this event in the message callback. Object will just update the key.

		Clear TE_KEY_PRESSED (█)	
TE_MSG_RELEASED	Touch Screen,	Clear TE_KEY_PRESSED (█)	A Key in the object will be redrawn in the unpressed state.
		Set Te_UPDATE_KEY	
TE_MSG_PRESSED	Touch Screen,	Set TE_KEY_PRESSED (█) TE_UPDATE_KEY (█)	A Key in the object will be redrawn in the pressed state.

**Syntax**

```
TeMsgDefault(WORD translatedMsg, void *pObj, GOL_MSG (█)* pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.23.17 TeTranslateMsg Function****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
WORD TeTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Text Entry (█)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pTe	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none.

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- TE\_MSG\_PRESS – A key is pressed
- TE\_MSG\_RELEASED - A key was released (generic for keys with no commands or characters assigned)
- TE\_MSG\_ADD\_CHAR – A key was released with character assigned
- TE\_MSG\_DELETE – A key was released with delete command assigned
- TE\_MSG\_SPACE - A key was released with space command assigned
- TE\_MSG\_ENTER - A key was released with enter command assigned
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Text Entry is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. If the message is valid, the keys in the Text Entry object will be scanned to detect which key was pressed. If True, the corresponding text will be displayed, the 'text' will also be stored in the TeOutput parameter of the object.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
TE_MSG_PRESS	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is unpressed.
TE_MSG_RELEASED	Touch Screen	EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls outside the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is pressed.
TE_MSG_RELEASED	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls does not falls inside any of the faces of the keys of the object.
TE_MSG_ADD_CHAR	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is unpressed and the key is associated with no commands.
TE_MSG_DELETE	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is unpressed and the key is associated with delete command.
TE_MSG_SPACE	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is unpressed and the key is associated with space command.
TE_MSG_ENTER	Touch Screen	EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If the event occurs and the x,y position falls in the face of one of the keys of the object while the key is unpressed and the key is associated with enter command.
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

**Syntax**

```
WORD TeTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

**7.2.1.23.18 TEXTENTRY Structure****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT horizontalKeys;
    SHORT verticalKeys;
    XCHAR * pTeOutput;
    WORD CurrentLength;
    WORD outputLenMax;
    KEYMEMBER * pActiveKey;
    KEYMEMBER * pHeadOfList;
    void * pDisplayFont;
} TEXTENTRY;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
SHORT horizontalKeys;	Number of horizontal keys
SHORT verticalKeys;	Number of vertical keys
XCHAR * pTeOutput;	Pointer to the buffer assigned by the user which holds the text shown in the editbox.
WORD CurrentLength;	Current length of the string in the buffer. The maximum value of this is equal to outputLenMax.
WORD outputLenMax;	Maximum expected length of output buffer pTeOutput
KEYMEMBER * pActiveKey;	Pointer to the active key KEYMEMBER (■). This is only used by the Widget. User must not change

<code>KEYMEMBER * pHedOfList;</code>	Pointer to head of the list
<code>void * pDisplayFont;</code>	Pointer to the font used in displaying the text.

**Module**[Text Entry \(图\)](#)**Overview**

Defines the parameters required for a TextEntry Object.

**7.2.1.23.19 KEYMEMBER Structure****File**

TextEntry.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    SHORT left;
    SHORT top;
    SHORT right;
    SHORT bottom;
    SHORT index;
    WORD state;
    BOOL update;
    WORD command;
    XCHAR * pKeyName;
    SHORT textWidth;
    SHORT textHeight;
    void * pNextKey;
} KEYMEMBER;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
<code>SHORT left;</code>	Left position of the key
<code>SHORT top;</code>	Top position of the key
<code>SHORT right;</code>	Right position of the key
<code>SHORT bottom;</code>	Bottom position of the key
<code>SHORT index;</code>	Index of the key in the list
<code>WORD state;</code>	State of the key. Either Pressed (TE_KEY_PRESSED (图)) or Released (0)
<code>BOOL update;</code>	flag to indicate key is to be redrawn with the current state
<code>WORD command;</code>	Command of the key. Either TE_DELETE_COM (图), TE_SPACE_COM (图) or TE_ENTER_COM (图).
<code>XCHAR * pKeyName;</code>	Pointer to the custom text assigned to the key. This is displayed over the face of the key.
<code>SHORT textWidth;</code>	Computed text width, done at creation. Used to predict size and position of text on the key face.
<code>SHORT textHeight;</code>	Computed text height, done at creation. Used to predict size and position of text on the key face.
<code>void * pNextKey;</code>	Pointer to the next key parameters.

**Module**[Text Entry \(图\)](#)**Overview**

Defines the parameters and the strings assigned for each key.

## 7.2.1.24 Window

Window is an Object that can be used to encapsulate objects into a group. Unlike the Group Box Object, the Window Object has additional features such as displaying an icon or a small bitmap on its Title Bar (█). It also has additional controls for both Title Bar (█) and Client Area.

### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	WndCreate (█)	This function creates a WINDOW (█) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.
≡	WndDraw (█)	This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set. When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.
≡	WndSetText (█)	This function sets the string used for the title bar.
≡	WndTranslateMsg (█)	This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

### Macros

Name	Description
WndGetText (█)	This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the title bar.

### Structures

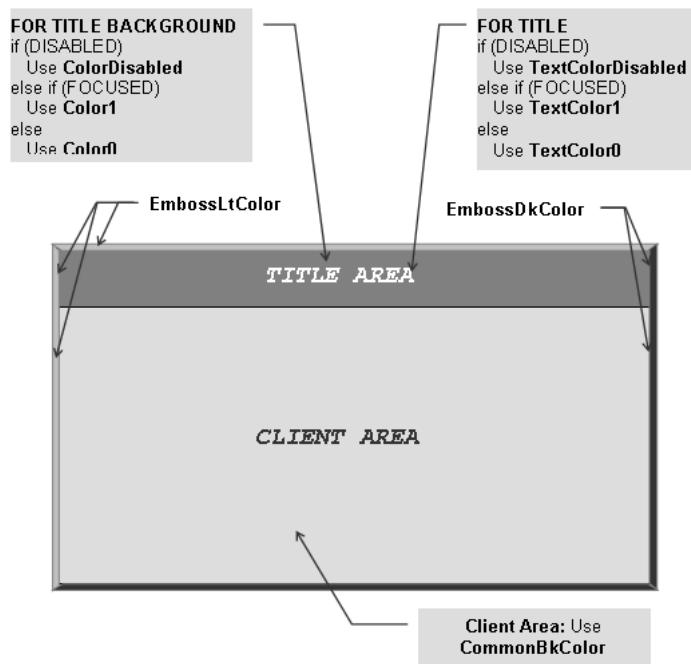
Name	Description
WINDOW (█)	The structure contains data for the window

### Description

Window supports only Touchscreen inputs, replying to their events with the following messages:

1. WND\_MSG\_TITLE – Title area is selected.
2. WND\_MSG\_CLIENT – Client area is selected.

The Window Object is rendered using the assigned style scheme. The following figure illustrates the color assignments.



**CommonBkColor** – used to hide the window from the screen.

### 7.2.1.24.1 Window States

#### Macros

Name	Description
WND_DISABLED (█)	Bit for disabled state
WND_DRAW (█)	Bits to indicate whole window must be redrawn
WND_DRAW_CLIENT (█)	Bit to indicate client area must be redrawn
WND_DRAW_TITLE (█)	Bit to indicate title area must be redrawn
WND_FOCUSED (█)	Bit for focus state
WND_HIDE (█)	Bit to indicate window must be removed from screen
WND_TITLECENTER (█)	Bit to center the text on the Title Area

#### Module

Window (█)

#### Description

List of Window (█) bit states.

### 7.2.1.24.1.1 WND\_DISABLED Macro

#### File

Window.h

#### C

```
#define WND_DISABLED 0x0002 // Bit for disabled state
```

#### Description

Bit for disabled state

### 7.2.1.24.1.2 WND\_DRAW Macro

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WND_DRAW 0x6000 // Bits to indicate whole window must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bits to indicate whole window must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.24.1.3 WND\_DRAW\_CLIENT Macro

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WND_DRAW_CLIENT 0x4000 // Bit to indicate client area must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate client area must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.24.1.4 WND\_DRAW\_TITLE Macro

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WND_DRAW_TITLE 0x2000 // Bit to indicate title area must be redrawn
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate title area must be redrawn

### 7.2.1.24.1.5 WND\_FOCUSED Macro

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WND_FOCUSED 0x0001 // Bit for focus state
```

**Description**

Bit for focus state

### 7.2.1.24.1.6 WND\_HIDE Macro

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WND_HIDE 0x8000 // Bit to indicate window must be removed from screen
```

**Description**

Bit to indicate window must be removed from screen

### 7.2.1.24.1.7 WND\_TITLECENTER Macro

#### File

Window.h

#### C

```
#define WND_TITLECENTER 0x0004 // Bit to center the text on the Title Area
```

#### Description

Bit to center the text on the Title Area

### 7.2.1.24.2 WndCreate Function

#### File

Window.h

#### C

```
WINDOW * WndCreate(
    WORD ID,
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    WORD state,
    void * pBitmap,
    XCHAR * pText,
    GOL_SCHEME * pScheme
);
```

#### Module

Window (■)

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	Unique user defined ID for the object instance.
SHORT left	Left most position of the Object.
SHORT top	Top most position of the Object.
SHORT right	Right most position of the Object.
SHORT bottom	Bottom most position of the object.
WORD state	Sets the initial state of the object.
void * pBitmap	Pointer to the bitmap used in the title bar.
XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text used as a title of the window.
GOL_SCHEME * pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme used.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object created

#### Preconditions

none

#### Example

```
WINDOW *pWindow;
pWindow = WndCreate(ID_WINDOW1, // ID
                    0,0,GetMaxX(),GetMaxY(), // whole screen dimension
                    WND_DRAW, // set state to draw all
```

```

(char*)myIcon,           // icon
"Place Title Here.",    // text
NULL);                  // use default GOL scheme

if (pWindow == NULL)
    return 0;
WndDraw(pWindow);
return 1;

```

**Overview**

This function creates a WINDOW ([\[?\]](#)) object with the parameters given. It automatically attaches the new object into a global linked list of objects and returns the address of the object.

**Syntax**

WINDOW ([\[?\]](#)) \*WndCreate(WORD ID, SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, WORD state, void\* pBitmap, XCHAR ([\[?\]](#))\* pText, GOL\_SCHEME ([\[?\]](#)) \*pScheme)

**7.2.1.24.3 WndDraw Function****File**

Window.h

**C**

```

WORD WndDraw(
    void * pObj
);

```

**Module**

Window ([\[?\]](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pW	Pointer to the object to be rendered.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the drawing

- 1 - If the rendering was completed and
- 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

Next call to the function will resume the rendering on the pending drawing state.

**Preconditions**

Object must be created before this function is called.

**Example**

See WndCreate ([\[?\]](#))() example.

**Overview**

This function renders the object on the screen using the current parameter settings. Location of the object is determined by the left, top, right and bottom parameters. The colors used are dependent on the state of the object. The font used is determined by the style scheme set.

When rendering objects of the same type, each object must be rendered completely before the rendering of the next object is started. This is to avoid incomplete object rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD WndDraw(void *pObj)
```

**7.2.1.24.4 WndGetText Macro****File**

Window.h

**C**

```
#define WndGetText(pW) pW->pText
```

**Module**

Window ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pW	Pointer to the object

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns pointer to the text string being used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WINDOW *pWindow;
XCHAR textUsed = "USE THIS!";

if (WndGetText(pWindow) == NULL)
    WndSetText(&textUsed);
```

**Overview**

This macro returns the address of the current text string used for the title bar.

**Syntax**

```
WndGetText(pW)
```

**7.2.1.24.5 WndSetText Function****File**

Window.h

**C**

```
void WndSetText(
    WINDOW * pW,
    XCHAR * pText
);
```

**Module**

Window ([🔗](#))

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WINDOW * pW	The pointer to the object whose text will be modified

XCHAR * pText	Pointer to the text that will be used
---------------	---------------------------------------

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See WndGetText (🔗)() example.

**Overview**

This function sets the string used for the title bar.

**Syntax**

```
WndSetText(WINDOW (🔗) *pW, XCHAR (🔗) *pText)
```

## 7.2.1.24.6 WndTranslateMsg Function

**File**

Window.h

**C**

```
WORD WndTranslateMsg(
    void * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Module**

Window (🔗)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the message struct containing the message from the user interface.
pW	The pointer to the object where the message will be evaluated to check if the message will affect the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the translated message depending on the received GOL message:

- WND\_MSG\_TITLE – Title area is selected
- WND\_MSG\_CLIENT – Client area is selected
- OBJ\_MSG\_INVALID – Window (🔗) is not affected

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

Usage is similar to BtnTranslateMsg (🔗)() example.

**Overview**

This function evaluates the message from a user if the message will affect the object or not. The table below enumerates the

translated messages for each event of the touch screen inputs.

Translated Message	Input Source	Events	Description
WND_MSG_TITLE	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the TITLE area of the window
WND_MSG_CLIENT	Touch Screen	EVENT_PRESS, EVENT_RELEASE, EVENT_MOVE	If events occurs and the x,y position falls in the CLIENT area of the window
OBJ_MSG_INVALID	Any	Any	If the message did not affect the object.

#### Syntax

```
WORD WndTranslateMsg(void *pObj, GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

### 7.2.1.24.7 WINDOW Structure

#### File

Window.h

#### C

```
typedef struct {
    OBJ_HEADER hdr;
    SHORT textHeight;
    XCHAR * pText;
    void * pBitmap;
} WINDOW;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
OBJ_HEADER hdr;	Generic header for all Objects (see OBJ_HEADER (■)).
SHORT textHeight;	Pre-computed text height
XCHAR * pText;	Pointer to the title text
void * pBitmap;	Pointer to the bitmap for the title bar

#### Module

Window (■)

#### Overview

The structure contains data for the window

## 7.2.2 Object States

Objects rendered on the display are based on their current Property States and the Drawing States.

#### Macros

Name	Description
GetState (■)	This macro retrieves the current value of the state bits of an object. It is possible to get several state bits.
ClrState (■)	This macro clear the state bits of an object. Object must be redrawn to display the changes. It is possible to clear several state bits with this macro.

SetState (█)	This macro sets the state bits of an object. Object must be redrawn to display the changes. It is possible to set several state bits with this macro.
--------------	---

### Description

The GOL objects follow two types of states, the Property States and the Drawing States. Property States defines action and appearance of objects. Drawing States on the other hand indicate if the object needs to be hidden, partially redrawn, or fully redrawn in the display. To store the states, the field state defined in OBJ\_HEADER (█) structure is used. Six most significant bits are allocated for Drawing States and the rest is allocated for the Property States. Some common Property States and Drawing States are shown in the following table.

State	Type	Bit Location	Description
OBJ_FOCUSED	P	0x0001	Object is in the focused state. This is usually used to show selection of the object. Not all objects have this feature.
OBJ_DISABLED	P	0x0002	Object is disabled and will ignore all messages.
OBJ_DRAW_FOCUS	D	0x2000	Focus for the object should be redrawn.
OBJ_DRAW	D	0x4000	Object should be redrawn completely.
OBJ_HIDE	D	0x8000	Object will be hidden by filling the area occupied by the object with the common background color. This has the highest priority over all Drawing States. When an object is set to be hidden, all other drawing states are overridden.

Where:

- OBJ – represent the prefix assigned to a GOL object.
- P – Property states, D – Drawing states

Individual Object drawing function (e.g. BtnDraw (█)(), SldDraw (█)(), etc...) does not reset the draw states instead use GOLDraw (█)() to automatically reset and manage the draw states. If the call to individual drawing function cannot be avoided, draw states must be reset manually after the drawing functions returns a 1.

## 7.2.2.1 Common Object States

### Macros

Name	Description
FOCUSSED (█)	Focus state bit.
DISABLED (█)	Disabled state bit.
HIDE (█)	Object hide state bit. Object will be hidden from the screen by drawing over it the common background color.
DRAW (█)	Object redraw state bit. The whole Object must be redrawn.
DRAW_FOCUS (█)	Focus redraw state bit. The focus rectangle must be redrawn.
DRAW_UPDATE (█)	Partial Object redraw state bit. A part or parts of the Object must be redrawn to show updated state.

### Description

List of common Object bit states.

## 7.2.2.1.1 FOCUSED Macro

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
#define FOCUSED 0x0001
```

**Description**

Focus state bit.

### 7.2.2.1.2 DISABLED Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define DISABLED 0x0002
```

**Description**

Disabled state bit.

### 7.2.2.1.3 HIDE Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define HIDE 0x8000
```

**Description**

Object hide state bit. Object will be hidden from the screen by drawing over it the common background color.

### 7.2.2.1.4 DRAW Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define DRAW 0x7C00
```

**Description**

Object redraw state bit. The whole Object must be redrawn.

### 7.2.2.1.5 DRAW\_FOCUS Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define DRAW_FOCUS 0x2000
```

**Description**

Focus redraw state bit. The focus rectangle must be redrawn.

### 7.2.2.1.6 DRAW\_UPDATE Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define DRAW_UPDATE 0x3C00
```

**Description**

Partial Object redraw state bit. A part or parts of the Object must be redrawn to show updated state.

## 7.2.2.2 GetState Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GetState(pObj, stateBits) (((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state & (stateBits))
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.
stateBits	Defines which state bits are requested. Please refer to specific objects for object state bits definition for details

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Macro returns a non-zero if any bit in the stateBits mask is set.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
#define BTN_HIDE 0x8000
BUTTON *pB;
// pB is created and initialized
// do something here to set state

// Hide the button (remove from screen)
if (GetState(pB,BTN_HIDE)) {
    SetColor(pB->pGolScheme->CommonBkColor);
    Bar(pB->left,pB->top,pB->right,pB->bottom);

}
```

**Overview**

This macro retrieves the current value of the state bits of an object. It is possible to get several state bits.

**Syntax**

GetState(pObj, stateBits)

## 7.2.2.3 ClrState Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define ClrState(pObj, stateBits) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state &= (~(stateBits))
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.
stateBits	Defines which state bits are to be cleared. Please refer to specific objects for object state bits definition for details

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See example for SetState (■)().

**Overview**

This macro clear the state bits of an object. Object must be redrawn to display the changes. It is possible to clear several state bits with this macro.

**Syntax**

ClrState(pObj, stateBits)

## 7.2.2.4 SetState Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define SetState(pObj, stateBits) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state |= (stateBits)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.
stateBits	Defines which state bits are to be set. Please refer to specific objects for object state bits definition for details

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void BtnMsgDefault(WORD msg, BUTTON* pB){
    switch(msg){
        case BTN_MSG_PRESSED:
            // set pressed and redraw
            SetState(pB, BTN_PRESSED|BTN_DRAW);
            break;
        case BTN_MSG_RELEASED:
            ClrState(pB, BTN_PRESSED);           // reset pressed
    }
}
```

```

        SetState(pB, BTN_DRAW);           // redraw
        break;
    }
}

```

## Overview

This macro sets the state bits of an object. Object must be redrawn to display the changes. It is possible to set several state bits with this macro.

## Syntax

```
SetState(pObj, stateBits)
```

## 7.2.3 Object Management

### Functions

	Name	Description
💡	GOLAddObject (🔗)	This function adds an object to the tail of the active list pointed to by _pGolObjects (🔗). The new list tail is set to point to NULL.
💡	GOLFFindObject (🔗)	This function finds an object in the active list pointed to by _pGolObjects (🔗) using the given object ID.
💡	GOLRedrawRec (🔗)	This function marks all objects in the active list intersected by the given rectangular area to be redrawn.
💡	GOLDraw (🔗)	This function loops through the active list and redraws objects that need to be redrawn. Partial redrawing or full redraw is performed depending on the drawing states of the objects. GOLDrawCallback (🔗)() function is called by GOLDraw() when drawing of objects in the active list is completed.
💡	GOLDrawCallback (🔗)	GOLDrawCallback() function MUST BE implemented by the user. This is called inside the GOLDraw (🔗)() function when the drawing of objects in the active list is completed. User drawing must be done here. Drawing color, line type, clipping region, graphic cursor position and current font will not be changed by GOL if this function returns a zero. To pass drawing control to GOL this function must return a non-zero value. If GOL messaging is not using the active link list, it is safe to modify the list here.
💡	GOLFree (🔗)	This function frees all the memory used by objects in the active list and initializes _pGolObjects (🔗) pointer to NULL to start a new empty list. This function must be called only inside the GOLDrawCallback (🔗)() function when using GOLDraw (🔗)() and GOLMsg (🔗)() functions. This requirement assures that primitive rendering settings are not altered by the rendering state machines of the objects.
💡	GOLDeleteObject (🔗)	Deletes an object to the linked list objects for the current screen.
💡	GOLDeleteObjectByID (🔗)	Deletes an object in the current active linked list of objects using the ID parameter of the object.
💡	GOLSetFocus (🔗)	This function sets the keyboard input focus to the object. If the object cannot accept keyboard messages focus will not be changed. This function resets FOCUSED (🔗) state for the object was in focus previously, set FOCUSED (🔗) state for the required object and marks the objects to be redrawn.
💡	GOLInit (🔗)	This function initializes the graphics library and creates a default style scheme with default settings referenced by the global scheme pointer. GOLInit() function must be called before GOL functions can be used. It is not necessary to call GraphInit() function if this function is used.
💡	GOLCanBeFocused (🔗)	This function returns non-zero if the object can be focused. Only button, check box, radio button, slider, edit box, list box, scroll bar can accept focus. If the object is disabled it cannot be set to focused state.
💡	GOLGetFocusNext (🔗)	This function returns the pointer to the next object in the active linked list which is able to receive keyboard input.

	GOLGetFocusPrev ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function returns the pointer to the previous object in the active linked list which is able to receive keyboard input.
	GOLPanelDrawTsk ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function draws a panel on the screen with parameters set by GOLPanelDraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()) macro. This function must be called repeatedly (depending on the return value) for a successful rendering of the panel.
	GOLTwoTonePanelDrawTsk ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function draws a two tone panel on the screen with parameters set by GOLPanelDraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()) macro. This function must be called repeatedly (depending on the return value) for a successful rendering of the panel.

**Macros**

Name	Description
GOLRedraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro sets the object to be redrawn. For the redraw to be effective, the object must be in the current active list. If not, the redraw action will not be performed until the list where the object is currently inserted will be set to be the active list.
GOLDrawComplete ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro resets the drawing states of the object (6 MSBits of the object's state).
GetObjType ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the object type.
GetObjID ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the object ID.
GetObjNext ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the next object after the specified object.
GOLNewList ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro starts a new linked list of objects and resets the keyboard focus to none. This macro assigns the current active list _pGolObjects ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) and current receiving keyboard input _pObjectFocused ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) object pointers to NULL. Any keyboard inputs at this point will be ignored. Previous active list must be saved in another pointer if to be referenced later. If not needed anymore memory used by that list should be freed by GOLFRee ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()) function.
GOLGetList ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro gets the current active list.
GOLSetList ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro sets the given object list as the active list and resets the keyboard focus to none. This macro assigns the receiving keyboard input object _pObjectFocused ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) pointer to NULL. If the new active list has an object's state set to focus, the _pObjectFocused ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) pointer must be set to this object or the object's state must be change to unfocused. This is to avoid two objects displaying a focused state when only one object in the active list must be set to a focused state at anytime.
IsObjUpdated ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro tests if the object is pending to be redrawn. This is done by testing the 6 MSBits of object's state to detect if the object must be redrawn.
GOLGetFocus ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the pointer to the current object receiving keyboard input.
GOLPanelDraw ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro sets the parameters to draw a panel. Panel is not an object. It will not be added to the active list. Use GOLPanelDrawTsk ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()) to display the panel on the screen. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the button: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Panel width is determined by right - left.</li> <li>2. Panel height is determined by top - bottom.</li> <li>3. Panel radius - specifies if the panel will have a rounded edge. If zero then the panel will have sharp (cornered) edge.</li> <li>4. If <math>2 \times \text{radius} = \text{height} = \text{width}</math>, the panel is circular.</li> </ol>

**Description**

This section describes the API functions and macros that are used to create, maintain and render individual and list of objects.

## 7.2.3.1 GOLAddObject Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
void GOLAddObject(
    OBJ_HEADER * object
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object to be added on the current active list.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
void MoveObject(OBJ_HEADER *pSrcList, OBJ_HEADER *pDstList,
    OBJ_HEADER *pObjtoMove) {
    OBJ_HEADER *pTemp = pSrcList;

    if(pTemp != pObjtoMove) {
        while(pTemp->pNxtObj != pObjtoMove)
            pTemp = pTemp->pNxtObj;
    }

    pTemp->pNxtObj = pObjtoMove ->pNxt; // remove object from list
    GOLSetList(pDstList); // destination as active list
    GOLAddObject(pObjtoMove); // add object to active list
}
```

### Overview

This function adds an object to the tail of the active list pointed to by `_pGolObjects` ( ). The new list tail is set to point to NULL.

### Syntax

```
void GOLAddObject(OBJ_HEADER (*) object)
```

## 7.2.3.2 GOLFFindObject Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
OBJ_HEADER * GOLFFindObject(
    WORD ID
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD ID	User assigned value set during the creation of the object.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Pointer to the object with the given ID.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void CopyObject(OBJ_HEADER *pSrcList, OBJ_HEADER *pDstList, WORD ID)
{
    OBJ_HEADER *pTemp;

    pTemp = GOLFFindObject(ID);                                // find the object
    if (pTemp != NULL) {
        GOLSetList(pDstList);                                // destination as active list
        GOLAddObject(pObj);                                // add object to active list
    }
}
```

**Overview**

This function finds an object in the active list pointed to by `_pGolObjects` (■) using the given object ID.

**Syntax**

```
OBJ_HEADER (■)* GOLFFindObject(WORD ID)
```

### 7.2.3.3 GOLRedraw Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLRedraw(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state |= 0x7c00;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object to be redrawn.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void GOLRedrawRec(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom) {
    // set all objects encompassed by the rectangle to be redrawn
    OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj;

    pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();
    while (pCurrentObj != NULL) {
```

```

if (
    ((pCurrentObj->left >= left) && (pCurrentObj->left <= right)) ||
    ((pCurrentObj->right >= left) && (pCurrentObj->right <= right)) ||
    ((pCurrentObj->top >= top) && (pCurrentObj->top <= bottom)) ||
    ((pCurrentObj->bottom >= top) && (pCurrentObj->bottom <= bottom))) {
    GOLRedraw(pCurrentObj);
}
pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
}//end of while
}

```

**Overview**

This macro sets the object to be redrawn. For the redraw to be effective, the object must be in the current active list. If not, the redraw action will not be performed until the list where the object is currently inserted will be set to be the active list.

**Syntax**

GOLRedraw(pObj)

## 7.2.3.4 GOLRedrawRec Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```

void GOLRedrawRec(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom
);

```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	Defines the left most border of the rectangle area.
SHORT top	Defines the top most border of the rectangle area.
SHORT right	Defines the right most border of the rectangle area.
SHORT bottom	Defines the bottom most border of the rectangle area.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

OBJ_HEADER *pTemp;
OBJ_HEADER *pAllObjects;

// assume *pAllObjects points to a list of all existing objects
// created and initialized

// mark all objects inside the rectangle to be redrawn
GOLRedrawRec(10,10,100,100);

pTemp = pAllObjects;
GOLStartNewList();                                // reset active list
while(pTemp->pNxtObj != NULL) {                  // add only objects to be
    if (pTemp->state&0x7C00)

```

```

        GOLAddObject(pTemp);           // redrawn to the active list
        pTemp = pTemp->pNxtObj;
    }
GOLDraw();                         // redraw active list

```

**Overview**

This function marks all objects in the active list intersected by the given rectangular area to be redrawn.

**Syntax**

```
void GOLRedrawRec(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom)
```

## 7.2.3.5 GOLDraw Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
WORD GOLDraw();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Non-zero if the active link list drawing is completed.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

// Assume objects are created & states are set to draw objects
while(1){
    if(GOLDraw()){           // parse active list and redraw objects that needs to be
redrawn

        // here GOL drawing is completed
        // it is safe to modify objects states and linked list

        TouchGetMsg(&msg);      // evaluate messages from touch screen device

        GOLMsg(&msg);          // evaluate each object is affected by the message
    }
}

```

**Overview**

This function loops through the active list and redraws objects that need to be redrawn. Partial redrawing or full redraw is performed depending on the drawing states of the objects. GOLDrawCallback (图)() function is called by GOLDraw() when drawing of objects in the active list is completed.

**Syntax**

```
WORD GOLDraw()
```

## 7.2.3.6 GOLDrawComplete Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLDrawComplete(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state &= 0x03ff
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```

// This function should be called again whenever an incomplete
// rendering (done = 0) of an object occurs.
// internal states in the BtnDraw() or WndDraw() should pickup
// on the state where it left off to continue rendering.
void GOLDraw() {
    static OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj = NULL;
    SHORT done;

    if(pCurrentObj == NULL) {
        if(GOLDrawCallback()) {
            // If it's last object jump to head
            pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();
        } else {
            return;
        }
    }
    done = 0;

    while(pCurrentObj != NULL) {
        if(IsObjUpdated(pCurrentObj)) {
            done = pCurrentObj->draw(pCurrentObj);

            if(done){
                GOLDrawComplete(pCurrentObj);
            }else{
                return;
            }
        }
        pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
    }
}

```

**Overview**

This macro resets the drawing states of the object (6 MSBits of the object's state).

**Syntax**

```
GOLDrawComplete(pObj)
```

## 7.2.3.7 GOLDrawCallback Function

**File**

```
GOL.h
```

**C**

```
WORD GOLDrawCallback();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Return a one if GOLDraw (█)() will have drawing control on the active list. Return a zero if user wants to keep the drawing control.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
#define SIG_STATE_SET    0
#define SIG_STATE_DRAW   1
WORD GOLDrawCallback(){
    static BYTE state = SIG_STATE_SET;
    if(state == SIG_STATE_SET){
        // Draw the button with disabled colors
        GOLPanelDraw(SIG_PANEL_LEFT,SIG_PANEL_TOP,
                     SIG_PANEL_RIGHT,SIG_PANEL_BOTTOM, 0,
                     WHITE, altScheme->EmbossLtColor,
                     altScheme->EmbossDkColor,
                     NULL, GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE);

        state = SIG_STATE_DRAW;
    }

    if( !GOLPanelDrawTsk()){
        // do not return drawing control to GOL
        // drawing is not complete
        return 0;
    }else{
        state = SIG_STATE_SET;
        // return drawing control to GOL, drawing is complete
        return 1;
    }
}
```

**Overview**

GOLDrawCallback() function MUST BE implemented by the user. This is called inside the GOLDraw (█)() function when the drawing of objects in the active list is completed. User drawing must be done here. Drawing color, line type, clipping region, graphic cursor position and current font will not be changed by GOL if this function returns a zero. To pass drawing control to GOL this function must return a non-zero value. If GOL messaging is not using the active link list, it is safe to modify the list here.

**Syntax**

WORD GOLDrawCallback()

## 7.2.3.8 GOLFfree Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
void GOLFfree();
```

**Side Effects**

All objects in the active list are deleted from memory.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void DeletePage(OBJ_HEADER *pPage) {
    OBJ_HEADER *pTemp;

    // assuming pPage is different from the current active list
    pTemp = GOLGetList();           // save the active list
    GOLSetList(pPage);             // set list as active list
    GolFree();                     // pPage objects are deleted

    GOLSetList(pTemp);            // restore the active list
}
```

**Overview**

This function frees all the memory used by objects in the active list and initializes `_pGolObjects` (■) pointer to NULL to start a new empty list. This function must be called only inside the `GOLDrawCallback` (■)()function when using `GOLDraw` (■)() and `GOLMsg` (■)() functions. This requirement assures that primitive rendering settings are not altered by the rendering state machines of the objects.

**Syntax**

```
void GolFree()
```

## 7.2.3.9 GetObjType Macro

**File**

`GOL.h`

**C**

```
#define GetObjType(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->type
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
<code>pObj</code>	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the `OBJ_TYPE` of the object.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the object type.

**Syntax**

```
GetObjType(pObj)
```

## 7.2.3.10 GetObjID Macro

**File**

`GOL.h`

**C**

```
#define GetObjID(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->ID
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the ID of the object.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
void UseOfGetObjID(OBJ_HEADER *pObj) {
    WORD id;
    switch(id = GetObjID(pObj)) {
        case ID_WINDOW1:
            // do something
        case ID_WINDOW2:
            // do something else
        case ID_WINDOW3:
            // do something else
        default:
            // do something else
    }
}
```

**Overview**

This macro returns the object ID.

**Syntax**

GetObjID(pObj)

## 7.2.3.11 GetObjNext Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GetObjNext(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->pNxtObj
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer of the next object.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
// This is the same example for the GetObjType() macro
// We just replaced one line
void RedrawButtons(void) {
```

```

OBJ_HEADER *pCurr;

pCurr = GOLGetList();           // get active list
while(pCurr->pNxtObj != NULL) {
    if (GetObjType(pCurr) == BUTTON)
        pCurr->state = BTN_DRAW; // set button to be redrawn
    pCurr = GetObjNext(pCurr); // Use of GetObjNext() macro
    // replaces the old line
}
GolDraw();                     // redraw all buttons in the
                                // active list
}

```

**Overview**

This macro returns the next object after the specified object.

**Syntax**

```
GetObjNext(pObj)
```

## 7.2.3.12 GOLDeleteObject Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
BOOL GOLDeleteObject(
    OBJ_HEADER * object
);
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

deletes an object to the linked list objects for the current screen.

**Syntax**

```
BOOL GOLDeleteObject(OBJ_HEADER (■) * object)
```

## 7.2.3.13 GOLDeleteObjectByID Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
BOOL GOLDeleteObjectByID(
    WORD ID
);
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Deletes an object in the current active linked list of objects using the ID parameter of the object.

**Syntax**

```
BOOL GOLDeleteObjectByID(WORD ID)
```

## 7.2.3.14 GOLNewList Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLNewList \
    _pGolObjects = NULL; \
    _pObjectFocused = NULL
```

**Side Effects**

This macro sets the focused object pointer (`_pObjectFocused`) to NULL.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
OBJ_HEADER *pSave;

pSave = GOLGetList();           // save current list
GOLNewList();                  // start the new list
                               // current list is now NULL

// assume that objects are already created
// you can now add objects to the new list
GOLAddObject(pButton);
GOLAddObject(pWindow);
GOLAddObject(pSlider);
```

**Overview**

This macro starts a new linked list of objects and resets the keyboard focus to none. This macro assigns the current active list `_pGolObjects` and current receiving keyboard input `_pObjectFocused` object pointers to NULL. Any keyboard inputs at this point will be ignored. Previous active list must be saved in another pointer if to be referenced later. If not needed anymore memory used by that list should be freed by `GOLFRelease()` function.

**Syntax**

```
void GOLNewList()
```

## 7.2.3.15 GOLGetList Macro

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
#define GOLGetList _pGolObjects
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the current active list.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

See GOLNewList (■)() example.

### Overview

This macro gets the current active list.

### Syntax

```
GOLGetList()
```

## 7.2.3.16 GOLSetList Macro

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
#define GOLSetList(objsList) \
    _pGolObjects = objsList; \
    _pObjectFocused = NULL;
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
objsList	The pointer to the new active list.

### Side Effects

This macro sets the focused object pointer (\_pObjectFocused (■)) to NULL. Previous active list should be saved if needed to be referenced later. If not, use GOLFRelease (■)() function to free the memory used by the objects before calling GOLSetList().

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
OBJ_HEADER *pSave;
pSave = GOLGetList();           // save current list
GOLNewList();                  // start the new list
                                // current list is now NULL
```

```
// you can now add objects to the current list
// assume that objects are already created
GOLAddObject(pButton);
GOLAddObject(pWindow);
GOLAddObject(pSlider);

// do something here on the new list
// return the old list
GOLSetList(pSave);
```

**Overview**

This macro sets the given object list as the active list and resets the keyboard focus to none. This macro assigns the receiving keyboard input object `_pObjectFocused` (■) pointer to NULL. If the new active list has an object's state set to focus, the `_pObjectFocused` (■) pointer must be set to this object or the object's state must be change to unfocused. This is to avoid two objects displaying a focused state when only one object in the active list must be set to a focused state at anytime.

**Syntax**

```
GOLSetList(objsList)
```

### 7.2.3.17 GOLSetFocus Function

**File**

```
GOL.h
```

**C**

```
void GOLSetFocus(
    OBJ_HEADER * object
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
OBJ_HEADER * object	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function sets the keyboard input focus to the object. If the object cannot accept keyboard messages focus will not be changed. This function resets FOCUSED (■) state for the object was in focus previously, set FOCUSED (■) state for the required object and marks the objects to be redrawn.

**Syntax**

```
void GOLSetFocus(OBJ_HEADER (■)* object)
```

### 7.2.3.18 IsObjUpdated Macro

**File**

```
GOL.h
```

**C**

```
#define IsObjUpdated(pObj) (((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->state & 0xfc00)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns a nonzero value if the object needs to be redrawn. Zero if not.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
int DrawButtonWindowOnly() {
    static OBJ_HEADER *pCurrentObj = NULL;
    SHORT done = 0;

    if (pCurrentObj == NULL)
        pCurrentObj = GOLGetList();           // get current list

    while(pCurrentObj != NULL){
        if(IsObjUpdated(pCurrentObj)){
            done = pCurrentObj->draw(pCurrentObj);

            // reset state of object if done
            if (done)
                GOLDrawComplete(pCurrentObj)
            // Return if not done. This means that BtnDraw()
            // was terminated prematurely by device busy status
            // and must be recalled to finish rendering of
            // objects in the list that have new states.
            else
                return 0;
        }
        // go to the next object in the list
        pCurrentObj = pCurrentObj->pNxtObj;
    }
    return 1;
}
```

**Overview**

This macro tests if the object is pending to be redrawn. This is done by testing the 6 MSBits of object's state to detect if the object must be redrawn.

**Syntax**

IsObjUpdated(pObj)

## 7.2.3.19 GOLInit Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
void GOLInit();
```

**Side Effects**

This sets the line type to SOLID\_LINE (█), sets the screen to all BLACK (█), sets the current drawing color to WHITE (█),

sets the graphic cursor position to upper left corner of the screen, sets active and visual pages to page #0, clears the active page and disables clipping. This also creates a default style scheme.

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function initializes the graphics library and creates a default style scheme with default settings referenced by the global scheme pointer. GOLInit() function must be called before GOL functions can be used. It is not necessary to call GraphInit() function if this function is used.

### Syntax

```
void GOLInit()
```

## 7.2.3.20 GOLGetFocus Macro

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
#define GOLGetFocus _pObjectFocused
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the pointer to the object receiving keyboard input. If there is no object in focus NULL is returned.

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro returns the pointer to the current object receiving keyboard input.

### Syntax

```
GOLGetFocus()
```

## 7.2.3.21 GOLCanBeFocused Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
WORD GOLCanBeFocused(
    OBJ_HEADER * object
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
OBJ_HEADER * object	Pointer to the object of interest.

### Side Effects

none

**Returns**

This returns a non-zero if the object can be focused and zero if not.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function returns non-zero if the object can be focused. Only button, check box, radio button, slider, edit box, list box, scroll bar can accept focus. If the object is disabled it cannot be set to focused state.

**Syntax**

```
WORD GOLCanBeFocused(OBJ_HEADER (*) object)
```

## 7.2.3.22 GOLGetFocusNext Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
OBJ_HEADER * GOLGetFocusNext();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

This returns the pointer of the next object in the active list capable of receiving keyboard input. If there is no object capable of receiving keyboard inputs (i.e. none can be focused) NULL is returned.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function returns the pointer to the next object in the active linked list which is able to receive keyboard input.

**Syntax**

```
OBJ_HEADER (*) GOLGetFocusNext()
```

## 7.2.3.23 GOLGetFocusPrev Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
OBJ_HEADER * GOLGetFocusPrev();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

This returns the pointer of the previous object in the active list capable of receiving keyboard input. If there is no object capable of receiving keyboard inputs (i.e. none can be focused) NULL is returned.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function returns the pointer to the previous object in the active linked list which is able to receive keyboard input.

**Syntax**

```
OBJ_HEADER (*) *GOLGetFocusNext ()()
```

**7.2.3.24 GOLPanelDraw Macro****File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLPanelDraw(left, top, right, bottom, radius, faceClr, embossLtClr, embossDkClr,  
pBitmap, embossSize) \  
    _rpn1X1 =  
    left;           \  
    _rpn1Y1 =  
    top;           \  
    _rpn1X2 =  
    right;          \  
    _rpn1Y2 =  
    bottom;          \  
    _rpn1R =  
    radius;          \  
    _rpn1FaceColor =  
    faceClr;          \  
    _rpn1EmbossLtColor =  
    embossLtClr;          \  
    _rpn1EmbossDkColor =  
    embossDkClr;          \  
    _pRpn1Bitmap =  
    pBitmap;          \  
    _rpn1EmbossSize = embossSize;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
left	Panel's left most position.
top	Panel's top most position.
right	Panel's right most position.
bottom	Panel's bottom most position.
radius	The radius of the rounded corner of the panel.
faceClr	Defines the face color of the panel.
embossLtClr	Defines the emboss light color.
embossDkClr	Defines the emboss dark color.
pBitmap	Defines the bitmap used in the face of the panel.
embossSize	Defines the emboss size of the panel.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
// Dimensions for signature box
```

```

#define SIG_PANEL_LEFT      10
#define SIG_PANEL_RIGHT     310
#define SIG_PANEL_TOP       50
#define SIG_PANEL_BOTTOM    170

#define SIG_STATE_SET      0
#define SIG_STATE_DRAW     1

GOL_SCHEME *altScheme;           // style scheme

// Draws box for signature
WORD PanelSignature() {
    static BYTE state = SIG_STATE_SET;

    if(state == SIG_STATE_SET){
        // set data for panel drawing (radius = 0)
        // assume altScheme is defined
        GOLPanelDraw(SIG_PANEL_LEFT,SIG_PANEL_TOP,
                      SIG_PANEL_RIGHT,SIG_PANEL_BOTTOM,0,
                      WHITE,
                      altScheme->EmbossLtColor,
                      altScheme->EmbossDkColor,
                      NULL, GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE);

        state = SIG_STATE_DRAW; // change state
    }

    if( !GOLPanelDrawTsk())
        return 0; // drawing is not completed
    } else {
        state = SIG_STATE_SET; // set state to initial
        return 1; // drawing is done
    }
}

```

## Overview

This macro sets the parameters to draw a panel. Panel is not an object. It will not be added to the active list. Use GOLPanelDrawTsk (█)() to display the panel on the screen. The following relationships of the parameters determines the general shape of the button:

1. Panel width is determined by right - left.
2. Panel height is determined by top - bottom.
3. Panel radius - specifies if the panel will have a rounded edge. If zero then the panel will have sharp (cornered) edge.
4. If  $2 \times \text{radius} = \text{height} = \text{width}$ , the panel is circular.

## Syntax

GOLPanelDraw( left, top, right, bottom, radius, faceClr, embossLtClr, embossDkClr, pBitmap, embossSize)

## 7.2.3.25 GOLPanelDrawTsk Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

WORD GOLPanelDrawTsk();

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the panel rendering

0 - Rendering of the panel is not yet finished.

1 - Rendering of the panel is finished.

### Preconditions

Parameters of the panel must be set by GOLPanelDraw (■)() macro.

### Example

See GOLPanelDraw (■)() example.

### Overview

This function draws a panel on the screen with parameters set by GOLPanelDraw (■)() macro. This function must be called repeatedly (depending on the return value) for a successful rendering of the panel.

### Syntax

WORD GOLPanelDrawTsk()

## 7.2.3.26 GOLTTwoTonePanelDrawTsk Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
WORD GOLTTwoTonePanelDrawTsk();
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the status of the panel rendering

0 - Rendering of the panel is not yet finished.  
1 - Rendering of the panel is finished.

### Preconditions

Parameters of the panel must be set by GOLPanelDraw (■)() macro.

### Example

Usage is similar to GOLPanelDraw (■)() example.

### Overview

This function draws a two tone panel on the screen with parameters set by GOLPanelDraw (■)() macro. This function must be called repeatedly (depending on the return value) for a successful rendering of the panel.

### Syntax

WORD GOLTTwoTonePanelDrawTsk()

---

## 7.2.4 GOL Messages

The library provides an interface to accept messages from the input devices.

### Enumerations

Name	Description
TRANS_MSG (■)	This structure defines the list of translated messages for GOL Objects used in the library.
INPUT_DEVICE_EVENT (■)	This structure defines the types of GOL message events used in the library.
INPUT_DEVICE_TYPE (■)	This structure defines the types of input devices used in the library.

## Functions

Name	Description
GOLMsg (🔗)	<p>This function receives a GOL message from user and loops through the active list of objects to check which object is affected by the message. For affected objects the message is translated and GOLMsgCallback (🔗()) is called. In the call back function, user has the ability to implement action for the message. If the call back function returns non-zero OBMsgDefault() is called to process message for the object by default. If zero is returned OBMsgDefault() is not called. Please refer to GOL Messages section for details.</p> <p>This function should be called when GOL drawing is completed. It can be done... more (🔗)</p>
GOLMsgCallback (🔗)	The user MUST implement this function. GOLMsg (🔗()) calls this function when a valid message for an object in the active list is received. User action for the message should be implemented here. If this function returns non-zero, the message for the object will be processed by default. If zero is returned, GOL will not perform any action.

## Structures

Name	Description
GOL_MSG (🔗)	<p>This structure defines the GOL message used in the library.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The types must be one of the INPUT_DEVICE_TYPE (🔗):</li> <li>• TYPE_UNKNOWN</li> <li>• TYPE_KEYBOARD</li> <li>• TYPE_TOUCHSCREEN</li> <li>• TYPE_MOUSE</li> <li>• uiEvent must be one of the INPUT_DEVICE_EVENT (🔗).</li> <li>• for touch screen:</li> <li>• EVENT_INVALID</li> <li>• EVENT_MOVE</li> <li>• EVENT_PRESS</li> <li>• EVENT_STILLPRESS</li> <li>• EVENT_RELEASE</li> <li>• for keyboard:</li> <li>• EVENT_KEYSCAN (param2 contains scan code)</li> <li>• EVENT_KEYCODE (param2 contains character code)</li> <li>• param1:</li> <li>• for touch screen is the x position</li> <li>• for keyboard ID of object receiving the message</li> <li>• param2</li> <li>• for touch screen y position</li> <li>• for keyboard scan or key code</li> </ul>

## Description

To facilitate the processing of user actions on the objects, messaging are used.

User passes messages from the input devices to GOL using the GOL message structure. The structure is described by the following table.

```
typedef struct {
    BYTE          type;
    BYTE          uiEvent;
```

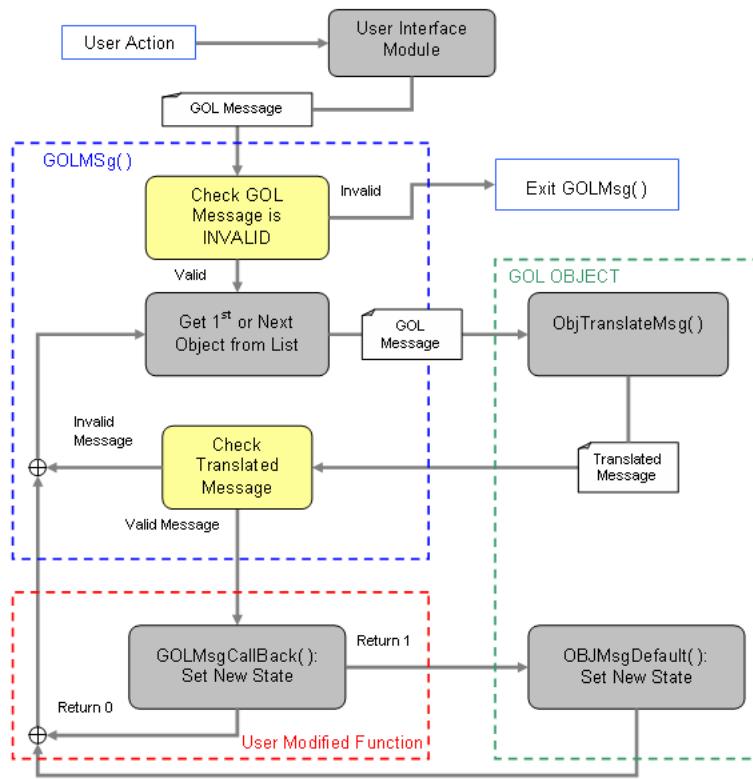
```

int          param1;
int          param2;
} GOL_MSG;

```

Field	Description
type	Defines the type of device where the message was created. These are the devices implemented in the User Interface Layer. Possible device types are the following: TYPE_UNKNOWN TYPE_KEYBOARD TYPE_TOUCHSCREEN TYPE_MOUSE
uiEvent	Event ID of the user or device type action on the object. Possible event IDs are the following: EVENT_INVALID EVENT_MOVE EVENT_PRESS EVENT_STILLPRESS EVENT_RELEASE EVENT_KEYSCAN EVENT_CHARCODE
param1 param2	Parameters 1 and 2 definition varies from device types. For example, param1 and param2 are defined as x-coordinate position and y-coordinate position respectively for TYPE_TOUCHSCREEN. For TYPE_KEYBOARD, param1 is defined as the ID of the receiving object and param2 is defined as the keyboard scan or character code.

GOLMsg (✉)() function accepts this structure and processes the message for all objects in the active list.



Messaging Flow

The messaging mechanism follows this flow:

1. User Interface Module (touch screen, keypad) sends a GOL message (the GOL\_MSG (█) structure).
2. A loop evaluates which object is affected by the message. This is done inside GOLMsg (█)() function.
3. Affected object returns the translated message based on the GOL message parameters.
4. User can change default action with the callback function. If the call back function returns a non-zero value message will be processed by default.
5. Object should be redrawn to reflect new state.

The translated message is a set of actions unique to each object type. Please refer to each object translated message ID for details.

Objects that are disabled will not accept any messages. GOLMsg (█)() function must be called when GOL drawing is completed. In this case all objects have been drawn and it is safe to change objects states. GOLMsg (█)() call can be done if GOLDraw (█)() function returns non-zero or inside GOLDrawCallback (█)() function.

## 7.2.4.1 GOLMsg Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
void GOLMsg(
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the GOL message from user.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
// Assume objects are created & states are set to draw objects
while(1){
    if(GOLDraw()){
        // GOL drawing is completed here
        // it is safe to change objects
        TouchGetMsg(&msg);           // from user interface module
        GOLMsg(&msg);
    }
}
```

### Overview

This function receives a GOL message from user and loops through the active list of objects to check which object is affected by the message. For affected objects the message is translated and GOLMsgCallback (█)() is called. In the call back function, user has the ability to implement action for the message. If the call back function returns non-zero OBJMsgDefault() is called to process message for the object by default. If zero is returned OBJMsgDefault() is not called. Please refer to GOL Messages section for details.

This function should be called when GOL drawing is completed. It can be done when GOLDraw (█)() returns non-zero value or inside GOLDrawCallback (█)() function.

**Syntax**

```
void GOLMsg(GOL_MSG (■) *pMsg)
```

## 7.2.4.2 GOLMsgCallback Function

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
WORD GOLMsgCallback(
    WORD objMsg,
    OBJ_HEADER * pObj,
    GOL_MSG * pMsg
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD objMsg	Translated message for the object or the action ID response from the object.
OBJ_HEADER * pObj	Pointer to the object that processed the message.
GOL_MSG * pMsg	Pointer to the GOL message from user.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Return a non-zero if the message will be processed by default. If a zero is returned, the message will not be processed by GOL.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
WORD GOLMsgCallback(WORD objMsg, OBJ_HEADER* pObj, GOL_MSG *pMsg){
    static char focusSwitch = 1;

    switch(GetObjID(pObj)){
        case ID_BUTTON1:
            // Change text and focus state
            if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_RELEASED){
                focusSwitch ^= 1;
                if(focusSwitch){
                    BtnSetText((BUTTON*)pObj, "Focused");
                    SetState(pObj,BTN_FOCUSED);
                }else{
                    BtnSetText((BUTTON*)pObj, "Unfocused");
                    ClrState(pObj,BTN_FOCUSED);
                }
            }
            // Process by default
            return 1;
        case ID_BUTTON2:
            // Change text
            if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_PRESSED){
                BtnSetText((BUTTON*)pObj, "Pressed");
            }
            if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_RELEASED){
                BtnSetText((BUTTON*)pObj, "Released");
            }
            // Process by default
            return 1;
        case ID_BUTTON3:
            // Change face picture
    }
```

```

        if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_PRESSED){
            BtnSetBitmap(pObj,arrowLeft);
        }
        if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_RELEASED){
            BtnSetBitmap(pObj,(char*)arrowRight);
        }
        // Process by default
        return 1;
    case ID_BUTTON_NEXT:
        if(objMsg == BTN_MSG_RELEASED){
            screenState = CREATE_CHECKBOXES;
        }
        // Process by default
        return 1;
    case ID_BUTTON_BACK:
        return 1;
    default:
        return 1;
    }
}

```

## Overview

The user MUST implement this function. GOLMsg (🔗)() calls this function when a valid message for an object in the active list is received. User action for the message should be implemented here. If this function returns non-zero, the message for the object will be processed by default. If zero is returned, GOL will not perform any action.

## Syntax

WORD GOLMsgCallback(WORD objMsg, OBJ\_HEADER (🔗)\* pObj, GOL\_MSG (🔗)\* pMsg)

## 7.2.4.3 GOL\_MSG Structure

### File

GOL.h

### C

```

typedef struct {
    BYTE type;
    BYTE uiEvent;
    SHORT param1;
    SHORT param2;
} GOL_MSG;

```

### Members

Members	Description
BYTE type;	Type of input device.
BYTE uiEvent;	The generic events for input device.
SHORT param1;	Parameter 1 meaning is dependent on the type of input device.
SHORT param2;	Parameter 2 meaning is dependent on the type of input device.

## Overview

This structure defines the GOL message used in the library.

- The types must be one of the INPUT\_DEVICE\_TYPE (🔗):
- TYPE\_UNKNOWN
- TYPE\_KEYBOARD
- TYPE\_TOUCHSCREEN
- TYPE\_MOUSE
- uiEvent must be one of the INPUT\_DEVICE\_EVENT (🔗).
- for touch screen:

- EVENT\_INVALID
- EVENT\_MOVE
- EVENT\_PRESS
- EVENT\_STILLPRESS
- EVENT\_RELEASE
- for keyboard:
- EVENT\_KEYSCAN (param2 contains scan code)
- EVENT\_KEYCODE (param2 contains character code)
- param1:
  - for touch screen is the x position
  - for keyboard ID of object receiving the message
- param2
  - for touch screen y position
  - for keyboard scan or key code

## 7.2.4.4 TRANS\_MSG Enumeration

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
typedef enum {
    OBJ_MSG_INVALID = 0,
    CB_MSG_CHECKED,
    CB_MSG_UNCHECKED,
    RB_MSG_CHECKED,
    WND_MSG_CLIENT,
    WND_MSG_TITLE,
    BTN_MSG_PRESSED,
    BTN_MSG_STILLPRESSED,
    BTN_MSG_RELEASED,
    BTN_MSG_CANCELPRESS,
    PICT_MSG_SELECTED,
    GB_MSG_SELECTED,
    CC_MSG_SELECTED,
    SLD_MSG_INC,
    SLD_MSG_DEC,
    ST_MSG_SELECTED,
    DM_MSG_SELECTED,
    PB_MSG_SELECTED,
    RD_MSG_CLOCKWISE,
    RD_MSG_CTR_CLOCKWISE,
    MTR_MSG_SET,
    EB_MSG_CHAR,
    EB_MSG_DEL,
    EB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN,
    LB_MSG_SEL,
    LB_MSG_MOVE,
    LB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN,
    GRID_MSG_TOUCHED,
    GRID_MSG_ITEM_SELECTED,
    GRID_MSG_UP,
    GRID_MSG_DOWN,
    GRID_MSG_LEFT,
    GRID_MSG_RIGHT,
    CH_MSG_SELECTED,
    TE_MSG_RELEASED,
    TE_MSG_PRESSED,
    TE_MSG_ADD_CHAR,
```

```

TE_MSG_DELETE,
TE_MSG_SPACE,
TE_MSG_ENTER,
AC_MSG_PRESSED,
AC_MSG_RELEASED,
OBJ_MSG_PASSIVE
} TRANS_MSG;

```

**Members**

<b>Members</b>	<b>Description</b>
OBJ_MSG_INVALID = 0	Invalid message response.
CB_MSG_CHECKED	Check Box check action ID.
CB_MSG_UNCHECKED	Check Box un-check action ID.
RB_MSG_CHECKED	Radio Button (■) check action ID.
WND_MSG_CLIENT	Window (■) client area selected action ID.
WND_MSG_TITLE	Window (■) title bar selected action ID.
BTN_MSG_PRESSED	Button (■) pressed action ID.
BTN_MSG_STILLPRESSED	Button (■) is continuously pressed ID.
BTN_MSG_RELEASED	Button (■) released action ID.
BTN_MSG_CANCELPRESS	Button (■) released action ID with button press canceled.
PICT_MSG_SELECTED	Picture (■) selected action ID.
GB_MSG_SELECTED	Group Box selected action ID.
CC_MSG_SELECTED	Custom Control selected action ID.
SLD_MSG_INC	Slider (■) or Scroll (■) Bar (■) increment action ID.
SLD_MSG_DEC	Slider (■) or Scroll (■) Bar (■) decrement action ID.
ST_MSG_SELECTED	Static Text selected action ID.
DM_MSG_SELECTED	Digital Meter (■) selected action ID.
PB_MSG_SELECTED	Progress Bar (■) selected action ID.
RD_MSG_CLOCKWISE	Dial (■) move clockwise action ID.
RD_MSG_CTR_CLOCKWISE	Dial (■) move counter clockwise action ID.
MTR_MSG_SET	Meter (■) set value action ID.
EB_MSG_CHAR	Edit Box insert character action ID.
EB_MSG_DEL	Edit Box remove character action ID.
EB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN	Edit Box touchscreen selected action ID.
LB_MSG_SEL	List Box item select action ID.
LB_MSG_MOVE	List Box item move action ID.
LB_MSG_TOUCHSCREEN	List Box touchscreen selected action ID.
GRID_MSG_TOUCHED	Grid (■) item touched action ID.
GRID_MSG_ITEM_SELECTED	Grid (■) item selected action ID.
GRID_MSG_UP	Grid (■) up action ID.
GRID_MSG_DOWN	Grid (■) down action ID.
GRID_MSG_LEFT	Grid (■) left action ID.
GRID_MSG_RIGHT	Grid (■) right action ID.
CH_MSG_SELECTED	Chart (■) selected action ID
TE_MSG_RELEASED	TextEntry released action ID
TE_MSG_PRESSED	TextEntry pressed action ID
TE_MSG_ADD_CHAR	TextEntry add character action ID
TE_MSG_DELETE	TextEntry delete character action ID
TE_MSG_SPACE	TextEntry add space character action ID
TE_MSG_ENTER	TextEntry enter action ID
AC_MSG_PRESSED	Analog Clock Pressed Action
AC_MSG_RELEASED	Analog Clock Released Action

OBJ_MSG_PASSIVE	Passive message response. No change in object needed.
-----------------	---

## Overview

This structure defines the list of translated messages for GOL Objects used in the library.

## 7.2.4.5 INPUT\_DEVICE\_EVENT Enumeration

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
typedef enum {
    EVENT_INVALID = 0,
    EVENT_MOVE,
    EVENT_PRESS,
    EVENT_STILLPRESS,
    EVENT_RELEASE,
    EVENT_KEYSCAN,
    EVENT_CHARCODE,
    EVENT_SET,
    EVENT_SET_STATE,
    EVENT_CLR_STATE
} INPUT_DEVICE_EVENT;
```

### Members

Members	Description
EVENT_INVALID = 0	An invalid event.
EVENT_MOVE	A move event.
EVENT_PRESS	A press event.
EVENT_STILLPRESS	A continuous press event.
EVENT_RELEASE	A release event.
EVENT_KEYSCAN	A keyscan event, parameters has the object ID keyboard scan code.
EVENT_CHARCODE	Character code is presented at the parameters.
EVENT_SET	A generic set event.
EVENT_SET_STATE	A set state event.
EVENT_CLR_STATE	A clear state event.

## Overview

This structure defines the types of GOL message events used in the library.

## 7.2.4.6 INPUT\_DEVICE\_TYPE Enumeration

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
typedef enum {
    TYPE_UNKNOWN = 0,
    TYPE_KEYBOARD,
    TYPE_TOUCHSCREEN,
    TYPE_MOUSE,
    TYPE_TIMER,
    TYPE_SYSTEM
} INPUT_DEVICE_TYPE;
```

## Members

Members	Description
TYPE_UNKNOWN = 0	Unknown device.
TYPE_KEYBOARD	Keyboard.
TYPE_TOUCHSCREEN	Touchscreen.
TYPE_MOUSE	Mouse.
TYPE_TIMER	Timer.
TYPE_SYSTEM	System Messages.

## Overview

This structure defines the types of input devices used in the library.

## 7.2.4.7 Scan Key Codes

### Macros

Name	Description
SCAN_BS_PRESSED (█)	Back space key pressed.
SCAN_BS_RELEASED (█)	Back space key released.
SCAN_CR_PRESSED (█)	Carriage return pressed.
SCAN_CR_RELEASED (█)	Carriage return released.
SCAN_DEL_PRESSED (█)	Delete key pressed.
SCAN_DEL_RELEASED (█)	Delete key released.
SCAN_DOWN_PRESSED (█)	Down key pressed.
SCAN_DOWN_RELEASED (█)	Down key released.
SCAN_END_PRESSED (█)	End key pressed.
SCAN_END_RELEASED (█)	End key released.
SCAN_HOME_PRESSED (█)	Home key pressed.
SCAN_HOME_RELEASED (█)	Home key released.
SCAN_LEFT_PRESSED (█)	Left key pressed.
SCAN_LEFT_RELEASED (█)	Left key released.
SCAN_PGDOWN_PRESSED (█)	Page down key pressed.
SCAN_PGDOWN_RELEASED (█)	Page down key released.
SCAN_PGUP_PRESSED (█)	Page up key pressed.
SCAN_PGUP_RELEASED (█)	Page up key released.
SCAN_RIGHT_PRESSED (█)	Right key pressed.
SCAN_RIGHT_RELEASED (█)	Right key released.
SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED (█)	Space key pressed.
SCAN_SPACE_RELEASED (█)	Space key released.
SCAN_TAB_PRESSED (█)	Tab key pressed.
SCAN_TAB_RELEASED (█)	Tab key released.
SCAN_UP_PRESSED (█)	Up key pressed.
SCAN_UP_RELEASED (█)	Up key released.

### Description

The defined scan codes for AT keyboard.

### 7.2.4.7.1 SCAN\_BS\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_BS_PRESSED 0x0E
```

**Description**

Back space key pressed.

### 7.2.4.7.2 SCAN\_BS\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_BS_RELEASED 0x8E
```

**Description**

Back space key released.

### 7.2.4.7.3 SCAN\_CR\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_CR_PRESSED 0x1C
```

**Description**

Carriage return pressed.

### 7.2.4.7.4 SCAN\_CR\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_CR_RELEASED 0x9C
```

**Description**

Carriage return released.

### 7.2.4.7.5 SCAN\_DEL\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_DEL_PRESSED 0x53
```

**Description**

Delete key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.6 SCAN\_DEL\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_DEL_RELEASED 0xD3
```

**Description**

Delete key released.

## 7.2.4.7.7 SCAN\_DOWN\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_DOWN_PRESSED 0x50
```

**Description**

Down key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.8 SCAN\_DOWN\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_DOWN_RELEASED 0xD0
```

**Description**

Down key released.

## 7.2.4.7.9 SCAN\_END\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_END_PRESSED 0x4F
```

**Description**

End key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.10 SCAN\_END\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_END_RELEASED 0xCF
```

**Description**

End key released.

### 7.2.4.7.11 SCAN\_HOME\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_HOME_PRESSED 0x47
```

**Description**

Home key pressed.

### 7.2.4.7.12 SCAN\_HOME\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_HOME_RELEASED 0xC7
```

**Description**

Home key released.

### 7.2.4.7.13 SCAN\_LEFT\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_LEFT_PRESSED 0x4B
```

**Description**

Left key pressed.

### 7.2.4.7.14 SCAN\_LEFT\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_LEFT_RELEASED 0xCB
```

**Description**

Left key released.

### 7.2.4.7.15 SCAN\_PGDOWN\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_PGDOWN_PRESSED 0x51
```

**Description**

Page down key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.16 SCAN\_PGDOWN\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_PGDOWN_RELEASED 0xD1
```

**Description**

Page down key released.

## 7.2.4.7.17 SCAN\_PGUP\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_PGUP_PRESSED 0x49
```

**Description**

Page up key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.18 SCAN\_PGUP\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_PGUP_RELEASED 0xC9
```

**Description**

Page up key released.

## 7.2.4.7.19 SCAN\_RIGHT\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_RIGHT_PRESSED 0x4D
```

**Description**

Right key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.20 SCAN\_RIGHT\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_RIGHT_RELEASED 0xCD
```

**Description**

Right key released.

## 7.2.4.7.21 SCAN\_SPACE\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_SPACE_PRESSED 0x39
```

**Description**

Space key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.22 SCAN\_SPACE\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_SPACE_RELEASED 0xB9
```

**Description**

Space key released.

## 7.2.4.7.23 SCAN\_TAB\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_TAB_PRESSED 0x0F
```

**Description**

Tab key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.24 SCAN\_TAB\_RELEASED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_TAB_RELEASED 0x8F
```

**Description**

Tab key released.

## 7.2.4.7.25 SCAN\_UP\_PRESSED Macro

**File**

ScanCodes.h

**C**

```
#define SCAN_UP_PRESSED 0x48
```

**Description**

Up key pressed.

## 7.2.4.7.26 SCAN\_UP\_RELEASED Macro

### File

ScanCodes.h

### C

```
#define SCAN_UP_RELEASED 0xC8
```

### Description

Up key released.

## 7.2.5 Style Scheme

All objects uses a style scheme structure that defines the font and colors used.

### Functions

	Name	Description
!	GOLCreateScheme ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function creates a new style scheme object and initializes the parameters to default values. Default values are based on the GOLSchemeDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) defined in GOLSchemeDefault.c file. Application code can override this initialization, See GOLSchemeDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ).

### Macros

Name	Description
GOLSetScheme ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro sets the GOL scheme to be used for the object.
GOLGetScheme ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro gets the GOL scheme used by the given object.
GOLGetSchemeDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the default GOL scheme pointer.
GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This option defines the 3-D effect emboss size for objects. The default value of this is 3 set in GOL.h. If it is not defined in GraphicsConfig.h file then the default value is used.
RGBConvert ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro converts the color data to the selected COLOR_DEPTH ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ). This macro is only valid when COLOR_DEPTH ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) is 8, 16, or 24.

### Structures

Name	Description
GOL_SCHEME ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	GOL scheme defines the style scheme to be used by an object.

### Variables

Name	Description
GOLFondDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This is variable GOLFondDefault.
GOLSchemeDefault ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This defines a default GOL scheme that gets populated when an application calls the GOLCreateScheme ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()). The application can override this definition by defining the macro GFX_SCHEMEDEFAULT in the GraphicsConfig.h header file and defining GOLSchemeDefault structure in the application code. It is important to use the same structure name since the library assumes that this object exists and assigns the default style scheme pointer to this object.

### Description

All objects uses a style scheme structure that defines the font and colors used. Upon the object's creation a user defined style scheme can be assigned to the object. In the absence of the user defined scheme, the default scheme is used.

```
typedef struct {
    WORD             EmbossDkColor;
    WORD             EmbossLtColor;
```

```

WORD           TextColor0;
WORD           TextColor1;
WORD           TextColorDisabled;
WORD           Color0;
WORD           Color1;
WORD           ColorDisabled;
WORD           CommonBkColor;
BYTE          *pFont;
BYTE          AlphaValue;
GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE gradientScheme;
} GOL_SCHEME;

```

Field	Description
EmbossDkColor	Dark emboss color used for the 3-D effect of the object.
EmbossLtColor	Light emboss color used for the 3-D effect of the object.
TextColor0	Generic text colors used by the objects. Usage may vary from one object type to another.
TextColor1	
TextColorDisabled	Text color used for objects that are disabled.
Color0	Generic colors used to render objects. Usage may vary from one object type to another.
Color1	
ColorDisabled	Color used to render objects that are disabled.
CommonBkColor	A common background color of objects. Typically used to hide objects from the screen.
pFont	Pointer to the font table used by the object.
AlphaValue	Alpha value used for alpha blending, this is only available only when USE_ALPHABLEND (■) is defined in the GraphicsConfig.h.
gradientScheme	Gradient Scheme for supported widgets, this is available only when USE_GRADIENT (■) is defined in the GraphicsConfig.h.

TextColorDisabled and ColorDisabled are used when the object is in the disabled state. Otherwise, TextColor0, TextColor1, Color0 and Color1 are used. When object Draw state is set to HIDE (■), the CommonBkColor is used to fill area occupied by object.

Style scheme can be created with GOLCreateScheme (■)() function that returns a pointer to the newly created GOL\_SCHEME (■) structure with default values automatically assigned. The default settings of the style scheme for a 16bpp setup are shown below:

Style Parameter	Default Value
EmbossDkColor	EMBOSSDKCOLORDEFAULT
EmbossLtColor	EMBOSSLTCOLORDEFAULT
TextColor0	TEXTCOLOR0DEFAULT
TextColor1	TEXTCOLOR1DEFAULT
TextColorDisabled	TEXTCOLORDISABLEDDEFAULT
Color0	COLOR0DEFAULT
Color1	COLOR1DEFAULT
ColorDisabled	COLORDISABLEDDEFAULT
CommonBkColor	COMMONBACKGROUNDCOLORDEFAULT
pFont	FONTDEFAULT (■)
AlphaValue	0
gradientScheme	{ GRAD_NONE, RGBConvert (■)(0xA9, 0xDB, 0xEF), RGBConvert (■)(0x26, 0xC7, 0xF2), 50 }

The default values can be changed in the GOLSchemeDefault.c file.

The application code can define its own default style scheme by defining the macro GFX\_SCHEMEDEFAULT in the GraphicsConfig.h.

Then GOL\_SCHEME (■) GOLSchemeDefault (■) must be defined in the application code with each structure member initialized to the desired values. See GOLSchemeDefault.c file for an example on how to initialize the style scheme.

## 7.2.5.1 GOLCreateScheme Function

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
GOL_SCHEME * GOLCreateScheme();
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Pointer to the new GOL\_SCHEME (■) created.

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
extern const char Font22[] __attribute__((aligned(2)));
extern const char Font16[] __attribute__((aligned(2)));

GOLSCHEME *pScheme1, *pScheme2;
pScheme1 = GOLCreateScheme();
pScheme2 = GOLCreateScheme();

pScheme1->pFont = (BYTE*)Font22;
pScheme2->pFont = (BYTE*)Font16;
```

### Overview

This function creates a new style scheme object and initializes the parameters to default values. Default values are based on the GOLSchemeDefault (■) defined in GOLSchemeDefault.c file. Application code can override this initialization, See GOLSchemeDefault (■).

### Syntax

GOL\_SCHEME (■) \*GOLCreateScheme()

## 7.2.5.2 GOLSetScheme Macro

### File

GOL.h

### C

```
#define GOLSetScheme(pObj, pScheme) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->pGolScheme = pScheme
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.
pScheme	Pointer to the style scheme to be used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
extern FONT_FLASH Gentium12;
GOLSCHEME *pScheme1;
BUTTON *pButton;

pScheme1 = GOLCreateScheme();
pScheme1->pFont = &Gentium12;

// assume button is created and initialized

// reassign the scheme used by pButton to pScheme1
GOLSetScheme(pButton, pScheme1);
```

**Overview**

This macro sets the GOL scheme to be used for the object.

**Syntax**

GOLSetScheme(pObj, pScheme)

## 7.2.5.3 GOLGetScheme Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLGetScheme(pObj) ((OBJ_HEADER *)pObj)->pGolScheme
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pObj	Pointer to the object of interest.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the style scheme used by the given object.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
GOLSCHEME *pScheme2;
BUTTON *pButton;

// assume button is created and initialized
// get the scheme assigned to pButton
pScheme2 = GOLGetScheme(pButton);
```

**Overview**

This macro gets the GOL scheme used by the given object.

**Syntax**

```
GOLGetScheme(pObj)
```

**7.2.5.4 GOLGetSchemeDefault Macro****File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOLGetSchemeDefault _pDefaultGolScheme
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the pointer to the default style scheme.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the default GOL scheme pointer.

**Syntax**

```
GOLGetSchemeDefault()
```

**7.2.5.5 GOL\_SCHEME Structure****File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_COLOR EmbossDkColor;
    GFX_COLOR EmbossLtColor;
    GFX_COLOR TextColor0;
    GFX_COLOR TextColor1;
    GFX_COLOR TextColorDisabled;
    GFX_COLOR Color0;
    GFX_COLOR Color1;
    GFX_COLOR ColorDisabled;
    GFX_COLOR CommonBkColor;
    void * pFont;
    BYTE AlphaValue;
    GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE gradientScheme;
} GOL_SCHEME;
```

**Members**

<b>Members</b>	<b>Description</b>
GFX_COLOR EmbossDkColor;	Emboss dark color used for 3d effect.
GFX_COLOR EmbossLtColor;	Emboss light color used for 3d effect.
GFX_COLOR TextColor0;	Character color 0 used for objects that supports text.
GFX_COLOR TextColor1;	Character color 1 used for objects that supports text.
GFX_COLOR TextColorDisabled;	Character color used when object is in a disabled state.
GFX_COLOR Color0;	Color 0 usually assigned to an Object state.

GFX_COLOR Color1;	Color 1 usually assigned to an Object state.
GFX_COLOR ColorDisabled;	Color used when an Object is in a disabled state.
GFX_COLOR CommonBkColor;	Background color used to hide Objects.
void * pFont;	Font selected for the scheme.
BYTE AlphaValue;	Alpha value used for alpha blending, this is available only when USE_ALPHABLEND (■) is defined in the GraphicsConfig.h.
GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE gradientScheme;	Gradient Scheme for widgets, this is available only when USE_GRADIENT (■) is defined in the GraphicsConfig.h.

**Overview**

GOL scheme defines the style scheme to be used by an object.

## 7.2.5.6 Default Style Scheme Settings

**Variables**

Name	Description
FONTDEFAULT (■)	Default GOL font.

**Description**

Lists the default settings for the style scheme.

### 7.2.5.6.1 FONTDEFAULT Variable

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
const FONT_FLASH FONTDEFAULT;
```

**Description**

Default GOL font.

### 7.2.5.7 GOLFondDefault Variable

**File**

GOLFondDefault.c

**C**

```
const FONT_FLASH GOLFondDefault = { (FLASH | COMP_NONE), __GOLFondDefault };
```

**Description**

This is variable GOLFondDefault.

### 7.2.5.8 GOL\_EMBOSS\_SIZE Macro

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
#define GOL_EMBOSS_SIZE 3
```

## Overview

This option defines the 3-D effect emboss size for objects. The default value of this is 3 set in GOL.h. If it is not defined in GraphicsConfig.h file then the default value is used.

## 7.2.5.9 GOLSchemeDefault Variable

### File

GOLSchemeDefault.c

### C

```
const GOL_SCHEME GOLSchemeDefault = { BLACK, WHITE, WHITE, BLACK, WHITE, BLACK, WHITE,
BLACK, BLACK, GRAY006, GRAY010, WHITE, BLACK, GRAY012, GRAY008, GRAY004, GRAY014, BLACK,
RGBConvert(0x2B, 0x55, 0x87), RGBConvert(0xD4, 0xE4, 0xF7), RGBConvert(0x07, 0x1E, 0x48),
RGBConvert(0xFF, 0xFF, 0xFF), RGBConvert(245, 245, 220), RGBConvert(0xA9, 0xDB, 0xEF),
RGBConvert(0x26, 0xC7, 0xF2), RGBConvert(0xB6, 0xD2, 0xFB), RGBConvert(0xD4, 0xED, 0xF7),
(void *)&FONTDEFAULT, 0, #error "The USE_GRADIENT feature is not currently supported when
USE_PALETTE is enabled." { GRAD_NONE, RGBConvert(0xA9, 0xDB, 0xEF), RGBConvert(0x26, 0xC7,
0xF2), 50 } };
```

### Overview

This defines a default GOL scheme that gets populated when an application calls the GOLCreateScheme ( ). The application can override this definition by defining the macro GFX\_SCHEMEDEFAULT in the GraphicsConfig.h header file and defining GOLSchemeDefault structure in the application code. It is important to use the same structure name since the library assumes that this object exists and assigns the default style scheme pointer to this object.

## 7.2.5.10 RGBConvert Macro

### File

gfxcolors.h

### C

```
#define RGBConvert(red, green, blue) ((GFX_COLOR) (((GFX_COLOR)(red) << 16) |
((GFX_COLOR)(green) << 8) | (GFX_COLOR)(blue)))
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
red	red component of the color.
green	green component of the color.
blue	blue component of the color.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This macro converts the color data to the selected COLOR\_DEPTH ( ). This macro is only valid when COLOR\_DEPTH ( ) is 8, 16, or 24.

COLOR_DEPTH ( <a href="#">?!</a> )	Conversion
8	8-8-8 to 3-3-2 conversion
16	8-8-8 to 5-6-5 conversion
24	8-8-8 to 8-8-8 conversion or no conversion

**Syntax**

```
RGBConvert(red, green, blue)
```

## 7.2.6 GOL Global Variables

**Variables**

Name	Description
_pDefaultGolScheme ( <a href="#">?!</a> )	Pointer to the GOL default scheme (GOL_SCHEME ( <a href="#">?!</a> )). This scheme is created in GOLInit ( <a href="#">?!</a> ()) function. GOL scheme defines the style scheme to be used by an object. Use GOLGetSchemeDefault ( <a href="#">?!</a> ()) to get this pointer.
_pGolObjects ( <a href="#">?!</a> )	Pointer to the current linked list of objects displayed and receiving messages. GOLDraw ( <a href="#">?!</a> ()) and GOLMsg ( <a href="#">?!</a> ()) process objects referenced by this pointer.
_pObjectFocused ( <a href="#">?!</a> )	Pointer to the object receiving keyboard input. This pointer is used or modified by the following APIs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GOLSetFocus (<a href="#">?!</a>())</li> <li>• GOLGetFocus (<a href="#">?!</a>())</li> <li>• GOLGetFocusNext (<a href="#">?!</a>())</li> <li>• GOLGetFocusPrev (<a href="#">?!</a>())</li> <li>• GOLCanBeFocused (<a href="#">?!</a>())</li> </ul>

**Description**

Graphics Object Layer global variables.

### 7.2.6.1 \_pDefaultGolScheme Variable

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
GOL_SCHEME * _pDefaultGolScheme;
```

**Overview**

Pointer to the GOL default scheme (GOL\_SCHEME ([?!](#))). This scheme is created in GOLInit ([?!](#)()) function. GOL scheme defines the style scheme to be used by an object. Use GOLGetSchemeDefault ([?!](#)()) to get this pointer.

### 7.2.6.2 \_pGolObjects Variable

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
OBJ_HEADER * _pGolObjects;
```

**Overview**

Pointer to the current linked list of objects displayed and receiving messages. GOLDraw (🔗)() and GOLMsg (🔗)() process objects referenced by this pointer.

### 7.2.6.3 \_pObjectFocused Variable

**File**

GOL.h

**C**

```
OBJ_HEADER * _pObjectFocused;
```

**Overview**

Pointer to the object receiving keyboard input. This pointer is used or modified by the following APIs:

- GOLSetFocus (🔗)()
- GOLGetFocus (🔗)()
- GOLGetFocusNext (🔗)()
- GOLGetFocusPrev (🔗)()
- GOLCanBeFocused (🔗)()

## 7.3 Graphics Primitive Layer API

Description of Graphics Primitive Layer API.

**Enumerations**

Name	Description
GFX_RESOURCE (🔗)	Memory type enumeration to determine the source of data. Used in interpreting bitmap and font from different memory sources.

**Structures**

Name	Description
GFX_IMAGE_HEADER (🔗)	Structure for images stored in various system memory (Flash, External Memory (SPI, Parallel Flash, or memory in EPMP).
IMAGE_FLASH (🔗)	Structure for images stored in FLASH memory.
IMAGE_RAM (🔗)	Structure for images stored in RAM memory.
GFX_EXTDATA (🔗)	This structure is used to describe external memory.

### 7.3.1 Text Functions

**Functions**

	Name	Description
💡	SetFont (🔗)	This function sets the current font used in OutTextXY (🔗)(), OutText (🔗)() and OutChar (🔗)() functions.

	OutChar ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function outputs a character from the current graphic cursor position. OutChar() uses the current active font set with SetFont ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()).
	OutText ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function outputs a string of characters starting at the current graphic cursor position. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero. For Non-Blocking configuration, OutText() may return control to the program due to display device busy status. When this happens zero is returned and OutText() must be called again to continue the outputting of the string. For Blocking configuration, this function always returns a 1. OutText() uses the current active font set with SetFont ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()).
	OutTextXY ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function outputs a string of characters starting at the given x, y position. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero. For Non-Blocking configuration, OutTextXY() may return control to the program due to display device busy status. When this happens zero is returned and OutTextXY() must be called again to continue the outputting of the string. For Blocking configuration, this function always returns a 1. OutTextXY() uses the current active font set with SetFont ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ()).
	GetTextHeight ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro returns the height of the specified font. All characters in a given font table have a constant height.
	GetTextWidth ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function returns the width of the specified string for the specified font. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero.

**Macros**

Name	Description
GetFontOrientation ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns font orientation.
SetFontOrientation ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets font orientation vertical or horizontal.
GFX_Font_GetAntiAliasType ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns the font anti-alias type.
GFX_Font_SetAntiAliasType ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets font anti-alias type to either Translucent or opaque.
XCHAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This macro sets the data type for the strings and characters. There are three types used for XCHAR and the type is selected by adding one of the macros in GraphicsConfig.h.

**Structures**

Name	Description
FONT_HEADER ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Structure describing the font header.
FONT_FLASH ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Structure for font stored in FLASH memory.

**Types**

Name	Description
FONT_EXTERNAL ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Structure for font stored in EXTERNAL memory space. (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS_EPMP)

**Description**

This lists the Primitive level text functions.

### 7.3.1.1 FONT\_HEADER Structure

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    BYTE fontID;
    BYTE extendedGlyphEntry : 1;
    BYTE res1 : 1;
    BYTE bpp : 2;
    BYTE orientation : 2;
    BYTE res2 : 2;
```

```
WORD firstChar;
WORD lastChar;
WORD height;
} FONT_HEADER;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
BYTE fontID;	User assigned value
BYTE extendedGlyphEntry : 1;	Extended Glyph entry flag. When set font has extended glyph feature enabled.
BYTE res1 : 1;	Reserved for future use (must be set to 0)
BYTE bpp : 2;	Actual BPP = 2 <sup>bpp</sup>
BYTE orientation : 2;	Orientation of the character glyphs (0,90,180,270 degrees) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 00 - Normal</li> <li>• 01 - Characters rotated 270 degrees clockwise</li> <li>• 10 - Characters rotated 180 degrees</li> <li>• 11 - Characters rotated 90 degrees clockwise</li> </ul>
BYTE res2 : 2;	Reserved for future use (must be set to 0).
WORD firstChar;	Character code of first character (e.g. 32).
WORD lastChar;	Character code of last character in font (e.g. 3006).
WORD height;	Font characters height in pixels.

**Overview**

Structure describing the font header.

### 7.3.1.2 FONT\_FLASH Structure

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_RESOURCE type;
    const char * address;
} FONT_FLASH;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
GFX_RESOURCE type;	must be FLASH
const char * address;	font image address in FLASH

**Overview**

Structure for font stored in FLASH memory.

### 7.3.1.3 FONT\_EXTERNAL Type

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef GFX_EXTDATA FONT_EXTERNAL;
```

**Overview**

Structure for font stored in EXTERNAL memory space. (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS\_EPMP)

## 7.3.1.4 SetFont Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
void SetFont(
    void * pFont
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
void * pFont	Pointer to the new font image to be used.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Example

See OutTextXY (§)() example.

### Overview

This function sets the current font used in OutTextXY (§)(), OutText (§)() and OutChar (§)() functions.

### Syntax

```
void SetFont(void* pFont)
```

## 7.3.1.5 GetFontOrientation Macro

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
#define GetFontOrientation _fontOrientation
```

### Returns

Return the current font orientation.

- 1 when font orientation is vertical
- 0 when font orientation is horizontal

### Preconditions

none

### Example

```
void PlaceText(SHORT x, SHORT y, WORD space, XCHAR *pString)
{
    SHORT width;

    SetColor(BRIGHTRED);           // set color
    SetFont(pMyFont);             // set to use global font

    // get string width
    width = GetTextWidth(pString, pMyFont);
```

```

// check if it fits
if (space < width)
{
    if (GetFontOrientation() == 0)
        // reset the orientation to vertical
        SetFontOrientation(1);
}
else
{
    if (GetFontOrientation() == 1)
        // reset the orientation to horizontal
        SetFontOrientation(0);
}
// place string in the middle of the screen
OutTextXY(x, y, pString);
}

```

**Overview**

Returns font orientation.

**Syntax**

GetFontOrientation()

### 7.3.1.6 SetFontOrientation Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define SetFontOrientation(orient) _fontOrientation = orient;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
orient	<p>sets font orientation when rendering characters and strings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 when font orientation is vertical</li> <li>• 0 when font orientation is horizontal</li> </ul>

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

See GetFontOrientation (图)() example.

**Overview**

Sets font orientation vertical or horizontal.

**Syntax**

SetFontOrientation(orient)

### 7.3.1.7 GFX\_Font\_GetAntiAliasType Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_Font_GetAntiAliasType
```

**Returns**

Return the current font anti-alias type.

- ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT (■) - (or 1) when font anti-alias is type translucent
- ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE (■) - (or 0) when font anti-alias is type opaque

**Preconditions**

Compiler switch USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS (■) must be enabled

**Overview**

Returns the font anti-alias type.

**Syntax**

```
GFX_Font_GetAntiAliasType()
```

### 7.3.1.8 GFX\_Font\_SetAntiAliasType Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_Font_SetAntiAliasType(transparency)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
transparency	<p>sets font font anti-alias type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ANTIALIAS_TRANSLUCENT (■) - (or 1) when font anti-alias type is translucent</li> <li>• ANTIALIAS_OPAQUE (■) - (or 0) when font anti-alias type is opaque</li> </ul>

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

Compiler switch USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS (■) must be enabled

**Overview**

Sets font anti-alias type to either Translucent or opaque.

**Syntax**

```
GFX_Font_SetAntiAliasType(transparency)
```

### 7.3.1.9 OutChar Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD OutChar(
    XCHAR ch
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
XCHAR ch	The character code to be displayed.

**Side Effects**

After the function is completed, the graphic cursor position is moved in the horizontal direction by the character width. Vertical position of the graphic cursor is not changed.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the character is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the character is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
static WORD counter = 0;
XCHAR ch;

// render characters until null character
while((XCHAR)(ch = *(textString + counter)) != 0)
{
    if(OutChar(ch) == 0)
        return (0);
    counter++;
}
```

**Overview**

This function outputs a character from the current graphic cursor position. OutChar() uses the current active font set with SetFont (█)().

**Syntax**

WORD OutChar(XCHAR (█) ch)

### 7.3.1.10 OutText Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD OutText(
    XCHAR * textString
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
XCHAR * textString	Pointer to the string to be displayed.

**Side Effects**

Current horizontal graphic cursor position will be moved to the end of the text. The vertical graphic cursor position will not be changed.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when string is not yet outputted completely.
- Returns 1 when string is outputted completely.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Example**

```
SetFont(pMyFont);
SetColor(WHITE);
// place the string at the upper left corner of the screen
MoveTo(0, 0);
OutText("Test String!");
```

**Overview**

This function outputs a string of characters starting at the current graphic cursor position. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero. For Non-Blocking configuration, OutText() may return control to the program due to display device busy status. When this happens zero is returned and OutText() must be called again to continue the outputting of the string. For Blocking configuration, this function always returns a 1. OutText() uses the current active font set with SetFont (■)().

**Syntax**

```
WORD OutText(XCHAR (■)* textString)
```

### 7.3.1.11 OutTextXY Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD OutTextXY(
    SHORT x,
    SHORT y,
    XCHAR * textString
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x	Defines the x starting position of the string.
SHORT y	Defines the y starting position of the string.
XCHAR * textString	Pointer to the string to be displayed.

**Side Effects**

Current horizontal graphic cursor position will be moved to the end of the text. The vertical graphic cursor position will not be changed.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when string is not yet outputted completely.
- Returns 1 when string is outputted completely.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Example**

```
void PlaceText(void)
```

```

{
    SHORT width, height;
    static const XCHAR text[] = "Touch screen to continue";

    SetColor(BRIGHTRED);           // set color
    SetFont(pMyFont);             // set font to my font

    // get string width & height
    width = GetTextWidth(text, pMyFont);
    height = GetTextHeight(pMyFont);

    // place string in the middle of the screen
    OutTextXY( (GetMaxX() - width) >> 1,
               (GetMaxY() - height) >> 1,
               (char*)text);
}

```

## Overview

This function outputs a string of characters starting at the given x, y position. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero. For Non-Blocking configuration, OutTextXY() may return control to the program due to display device busy status. When this happens zero is returned and OutTextXY() must be called again to continue the outputting of the string. For Blocking configuration, this function always returns a 1. OutTextXY() uses the current active font set with SetFont (■)().

## Syntax

```
WORD OutTextXY(SHORT x, SHORT y, XCHAR (■)* textString)
```

## 7.3.1.12 GetTextHeight Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
SHORT GetTextHeight(
    void * pFont
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
void * pFont	Pointer to the font image.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the font height.

### Example

See OutTextXY (■)() example.

## Overview

This macro returns the height of the specified font. All characters in a given font table have a constant height.

## Syntax

```
SHORT GetTextHeight(void* pFont)
```

## 7.3.1.13 GetTextWidth Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
SHORT GetTextWidth(
    XCHAR * textString,
    void * pFont
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
XCHAR * textString	Pointer to the string.
void * pFont	Pointer to the font image.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Returns the string width in the specified font.

### Example

See OutTextXY (§)() example.

### Overview

This function returns the width of the specified string for the specified font. The string must be terminated by a line feed or zero.

### Syntax

```
SHORT GetTextWidth(XCHAR (§)* textString, void* pFont)
```

## 7.3.1.14 XCHAR Macro

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
#define XCHAR char
```

### Notes

Only one of the two or none at all are defined in GraphicsConfig.h.

- #define USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR (§)
- #define USE\_UNSIGNED\_XCHAR (§)
- when none are defined, XCHAR defaults to type char.

### Overview

This macro sets the data type for the strings and characters. There are three types used for XCHAR and the type is selected by adding one of the macros in GraphicsConfig.h.

In GraphicsConfig.h	XCHAR	Description
#define USE_MULTIBYTECHAR (§)	#define XCHAR unsigned short	Use multibyte characters (0-2^16 range).

#define USE_UNSIGNED_XCHAR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	#define XCHAR unsigned char	Use unsigned char (0-255 range).
none of the two defined	#define XCHAR char	Use signed char (0-127 range).

### 7.3.1.15 Anti-Alias Type

#### Macros

Name	Description
ANTIALIAS_OPAQUE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Mid colors are calculated only once while rendering each character. This is ideal for rendering text over a constant background.
ANTIALIAS_TRANSLUCENT ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Mid values are calculated for every necessary pixel. This feature is useful when rendering text over an image or when the background is not one flat color.

#### Description

Anti-alias type definitions.

#### 7.3.1.15.1 ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE Macro

##### File

Primitive.h

##### C

```
#define ANTIALIAS_OPAQUE 0
```

#### Description

Mid colors are calculated only once while rendering each character. This is ideal for rendering text over a constant background.

#### 7.3.1.15.2 ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT Macro

##### File

Primitive.h

##### C

```
#define ANTIALIAS_TRANSLUCENT 1
```

#### Description

Mid values are calculated for every necessary pixel. This feature is useful when rendering text over an image or when the background is not one flat color.

---

## 7.3.2 Gradient

#### Enumerations

Name	Description
GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Enumeration for gradient type

## Functions

	Name	Description
➊	BarGradient (❷)	This renders a bar onto the screen, but instead of one color, a gradient is drawn depending on the direction (GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE (❷)), length, and colors chosen. This function is a blocking call.
➋	BevelGradient (❷)	This renders a filled bevel with gradient color on the fill. It works the same as the fillbevel function, except a gradient out of color1 and color2 is drawn depending on the direction (GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE (❷)). This function is a blocking call.

## Structures

Name	Description
GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE (❷)	This structure is used to describe the gradient style.

## Description

Gradients can be drawn dynamically with the Microchip Graphics Library.

### 7.3.2.1 BarGradient Function

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
WORD BarGradient(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    GFX_COLOR color1,
    GFX_COLOR color2,
    DWORD length,
    BYTE direction
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	x position of the left top corner.
SHORT top	y position of the left top corner.
SHORT right	x position of the right bottom corner.
SHORT bottom	y position of the right bottom corner.
GFX_COLOR color1	start color for the gradient
GFX_COLOR color2	end color for the gradient
DWORD length	From 0-100%. How much of a gradient is wanted
BYTE direction	Gradient Direction

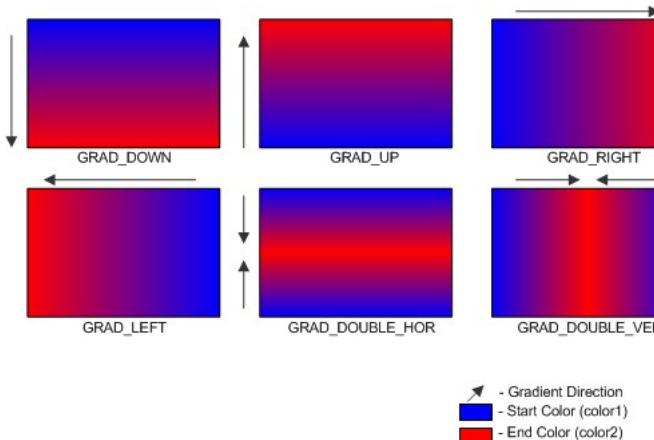
#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Always returns a 1 since it is a blocking function.

## Description



## Notes

none

## Preconditions

USE\_GRADIENT (█) macro must be defined (in GraphicsConfig.h)

## Example

```
// draw a full screen gradient background
// with color transitioning from BRIGHTRED to
// BLACK in the upward direction.

GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE gradScheme;

gradScheme.gradientType      = GRAD_UP;
gradScheme.gradientStartColor = BRIGHTRED;
gradScheme.gradientEndColor  = BLACK;

BarGradient(0,
            0,
            GetMaxX(),
            GetMaxY(),
            gradScheme.gradientStartColor,
            gradScheme.gradientEndColor,
            50,
            //left position
            //top position
            //right position
            //bottom position
            // at the halfway point (50%) of
            // defined by the first 4
            // the color becomes BLACK and
            // the rectangle defined is filled
            // see GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE
            the rectangular area
parameters (full screen),
BLACK color is used until
up
gradScheme.gradientType);
```

## Overview

This renders a bar onto the screen, but instead of one color, a gradient is drawn depending on the direction (GFX\_GRADIENT\_TYPE (█)), length, and colors chosen. This function is a blocking call.

## Syntax

```
WORD BarGradient(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, GFX_COLOR color1, GFX_COLOR color2,
DWORD length, BYTE direction);
```

## 7.3.2.2 BevelGradient Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
WORD BevelGradient(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    SHORT rad,
    GFX_COLOR color1,
    GFX_COLOR color2,
    DWORD length,
    BYTE direction
);
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	x coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT top	y coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT right	x coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT bottom	y coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT rad	defines the radius of the circle, that draws the rounded corners. When rad = 0, the object drawn is a rectangular gradient.
GFX_COLOR color1	start color for the gradient
GFX_COLOR color2	end color for the gradient
DWORD length	From 0-100%. How much of a gradient is wanted
BYTE direction	see GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE (■)

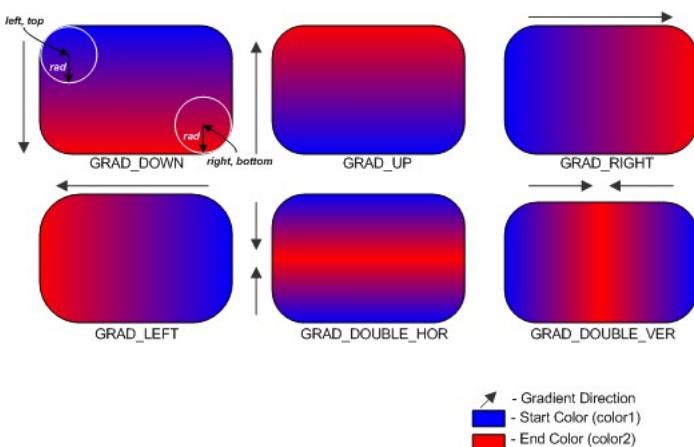
### Side Effects

none

### Returns

Always returns a 1 since it is a blocking function.

### Description



**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

USE\_GRADIENT (■) macro must be defined (in GraphicsConfig.h)

**Overview**

This renders a filled bevel with gradient color on the fill. It works the same as the fillbevel function, except a gradient out of color1 and color2 is drawn depending on the direction (GFX\_GRADIENT\_TYPE (■)). This function is a blocking call.

**Syntax**

```
BevelGradient(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, SHORT rad, GFX_COLOR color1, GFX_COLOR color2, DWORD length, BYTE direction);
```

### 7.3.2.3 GFX\_GRADIENT\_TYPE Enumeration

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef enum {
    GRAD_NONE = 0,
    GRAD_DOWN,
    GRAD_RIGHT,
    GRAD_UP,
    GRAD_LEFT,
    GRAD_DOUBLE_VER,
    GRAD_DOUBLE_HOR
} GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
GRAD_NONE = 0	No Gradients (■) to be drawn
GRAD_DOWN	gradient changes in the vertical direction
GRAD_RIGHT	gradient change in the horizontal direction
GRAD_UP	gradient changes in the vertical direction
GRAD_LEFT	gradient change in the horizontal direction
GRAD_DOUBLE_VER	two gradient transitions in the vertical direction
GRAD_DOUBLE_HOR	two gradient transitions in the horizontal direction

**Overview**

Enumeration for gradient type

### 7.3.2.4 GFX\_GRADIENT\_STYLE Structure

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE gradientType;
    DWORD gradientStartColor;
    DWORD gradientEndColor;
    DWORD gradientLength;
} GFX_GRADIENT_STYLE;
```

## Members

Members	Description
GFX_GRADIENT_TYPE gradientType;	selected the gradient type
DWORD gradientStartColor;	sets the starting color of gradient transition
DWORD gradientEndColor;	sets the ending color of gradient transition
DWORD gradientLength;	defines the length of the gradient transition in pixels

## Overview

This structure is used to describe the gradient style.

## 7.3.3 Line Functions

### Functions

	Name	Description
+	Line ( )	This function draws a line with the current line type from the start point to the end point.

### Macros

Name	Description
LineRel ( )	This macro draws a line with the current line type from the current graphic cursor position to the position defined by displacement.
LineTo ( )	This macro draws a line with the current line type from the current graphic cursor position to the given x, y position.
SetLineThickness ( )	This macro sets sets line thickness to 1 pixel or 3 pixels.
SetLineType ( )	This macro sets the line type to draw.

### Description

This lists the Primitive line text functions.

### 7.3.3.1 Line Function

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
WORD Line(
    SHORT x1,
    SHORT y1,
    SHORT x2,
    SHORT y2
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x1	x coordinate of the start point.
SHORT y1	y coordinate of the start point.
SHORT x2	x coordinate of the end point.
SHORT y2	y coordinate of the end point.

#### Side Effects

The graphic cursor position is moved to the end point of the line.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This function draws a line with the current line type from the start point to the end point.

**Syntax**

```
WORD Line(SHORT x1, SHORT y1, SHORT x2, SHORT y2)
```

### 7.3.3.2 LineRel Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define LineRel(dx, dy) Line(GetX(), GetY(), GetX() + dx, GetY() + dy)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
dX	Displacement from the current x position.
dY	Displacement from the current y position.

**Side Effects**

The graphic cursor position is moved to the end point of the line.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This macro draws a line with the current line type from the current graphic cursor position to the position defined by displacement.

**Syntax**

```
LineRel(dx, dy)
```

### 7.3.3.3 LineTo Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define LineTo(x, y) Line(_cursorX, _cursorY, x, y)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
x	End point x position.
y	End point y position.

**Side Effects**

The graphic cursor position is moved to the end point of the line.

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This macro draws a line with the current line type from the current graphic cursor position to the given x, y position.

**Syntax**

LineTo(x,y)

### 7.3.3.4 SetLineThickness Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define SetLineThickness(lnThickness) _lineThickness = lnThickness;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
InThickness	Line (■) thickness code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• NORMAL_LINE (■) : 1 pixel</li> <li>• THICK_LINE (■) : 3 pixels</li> </ul>

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Overview**

This macro sets line thickness to 1 pixel or 3 pixels.

**Syntax**

SetLineThickness(InThickness)

### 7.3.3.5 SetLineType Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define SetLineType(lnType) _lineType = lnType;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
InType	The type of line to be used. Supported line types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SOLID_LINE (</li> <li>• DOTTED_LINE (</li> <li>• DASHED_LINE (</li> </ul>

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Overview**

This macro sets the line type to draw.

**Syntax**

```
SetLineType(InType)
```

### 7.3.3.6 Line Types

**Macros**

Name	Description
SOLID_LINE ( 	Solid Line (  ) Style
DASHED_LINE ( 	Dashed Line (  ) Style
DOTTED_LINE ( 	Dotted Line (  ) Style

**Description**

Line type definitions.

#### 7.3.3.6.1 SOLID\_LINE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define SOLID_LINE 0
```

**Description**

Solid Line () Style

#### 7.3.3.6.2 DASHED\_LINE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define DASHED_LINE 4
```

**Description**

Dashed Line (■) Style

### 7.3.3.6.3 DOTTED\_LINE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define DOTTED_LINE 1
```

**Description**

Dotted Line (■) Style

### 7.3.3.7 Line Size

**Macros**

Name	Description
NORMAL_LINE (■)	Normal Line (■) (thickness is 1 pixel)
THICK_LINE (■)	Thick Line (■) (thickness is 3 pixels)

**Description**

Line sizes definition.

#### 7.3.3.7.1 NORMAL\_LINE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define NORMAL_LINE 0
```

**Description**

Normal Line (■) (thickness is 1 pixel)

#### 7.3.3.7.2 THICK\_LINE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define THICK_LINE 1
```

**Description**

Thick Line (■) (thickness is 3 pixels)

## 7.3.4 Rectangle Functions

### Functions

	Name	Description
➊	Bar (❷)	This function draws a bar given the left, top and right, bottom corners with the current color.
➋	DrawPoly (❷)	This function draws a polygon with the current line type using the given number of points. The polygon points (polyPoints) are stored in an array arranged in the following order:

### Macros

Name	Description
Rectangle (❷)	This macro draws a rectangle with the given left, top and right, bottom corners. Current line type is used.

### Description

This lists the Primitive level rectangle functions.

### 7.3.4.1 Bar Function

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
WORD Bar (
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	x position of the left top corner.
SHORT top	y position of the left top corner.
SHORT right	x position of the right bottom corner.
SHORT bottom	y position of the right bottom corner.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

#### Overview

This function draws a bar given the left, top and right, bottom corners with the current color.

**Syntax**

```
WORD Bar(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom)
```

### 7.3.4.2 Rectangle Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define Rectangle(left, top, right, bottom) Bevel(left, top, right, bottom, 0)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
left	x position of the left top corner.
top	y position of the left top corner.
right	x position of the right bottom corner.
bottom	y position of the right bottom corner.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This macro draws a rectangle with the given left, top and right, bottom corners. Current line type is used.

**Syntax**

```
Rectangle(left, top, right, bottom)
```

### 7.3.4.3 DrawPoly Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD DrawPoly(
    SHORT numPoints,
    SHORT * polyPoints
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT numPoints	Defines the number of x,y points in the polygon.
SHORT * polyPoints	Pointer to the array of polygon points. The array defines the x,y points of the polygon. The sequence should be x0, y0, x1, y1, x2, y2, ... xn, yn where n is the # of polygon sides.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Example**

```

SHORT OpenShapeXYPoints[6] = {10, 10, 20, 10, 20, 20};
SHORT ClosedShapeXYPoints[8] = {10, 10, 20, 10, 20, 20, 10, 10};

SetColor(WHITE);                                     // set color to WHITE
SetLineType(SOLID_LINE);                            // set line to solid line
SetLineThickness(THICK_LINE);                       // set line to thick line
DrawPoly(6, OpenShapeXYPoints);                     // draw the open shape
DrawPoly(8, ClosedShapeXYPoints);                   // draw the closed shape

```

**Overview**

This function draws a polygon with the current line type using the given number of points. The polygon points (polyPoints) are stored in an array arranged in the following order:

```

SHORT polyPoints[size] = {x0, y0, x1, y1, x2, y2 ... xn, yn};
Where n = # of polygon sides
size = numPoints * 2

```

DrawPoly() draws any shape defined by the polyPoints. The function will just draw the lines connecting all the x,y points enumerated by polyPoints[].

**Syntax**

```
WORD DrawPoly(SHORT numPoints, SHORT* polyPoints)
```

## 7.3.5 Circle Functions

**Functions**

	Name	Description
福彩	Arc (福彩)	Draws the octant arc of the beveled figure with the given centers, radii and octant mask. When octant = 0xFF and the following are true: 1. xL = xR, yT = yB , r1 = 0 and r2 = z, a filled circle is drawn with a radius of z. 2. radii have values (where r1 < r2), a full ring with thickness of (r2-r1) is drawn. 3. xL != xR, yT != yB , r1 = 0 and r2 = 0 (where xR > xL and yB > yT) a rectangle is drawn. xL, yT specifies the left top corner and xR,... more (福彩)
福彩	DrawArc (福彩)	This renders an arc with from startAngle to endAngle with the thickness of r2-r1. The function returns 1 when the arc is rendered successfully and returns a 0 when it is not yet finished. The next call to the function will continue the rendering.
福彩	Bevel (福彩)	Draws a beveled figure on the screen. When x1 = x2 and y1 = y2, a circular object is drawn. When x1 < x2 and y1 < y2 and rad (radius) = 0, a rectangular object is drawn.

	FillBevel (█)	Draws a filled beveled figure on the screen. For a filled circular object $x1 = x2$ and $y1 = y2$ . For a filled rectangular object radius = 0.
---	---------------	---

**Macros**

Name	Description
Circle (█)	This macro draws a circle with the given center and radius.
FillCircle (█)	This macro draws a filled circle. Uses the FillBevel (█)() function.
SetBevelDrawType (█)	This macro sets the fill bevel type to be drawn.

**Description**

This lists the Primitive level circle functions.

### 7.3.5.1 Circle Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define Circle(x, y, radius) Bevel(x, y, x, y, radius)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
x	Center x position.
y	Center y position.
radius	the radius of the circle.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This macro draws a circle with the given center and radius.

**Syntax**

Circle(x, y, radius)

### 7.3.5.2 FillCircle Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define FillCircle(x1, y1, rad) FillBevel(x1, y1, x1, y1, rad)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
x1	x coordinate position of the center of the circle.
y1	y coordinate position of the center of the circle.
rad	defines the radius of the circle.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This macro draws a filled circle. Uses the FillBevel (█)() function.

**Syntax**

```
FillCircle(SHORT x1, SHORT y1, SHORT rad)
```

### 7.3.5.3 Arc Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD Arc(
    SHORT xL,
    SHORT yT,
    SHORT xR,
    SHORT yB,
    SHORT r1,
    SHORT r2,
    BYTE octant
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT xL	x location of the upper left center in the x,y coordinate.
SHORT yT	y location of the upper left center in the x,y coordinate.
SHORT xR	x location of the lower right center in the x,y coordinate.
SHORT yB	y location of the lower right center in the x,y coordinate.
SHORT r1	The smaller radius of the two concentric circles that defines the thickness of the object.
SHORT r2	The larger of radius the two concentric circles that defines the thickness of the object.

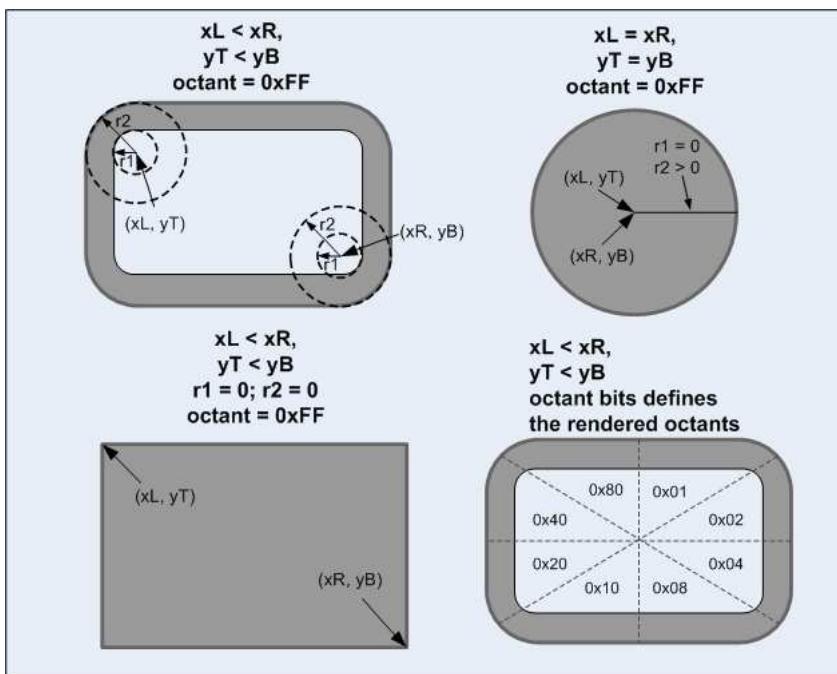
BYTE octant	Bitmask of the octant that will be drawn. Moving in a clockwise direction from $x = 0, y = +\text{radius}$
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>bit0 : first octant</li> <li>bit1 : second octant</li> <li>bit2 : third octant</li> <li>bit3 : fourth octant</li> <li>bit4 : fifth octant</li> <li>bit5 : sixth octant</li> <li>bit6 : seventh octant</li> <li>bit7 : eighth octant</li> </ul>

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the rendering status. 1 - If the rendering was completed and 0 - If the rendering is not yet finished.

**Description****Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Draws the octant arc of the beveled figure with the given centers, radii and octant mask. When  $\text{octant} = 0xFF$  and the following are true:

1.  $xL = xR, yT = yB, r1 = 0$  and  $r2 = z$ , a filled circle is drawn with a radius of  $z$ .
2. radii have values (where  $r1 < r2$ ), a full ring with thickness of  $(r2-r1)$  is drawn.
3.  $xL \neq xR, yT \neq yB, r1 = 0$  and  $r2 = 0$  (where  $xR > xL$  and  $yB > yT$ ) a rectangle is drawn.  $xL, yT$  specifies the left top corner and  $xR, yB$  specifies the right bottom corner.

When  $\text{octant} \neq 0xFF$  the figure drawn is the subsection of the 8 section figure where each non-zero bit of the octant value specifies the octants that will be drawn.

**Syntax**

```
WORD Arc(SHORT xL, SHORT yT, SHORT xR, SHORT yB, SHORT r1, SHORT r2, BYTE octant)
```

**7.3.5.4 DrawArc Function****File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD DrawArc(  
    SHORT cx,  
    SHORT cy,  
    SHORT r1,  
    SHORT r2,  
    SHORT startAngle,  
    SHORT endAngle  
) ;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT cx	the location of the center of the arc in the x direction.
SHORT cy	the location of the center of the arc in the y direction.
SHORT r1	the smaller radius of the arc.
SHORT r2	the larger radius of the arc.
SHORT startAngle	start angle of the arc.
SHORT endAngle	end angle of the arc.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns 1 if the rendering is done, 0 if not yet done.

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This renders an arc from startAngle to endAngle with the thickness of r2-r1. The function returns 1 when the arc is rendered successfully and returns a 0 when it is not yet finished. The next call to the function will continue the rendering.

**Syntax**

```
WORD DrawArc(SHORT cx, SHORT cy, SHORT r1, SHORT r2, SHORT startAngle, SHORT endAngle)
```

**7.3.5.5 Bevel Function****File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD Bevel(  
    SHORT x1,  
    SHORT y1,
```

```
SHORT x2,
SHORT y2,
SHORT rad
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x1	x coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT y1	y coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT x2	x coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT y2	y coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT rad	defines the radius of the circle, that draws the rounded corners.

**Side Effects**

none

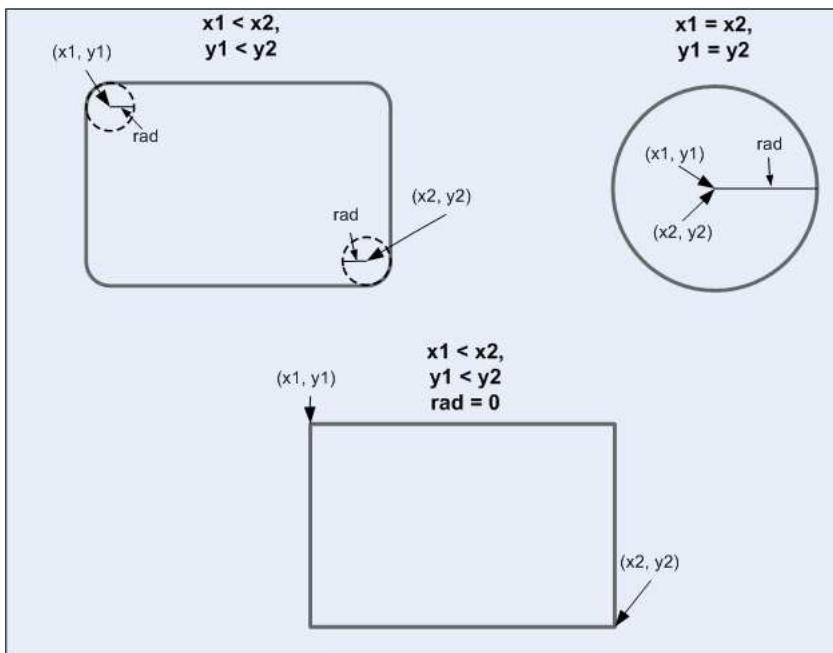
**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Description****Overview**

Draws a beveled figure on the screen. When  $x1 = x2$  and  $y1 = y2$ , a circular object is drawn. When  $x1 < x2$  and  $y1 < y2$  and  $rad$  (radius) = 0, a rectangular object is drawn.

**Syntax**

WORD Bevel(SHORT x1, SHORT y1, SHORT x2, SHORT y2, SHORT rad)

## 7.3.5.6 FillBevel Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
WORD FillBevel(  
    SHORT x1,  
    SHORT y1,  
    SHORT x2,  
    SHORT y2,  
    SHORT rad  
) ;
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x1	x coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT y1	y coordinate position of the upper left center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT x2	x coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT y2	y coordinate position of the lower right center of the circle that draws the rounded corners.
SHORT rad	defines the radius of the circle, that draws the rounded corners.

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

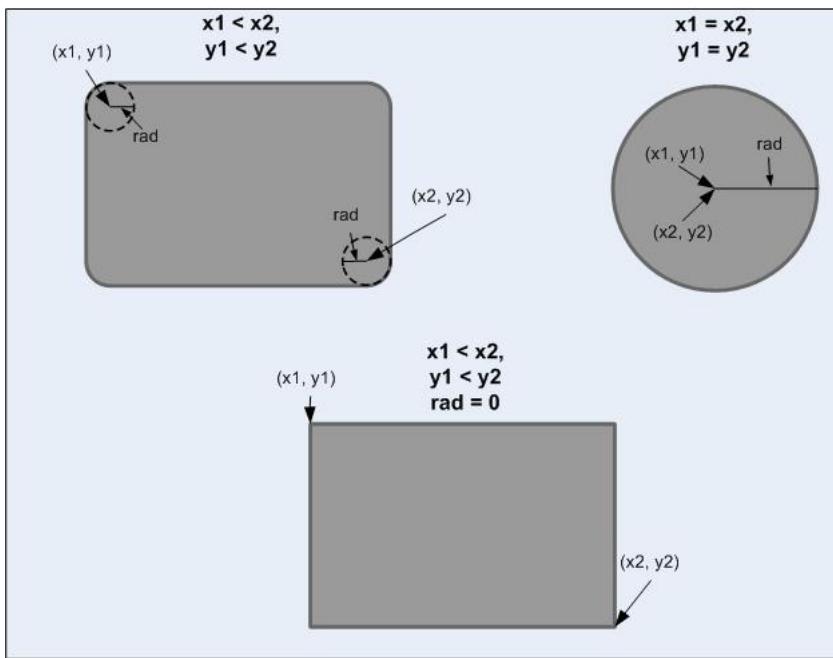
For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the shape is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the shape is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

## Description



## Overview

Draws a filled beveled figure on the screen. For a filled circular object  $x_1 = x_2$  and  $y_1 = y_2$ . For a filled rectangular object  $radius = 0$ .

## Syntax

```
WORD FillBevel(SHORT x1, SHORT y1, SHORT x2, SHORT y2, SHORT rad)
```

## 7.3.5.7 SetBevelDrawType Macro

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
#define SetBevelDrawType(type) (_bevelDrawType = type)
```

### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
type	<p>is set using the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DRAWFULLBEVEL to draw the full shape</li> <li>DRAWTOPBEVEL to draw the upper half portion</li> <li>DRAWBOTTOMBEVEL to draw the lower half portion</li> </ul>

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

## Overview

This macro sets the fill bevel type to be drawn.

**Syntax**

```
SetBevelDrawType(type)
```

## 7.3.6 Graphic Cursor

**Macros**

Name	Description
GetX (█)	This macro returns the current graphic cursor x-coordinate.
GetY (█)	This macro returns the current graphic cursor y-coordinate.
MoveRel (█)	This macro moves the graphic cursor relative to the current location. The given dX and dY displacement can be positive or negative numbers.
MoveTo (█)	This macro moves the graphic cursor to new x,y position.

**Description**

This lists the functions to control the graphics cursor.

### 7.3.6.1 GetX Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define GetX _cursorX
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current graphic cursor x-coordinate.

**Syntax**

```
GetX()
```

### 7.3.6.2 GetY Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define GetY _cursorY
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro returns the current graphic cursor y-coordinate.

**Syntax**

GetX (█)()

### 7.3.6.3 MoveRel Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define MoveRel(dx, dy) \
    _cursorX += dx;      \
    _cursorY += dy;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
dX	Specifies the displacement of the graphic cursor for the horizontal direction.
dY	Specifies the displacement of the graphic cursor for the vertical direction.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro moves the graphic cursor relative to the current location. The given dX and dY displacement can be positive or negative numbers.

**Syntax**

MoveRel(dX,dY)

### 7.3.6.4 MoveTo Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define MoveTo(x, y) \
    _cursorX = x;      \
    _cursorY = y;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
x	Specifies the new x position of the graphic cursor.
y	Specifies the new y position of the graphic cursor.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This macro moves the graphic cursor to new x,y position.

**Syntax**

MoveTo(x,y)

## 7.3.7 Bitmap Functions

**Functions**

	Name	Description
≡	PutImage ( )	This function outputs image starting from left,top coordinates.
≡	GetImageHeight ( )	This function returns the image height.
≡	GetImageWidth ( )	This function returns the image width.

**Structures**

Name	Description
BITMAP_HEADER ( )	Structure describing the bitmap header.

**Description**

This lists the functions to display bitmaps.

### 7.3.7.1 PutImage Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
WORD PutImage(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    void * bitmap,
    BYTE stretch
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	x coordinate position of the left top corner.
SHORT top	y coordinate position of the left top corner.

void * bitmap	pointer to the bitmap.
BYTE stretch	The image stretch factor.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and the image is not yet completely drawn.
- Returns 1 when the image is completely drawn.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Overview**

This function outputs image starting from left,top coordinates.

**Syntax**

```
WORD PutImage(SHORT left, SHORT top, void* bitmap, BYTE stretch)
```

### 7.3.7.2 GetImageHeight Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
SHORT GetImageHeight(
    void * bitmap
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
void * bitmap	Pointer to the bitmap.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the image height in pixels.

**Overview**

This function returns the image height.

**Syntax**

```
SHORT GetImageHeight(void* bitmap)
```

### 7.3.7.3 GetImageWidth Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
SHORT GetImageWidth(
    void * bitmap
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
void * bitmap	Pointer to the bitmap.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the image width in pixels.

**Overview**

This function returns the image width.

**Syntax**

SHORT GetImageWidth(void\* bitmap)

## 7.3.7.4 BITMAP\_HEADER Structure

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    BYTE compression;
    BYTE colorDepth;
    SHORT height;
    SHORT width;
} BITMAP_HEADER;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
BYTE compression;	Compression setting
BYTE colorDepth;	Color depth used
SHORT height;	Image height
SHORT width;	Image width

**Overview**

Structure describing the bitmap header.

## 7.3.7.5 Bitmap Settings

**Macros**

Name	Description
IMAGE_NORMAL (■)	Normal image stretch code
IMAGE_X2 (■)	Stretched image stretch code

**Description**

Bitmap rendering settings.

### 7.3.7.5.1 IMAGE\_NORMAL Macro

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
#define IMAGE_NORMAL 1
```

#### Description

Normal image stretch code

### 7.3.7.5.2 IMAGE\_X2 Macro

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
#define IMAGE_X2 2
```

#### Description

Stretched image stretch code

### 7.3.7.6 Bitmap Source

Bitmap data structure is dependent on the location.

## 7.3.8 External Memory

This lists the external memory access functions and descriptions.

#### Functions

	Name	Description
💡	ExternalMemoryCallback (🔗)	This function must be implemented in the application. The library will call this function each time when the external memory data will be required. The application must copy requested bytes quantity into the buffer provided. Data start address in external memory is a sum of the address in GFX_EXTDATA (🔗) structure and offset.

#### Macros

Name	Description
EXTERNAL_FONT_BUFFER_SIZE (🔗)	This defines the size of the buffer used by font functions to retrieve font data from the external memory. The buffer size can be increased to accommodate large font sizes. The user must be aware of the expected glyph sizes of the characters stored in the font table. To modify the size used, declare this macro in the GraphicsConfig.h file with the desired size.

#### Description

Bitmaps and Fonts can be located in external memory. To refer the data, EXTDATA structure is used:

```
typedef struct _EXTDATA_
{
    TYPE_MEMORY type;           // must be set to EXTERNAL
    WORD        ID;             // memory ID
    DWORD       address;         // bitmap or font image address
```

```
} EXTDATA;
```

where:

- type – shows type of memory used.
- 0 – internal
- 1 - external.
- ID – unique number must be assigned by application to have a way distinguishing memory chips if the application has several of them.
- address – start address of the bitmap or font image in the external memory.

To use the bitmap or font the pointer to EXTDATA structure must be passed into corresponding function (PutImage (█)() or SetFont (█)()). Each time the library will need data it will call special call back function ExternalMemoryCallback (█)().

This function must be implemented in the application. Inside, the application must copy requested bytes quantity into the buffer provided. Data start address can be calculated as a sum of the start image address specified in EXTDATA structure and offset provided.

### 7.3.8.1 ExternalMemoryCallback Function

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
WORD ExternalMemoryCallback(
    GFX_EXTDATA * memory,
    LONG offset,
    WORD nCount,
    void * buffer
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
GFX_EXTDATA * memory	Pointer to the external memory bitmap or font structures (FONT_EXTERNAL (█) or BITMAP_EXTERNAL).
LONG offset	Data offset.
WORD nCount	Number of bytes to be transferred into the buffer.
void * buffer	Pointer to the buffer.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

Returns the number of bytes were transferred.

#### Example

```
// If there are several memories in the system they can be selected by IDs.
// In this example, ID for memory device used is assumed to be 0.
#define X_MEMORY 0

WORD ExternalMemoryCallback(GFX_EXTDATA* memory, LONG offset, WORD nCount, void* buffer) {
    int i;
    long address;

    // Address of the requested data is a start address of the object referred by
    // GFX_EXTDATA structure plus offset
    address = memory->address+offset;

    if(memory->ID == X_MEMORY){
        // MemoryXReadByte() is some function implemented to access external memory.
        // Implementation will be specific to the memory used. In this example
```

```

// it reads byte each time it is called.
i = 0;
while (i < nCount) {
    (BYTE*)buffer = MemoryXReadByte(address++);
    i++;
}
// return the actual number of bytes retrieved
return (i);
}

```

**Overview**

This function must be implemented in the application. The library will call this function each time when the external memory data will be required. The application must copy requested bytes quantity into the buffer provided. Data start address in external memory is a sum of the address in GFX\_EXTDATA (█) structure and offset.

**Syntax**

WORD ExternalMemoryCallback(GFX\_EXTDATA (█)\* memory, LONG offset, WORD nCount, void\* buffer)

## 7.3.8.2 EXTERNAL\_FONT\_BUFFER\_SIZE Macro

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
#define EXTERNAL_FONT_BUFFER_SIZE 600
```

**Overview**

This defines the size of the buffer used by font functions to retrieve font data from the external memory. The buffer size can be increased to accommodate large font sizes. The user must be aware of the expected glyph sizes of the characters stored in the font table. To modify the size used, declare this macro in the GraphicsConfig.h file with the desired size.

## 7.3.8.3 Memory Type

Memory type enumeration to determine the source of data. Used in interpreting bitmap and font from different memory sources.

## 7.3.9 Set Up Functions

**Functions**

	Name	Description
█	ClearDevice (█)	This function clears the screen with the current color and sets the graphic cursor position to (0, 0). Clipping is NOT supported by ClearDevice().
█	InitGraph (█)	This function initializes the display controller, sets the line type to SOLID_LINE (█), sets the screen to all BLACK (█), sets the current drawing color to WHITE (█), sets the graphic cursor position to upper left corner of the screen, sets active and visual pages to page #0, clears the active page and disables clipping. This function should be called before using the Graphics Primitive Layer.

**Description**

This lists the Primitive set up and initialization functions.

## 7.3.9.1 ClearDevice Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
void ClearDevice();
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Example

```
void ClearScreen(void)
{
    SetColor(WHITE);           // set color to WHITE
    ClearDevice();             // set screen to all WHITE
}
```

### Overview

This function clears the screen with the current color and sets the graphic cursor position to (0, 0). Clipping is NOT supported by ClearDevice().

### Syntax

```
void ClearDevice(void)
```

## 7.3.9.2 InitGraph Function

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
void InitGraph();
```

### Side Effects

none

### Returns

none

### Preconditions

none

### Overview

This function initializes the display controller, sets the line type to SOLID\_LINE (█), sets the screen to all BLACK (█), sets the current drawing color to WHITE (█), sets the graphic cursor position to upper left corner of the screen, sets active and visual pages to page #0, clears the active page and disables clipping. This function should be called before using the Graphics Primitive Layer.

### Syntax

```
void InitGraph(void)
```

## 7.3.10 GFX\_RESOURCE Enumeration

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
typedef enum {
    FLASH = 0x0000,
    EXTERNAL = 0x0001,
    FLASH_JPEG = 0x0002,
    EXTERNAL_JPEG = 0x0003,
    RAM = 0x0004,
    EDS_EPMP = 0x0005,
    IMAGE_MBITMAP = 0x0000,
    IMAGE_JPEG = 0x0100,
    COMP_NONE = 0x0000,
    COMP_RLE = 0x1000,
    COMP_IPU = 0x2000
} GFX_RESOURCE;
```

### Members

Members	Description
FLASH = 0x0000	internal flash
EXTERNAL = 0x0001	external memory
FLASH_JPEG = 0x0002	internal flash
EXTERNAL_JPEG = 0x0003	external memory
RAM = 0x0004	RAM
EDS_EPMP = 0x0005	memory in EPMP, base addresses are set in the hardware profile
IMAGE_MBITMAP = 0x0000	data resource is type Microchip bitmap
IMAGE_JPEG = 0x0100	data resource is type JPEG
COMP_NONE = 0x0000	no compression
COMP_RLE = 0x1000	compressed with RLE
COMP_IPU = 0x2000	compressed with DEFLATE (for IPU)

### Overview

Memory type enumeration to determine the source of data. Used in interpreting bitmap and font from different memory sources.

## 7.3.11 GFX\_IMAGE\_HEADER Structure

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_RESOURCE type;
    WORD ID;
    union {
        DWORD extAddress;
        FLASH_BYTEx * progByteAddress;
        FLASH_WORDx * progWordAddress;
        const char * constAddress;
        char * ramAddress;
        __eds__ char * edsAddress;
    }
}
```

```

} LOCATION;
WORD width;
WORD height;
DWORD param1;
DWORD param2;
WORD colorDepth;
} GFX_IMAGE_HEADER;

```

**Members**

Members	Description
GFX_RESOURCE type;	Graphics resource type, determines the type and location of data
WORD ID;	memory ID, user defined value to differentiate between graphics resources of the same type When using EDS_EPMP the following ID values are reserved and used by the Microchip display driver 0 - reserved (do not use) 1 - reserved for base address of EPMP CS1 2 - reserved for base address of EPMP CS2
DWORD extAddress;	generic address
FLASH_BYT* progByteAddress;	for addresses in program section
FLASH_WORD* progWordAddress;	for addresses in program section
const char* constAddress;	for addresses in FLASH
char* ramAddress;	for addresses in RAM
__eds__ char* edsAddress;	for addresses in EDS
WORD width;	width of the image
WORD height;	height of the image
DWORD param1;	Parameters used for the GFX_RESOURCE (图). Depending on the GFX_RESOURCE (图) type definition of param1 can change. For IPU and RLE compressed images, param1 indicates the compressed size of the image.
DWORD param2;	Parameters used for the GFX_RESOURCE (图). Depending on the GFX_RESOURCE (图) type definition of param2 can change. For IPU and RLE compressed images, param2 indicates the uncompressed size of the image.
WORD colorDepth;	color depth of the image

**Overview**

Structure for images stored in various system memory (Flash, External Memory (SPI, Parallel Flash, or memory in EPMP)).

---

## 7.3.12 IMAGE\_FLASH Structure

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```

typedef struct {
    GFX_RESOURCE type;
    FLASH_BYT* address;
} IMAGE_FLASH;

```

**Members**

Members	Description
GFX_RESOURCE type;	must be FLASH
FLASH_BYT* address;	image address in FLASH

**Overview**

Structure for images stored in FLASH memory.

## 7.3.13 IMAGE\_RAM Structure

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_RESOURCE type;
    DWORD * address;
} IMAGE_RAM;
```

### Members

Members	Description
GFX_RESOURCE type;	must be RAM
DWORD * address;	image address in RAM

### Overview

Structure for images stored in RAM memory.

## 7.3.14 GFX\_EXTDATA Structure

### File

Primitive.h

### C

```
typedef struct {
    GFX_RESOURCE type;
    WORD ID;
    DWORD address;
} GFX_EXTDATA;
```

### Members

Members	Description
GFX_RESOURCE type;	Resource type. Valid types are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• EXTERNAL</li> <li>• EDS_EPMP</li> </ul>
WORD ID;	Memory ID, user defined value to differentiate between graphics resources of the same type. When using EDS_EPMP the following ID values are reserved and used by the Microchip display driver <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 - reserved (do not use)</li> <li>• 1 - reserved for base address of EPMP CS1</li> <li>• 2 - reserved for base address of EPMP CS2</li> </ul>
DWORD address;	Data image address (user data, bitmap or font)

### Overview

This structure is used to describe external memory.

# 7.4 Display Device Driver Layer API

Description of Display Device Driver Layer API.

## Modules

Name	Description
Advanced Display Driver Features ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This section lists advanced Display Device Driver Features implemented in select Display Device Driver.

## 7.4.1 Display Device Driver Level Primitives

This lists the Device Level Primitive rendering functions and macros.

### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	GetPixel ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns pixel color at the given x,y coordinate position.
≡	PutPixel ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Puts pixel with the given x,y coordinate position.
≡	SetClip ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Enables/disables clipping.
≡	SetClipRgn ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets clipping region.
≡	TransparentColorEnable ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets current transparent color. PutImage ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() will not render pixels that matches the set transparent color. To enable Transparent Color feature, define the macro USE_TRANSPARENT_COLOR ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) in the GraphicsConfig.h file.
≡	DisplayBrightness ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets the brightness of the display.
≡	CopyBlock ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Copies a block of data from source specified by srcAddr and srcOffset to the destination specified by dstAddr and dstOffset. This is similar to the CopyWindow ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() and but instead of using left, top position of the source and destination, it uses offsets instead. This is a blocking function.
≡	CopyPageWindow ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This is a blocking call. A windows is a rectangular area with the given width and height of a page. The source and destination window can be located in different pages and each page is assumed to have the same dimensions (equal width and height).
≡	CopyWindow ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	A windows is a rectangular area with the given width and height located in the given base source address. The source and destination window can be located in the same base address. If this is the case, then srcAddr = dstAddr. The operation is similar to CopyPageWindow ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() but instead of using page numbers, addresses are used for versatility. This is a blocking function.
≡	SetActivePage ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets active graphic page.
≡	SetVisualPage ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets graphic page to display.

### Macros

Name	Description
GetColor ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns current drawing color.
SetColor ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Sets current drawing color.
GetMaxX ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns maximum horizontal coordinate.
GetMaxY ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns maximum vertical coordinate.
GetClipBottom ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns bottom clipping border.
GetClipLeft ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns left clipping border.
GetClipRight ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns right clipping border.
GetClipTop ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Returns top clipping border.

CLIP_DISABLE (🔗)	Disables clipping.
CLIP_ENABLE (🔗)	Enables clipping.
TransparentColorDisable (🔗)	Disables the transparent color function.
GetTransparentColorStatus (🔗)	Returns the current transparent color function enable status.
GetTransparentColor (🔗)	Returns the current transparent color value.
TRANSPARENT_COLOR_DISABLE (🔗)	Check of transparent color is not performed
TRANSPARENT_COLOR_ENABLE (🔗)	Check pixel if color is equal to transparent color, if equal do not render pixel
GetPageAddress (🔗)	Returns the address of the given page.

### 7.4.1.1 GetPixel Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
GFX_COLOR GetPixel(
    SHORT x,
    SHORT y
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x	x position of the pixel.
SHORT y	y position of the pixel.

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

pixel color

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Returns pixel color at the given x,y coordinate position.

#### Syntax

```
GFX_COLOR GetPixel(SHORT x, SHORT y)
```

### 7.4.1.2 PutPixel Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void PutPixel(
    SHORT x,
    SHORT y
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT x	x position of the pixel.

SHORT y	y position of the pixel.
---------	--------------------------

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Puts pixel with the given x,y coordinate position.

**Syntax**

void PutPixel(SHORT x, SHORT y)

### 7.4.1.3 GetColor Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

#define GetColor \_color

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Color where coding is based on GFX\_COLOR definition. GFX\_COLOR definition is based on the color depth (COLOR\_DEPTH (█)) used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns current drawing color.

**Syntax**

GetColor()

### 7.4.1.4 SetColor Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

#define SetColor(color) \_color = (color)

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
color	Color coding is based on GFX_COLOR definition. GFX_COLOR definition is based on the color depth (COLOR_DEPTH (█)) used.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets current drawing color.

**Syntax**

```
SetColor(color)
```

## 7.4.1.5 GetMaxX Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetMaxX (DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION - 1)
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Maximum horizontal coordinate.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
// Create a window that will occupy the whole screen.
WndCreate(0xFF, // ID
          0,0,
          GetMaxX(),GetMaxY(), // dimension
          WND_DRAW, // will be displayed after creation
          (void*)&mchpIcon, // use icon used
          pText, // set to text pointed to by pText
          NULL); // use default scheme
```

**Overview**

Returns maximum horizontal coordinate.

**Syntax**

```
GetMaxX()
```

## 7.4.1.6 GetMaxY Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetMaxY (DISP_VER_RESOLUTION - 1)
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Maximum vertical coordinate.

**Preconditions**

none

**Example**

(see GetMaxX (回)() example.

**Overview**

Returns maximum vertical coordinate.

**Syntax**

GetMaxY()

## 7.4.1.7 SetClip Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void SetClip(
    BYTE control
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
BYTE control	<p>Enables or disables the clipping.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CLIP_DISABLE (回): Disable clipping</li> <li>CLIP_ENABLE (回): Enable clipping</li> </ul>

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Enables/disables clipping.

**Syntax**

SetClip(control)

## 7.4.1.8 SetClipRgn Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void SetClipRgn(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	Defines the left clipping region border.
SHORT top	Defines the top clipping region border.
SHORT right	Defines the right clipping region border.
SHORT bottom	Defines the bottom clipping region border.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets clipping region.

**Syntax**

```
SetClipRgn(left, top, right, bottom)
```

## 7.4.1.9 GetClipBottom Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetClipBottom _clipBottom
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Bottom clipping border.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns bottom clipping border.

**Syntax**

```
GetClipBottom()
```

## 7.4.1.10 GetClipLeft Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetClipLeft _clipLeft
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Left clipping border.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns left clipping border.

**Syntax**

```
GetClipLeft()
```

## 7.4.1.11 GetClipRight Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetClipRight _clipRight
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Right clipping border.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns right clipping border.

**Syntax**

```
GetClipRight()
```

## 7.4.1.12 GetClipTop Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetClipTop _clipTop
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Top clipping border.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns top clipping border.

**Syntax**

```
GetClipTop()
```

## 7.4.1.13 CLIP\_DISABLE Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define CLIP_DISABLE 0      // Disables clipping.
```

**Description**

Disables clipping.

## 7.4.1.14 CLIP\_ENABLE Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define CLIP_ENABLE 1      // Enables clipping.
```

**Description**

Enables clipping.

## 7.4.1.15 TransparentColorEnable Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void TransparentColorEnable(
    GFX_COLOR color
);
```

**Input Parameters**

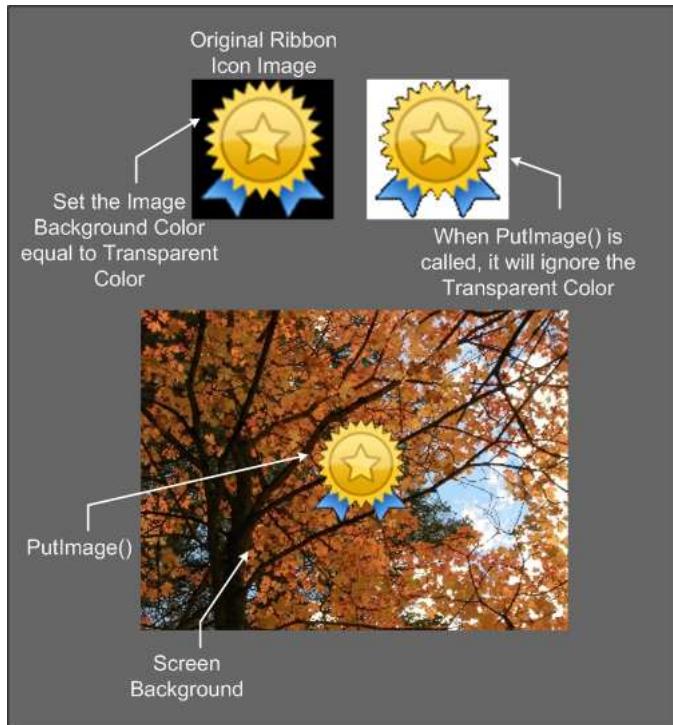
Input Parameters	Description
GFX_COLOR color	Chosen transparent color.

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

none

**Description****Preconditions**

none

**Example**

```
TransparentColorEnable(BLACK);
PutImage(0,0, (void*)&ScreenBackground);
PutImage(0,0, (void*)&RibbonIcon);
```

**Overview**

Sets current transparent color. PutImage (¶) will not render pixels that matches the set transparent color. To enable Transparent Color feature, define the macro USE\_TRANSPARENT\_COLOR (¶) in the GraphicsConfig.h file.

**Syntax**

```
void TransparentColorEnable(GFX_COLOR color)
```

## 7.4.1.16 TransparentColorDisable Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define TransparentColorDisable _colorTransparentEnable = TRANSPARENT_COLOR_DISABLE;
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Disables the transparent color function.

**Syntax**

```
TransparentColorDisable()
```

## 7.4.1.17 GetTransparentColorStatus Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetTransparentColorStatus _colorTransparentEnable
```

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

Returns the current transparent color function enable status

0 - Transparent color function is disabled.  
1 - Transparent color function is enabled.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns the current transparent color function enable status.

**Syntax**

```
GetTransparentColorStatus()
```

## 7.4.1.18 GetTransparentColor Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetTransparentColor _colorTransparent
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the current transparent color used.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns the current transparent color value.

**Syntax**

```
GetTransparentColor()
```

**7.4.1.19 TRANSPARENT\_COLOR\_DISABLE Macro****File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define TRANSPARENT_COLOR_DISABLE 0 // Check of transparent color is not performed
```

**Description**

Check of transparent color is not performed

**7.4.1.20 TRANSPARENT\_COLOR\_ENABLE Macro****File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define TRANSPARENT_COLOR_ENABLE 1 // Check pixel if color is equal to transparent color,  
if equal do not render pixel
```

**Description**

Check pixel if color is equal to transparent color, if equal do not render pixel

**7.4.1.21 DisplayBrightness Function****File**

SSD1926.h

**C**

```
void DisplayBrightness(  
    WORD level  
) ;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD level	Brightness level. Valid values are 0 to 100. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0: brightness level is zero or display is turned off</li> <li>• 1: brightness level is maximum</li> </ul>

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets the brightness of the display.

**Syntax**

```
void DisplayBrightness(WORD level)
```

## 7.4.1.22 GetPageAddress Macro

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
#define GetPageAddress(page) (_PageTable[page])
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Address in memory of the given page number. The number of pages is dictated by GFX\_DRV\_PAGE\_COUNT value defined in the hardware profile. GFX\_DRV\_PAGE\_COUNT is not mandatory. Drivers that do not have enough memory for paging may not define this constant. If GFX\_DRV\_PAGE\_COUNT is not defined, all API's related to paging operation is will not be available.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns the address of the given page.

**Syntax**

```
GetPageAddress(page)
```

## 7.4.1.23 CopyBlock Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
WORD CopyBlock(
    DWORD srcAddr,
    DWORD dstAddr,
    DWORD srcOffset,
    DWORD dstOffset,
    WORD width,
    WORD height
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD srcAddr	the base address of the data to be moved
DWORD dstAddr	the base address of the new location of the moved data
DWORD srcOffset	offset of the data to be moved with respect to the source base address.

DWORD dstOffset	offset of the new location of the moved data respect to the source base address.
WORD width	width of the block of data to be moved
WORD height	height of the block of data to be moved

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Copies a block of data from source specified by srcAddr and srcOffset to the destination specified by dstAddr and dstOffset. This is similar to the CopyWindow (█)() and but instead of using left, top position of the source and destination, it uses offsets instead. This is a blocking function.

**Syntax**

```
WORD CopyBlock(DWORD srcAddr, DWORD dstAddr, DWORD srcOffset, DWORD dstOffset, WORD width, WORD height)
```

## 7.4.1.24 CopyPageWindow Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void CopyPageWindow(
    BYTE srcPage,
    BYTE dstPage,
    \ WORD srcX,
    WORD srcY,
    \ WORD dstX,
    WORD dstY,
    \ WORD width,
    WORD height
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
BYTE srcPage	page number of the source window,
BYTE dstPage	page number of the destination window,
\ WORD srcX	x location of the left top corner of the source window respect to the srcPage.
WORD srcY	y location of the left top corner of the source window respect to the srcPage.
\ WORD dstX	x location of the left top corner of the destination window respect to the dstPage.
WORD dstY	y location of the left top corner of the destination window respect to the dstPage.
\ WORD width	the width in pixels of the window to copy
WORD height	the height in pixels of the window to copy

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

None

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This is a blocking call. A windows is a rectangular area with the given width and height of a page. The source and destination window can be located in different pages and each page is assumed to have the same dimensions (equal width and height).

**Syntax**

```
CopyPageWindow(srcPage, dstPage, srcX, srcY, dstX, dstY, width, height)
```

## 7.4.1.25 CopyWindow Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
WORD CopyWindow(
    DWORD srcAddr,
    DWORD dstAddr,
    \ WORD srcX,
    WORD srcY,
    \ WORD dstX,
    WORD dstY,
    \ WORD width,
    WORD height
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD srcAddr	Base Address of the source window,
\ WORD srcX	x location of the left top corner of the source window respect to the srcPage.
WORD srcY	y location of the left top corner of the source window respect to the srcPage.
\ WORD dstX	x location of the left top corner of the destination window respect to the dstPage.
WORD dstY	y location of the left top corner of the destination window respect to the dstPage.
\ WORD width	the width in pixels of the window to copy
WORD height	the height in pixels of the window to copy
dstPage	Base Address of the destination window,

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

None

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

A windows is a rectangular area with the given width and height located in the given base source address. The source and destination window can be located in the same base address. If this is the case, then srcAddr = dstAddr. The operation is similar to CopyPageWindow (¶)() but instead of using page numbers, addresses are used for versatility. This is a blocking function.

**Syntax**

```
WORD CopyWindow( DWORD srcAddr, DWORD dstAddr, WORD srcX, WORD srcY, WORD dstX, WORD dstY, WORD width, WORD height)
```

## 7.4.1.26 SetActivePage Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void SetActivePage(
    WORD page
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD page	Graphic page number.

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Description**

Functions: SetActivePage(page)

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets active graphic page.

## 7.4.1.27 SetVisualPage Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void SetVisualPage(
    WORD page
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
WORD page	Graphic page number

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Description**

Functions: SetVisualPage(page)

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Sets graphic page to display.

## 7.4.1.28 Color Definition

The device driver must also implement the definition of standard color set based on the color format used.

**Macros**

Name	Description
BLACK (█)	not USE_PALETTE (█)
BLUE (█)	This is macro BLUE.
BRIGHTBLUE (█)	This is macro BRIGHTBLUE.
BRIGHTCYAN (█)	This is macro BRIGHTCYAN.
BRIGHTGREEN (█)	This is macro BRIGHTGREEN.
BRIGHTMAGENTA (█)	This is macro BRIGHTMAGENTA.
BRIGHTRED (█)	This is macro BRIGHTRED.
BRIGHTYELLOW (█)	This is macro BRIGHTYELLOW.
BROWN (█)	This is macro BROWN.
CYAN (█)	This is macro CYAN.
DARKGRAY (█)	This is macro DARKGRAY.
GRAY0 (█)	This is macro GRAY0.
GRAY1 (█)	This is macro GRAY1.
GRAY2 (█)	This is macro GRAY2.
GRAY3 (█)	This is macro GRAY3.
GRAY4 (█)	This is macro GRAY4.
GRAY5 (█)	This is macro GRAY5.
GRAY6 (█)	This is macro GRAY6.
GREEN (█)	This is macro GREEN.
LIGHTBLUE (█)	This is macro LIGHTBLUE.
LIGHTCYAN (█)	This is macro LIGHTCYAN.
LIGHTGRAY (█)	This is macro LIGHTGRAY.
LIGHTGREEN (█)	This is macro LIGHTGREEN.
LIGHTMAGENTA (█)	This is macro LIGHTMAGENTA.
LIGHTRED (█)	This is macro LIGHTRED.
MAGENTA (█)	This is macro MAGENTA.
RED (█)	This is macro RED.
WHITE (█)	This is macro WHITE.
YELLOW (█)	This is macro YELLOW.

**Description**

The following lists sample color definitions for a 16-bpp color encoding.

### 7.4.1.28.1 BLACK Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BLACK RGBConvert(0, 0, 0)
```

**Description**

not USE\_PALETTE (■)

### 7.4.1.28.2 BLUE Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BLUE RGBConvert(0, 0, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro BLUE.

### 7.4.1.28.3 BRIGHTBLUE Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTBLUE RGBConvert(0, 0, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTBLUE.

### 7.4.1.28.4 BRIGHTCYAN Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTCYAN RGBConvert(0, 255, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTCYAN.

### 7.4.1.28.5 BRIGHTGREEN Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTGREEN RGBConvert(0, 255, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTGREEN.

### 7.4.1.28.6 BRIGHTMAGENTA Macro

**File**

gfxcolors.h

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTMAGENTA RGBConvert(255, 0, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTMAGENTA.

### 7.4.1.28.7 BRIGHTRED Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTRED RGBConvert(255, 0, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTRED.

### 7.4.1.28.8 BRIGHTYELLOW Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define BRIGHTYELLOW RGBConvert(255, 255, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro BRIGHTYELLOW.

### 7.4.1.28.9 BROWN Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define BROWN RGBConvert(255, 128, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro BROWN.

### 7.4.1.28.10 CYAN Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define CYAN RGBConvert(0, 128, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro CYAN.

### 7.4.1.28.11 DARKGRAY Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define DARKGRAY RGBConvert(64, 64, 64)
```

**Description**

This is macro DARKGRAY.

### 7.4.1.28.12 GRAY0 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY0 RGBConvert(224, 224, 224)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY0.

### 7.4.1.28.13 GRAY1 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY1 RGBConvert(192, 192, 192)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY1.

### 7.4.1.28.14 GRAY2 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY2 RGBConvert(160, 160, 160)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY2.

### 7.4.1.28.15 GRAY3 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY3 RGBConvert(128, 128, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY3.

### 7.4.1.28.16 GRAY4 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY4 RGBConvert(96, 96, 96)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY4.

### 7.4.1.28.17 GRAY5 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY5 RGBConvert(64, 64, 64)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY5.

### 7.4.1.28.18 GRAY6 Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GRAY6 RGBConvert(32, 32, 32)
```

**Description**

This is macro GRAY6.

### 7.4.1.28.19 GREEN Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define GREEN RGBConvert(0, 128, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro GREEN.

### 7.4.1.28.20 LIGHTBLUE Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTBLUE RGBConvert(128, 128, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTBLUE.

### 7.4.1.28.21 LIGHTCYAN Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTCYAN RGBConvert(128, 255, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTCYAN.

### 7.4.1.28.22 LIGHTGRAY Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTGRAY RGBConvert(128, 128, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTGRAY.

### 7.4.1.28.23 LIGHTGREEN Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTGREEN RGBConvert(128, 255, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTGREEN.

### 7.4.1.28.24 LIGHTMAGENTA Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTMAGENTA RGBConvert(255, 128, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTMAGENTA.

### 7.4.1.28.25 LIGHTRED Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define LIGHTRED RGBConvert(255, 128, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro LIGHTRED.

### 7.4.1.28.26 MAGENTA Macro

**File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define MAGENTA RGBConvert(128, 0, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro MAGENTA.

**7.4.1.28.27 RED Macro****File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define RED RGBConvert(128, 0, 0)
```

**Description**

This is macro RED.

**7.4.1.28.28 WHITE Macro****File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define WHITE RGBConvert(255, 255, 255)
```

**Description**

This is macro WHITE.

**7.4.1.28.29 YELLOW Macro****File**

```
gfxcolors.h
```

**C**

```
#define YELLOW RGBConvert(255, 255, 128)
```

**Description**

This is macro YELLOW.

**7.4.2 Display Device Driver Control**

This lists the device control functions and macros.

**Functions**

	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
	IsDeviceBusy (■)	Returns non-zero if LCD controller is busy (previous drawing operation is not completed).
	ResetDevice (■)	Initializes LCD module.

### 7.4.2.1 IsDeviceBusy Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
WORD IsDeviceBusy();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Busy status.

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns non-zero if LCD controller is busy (previous drawing operation is not completed).

**Syntax**

```
IsDeviceBusy()
```

### 7.4.2.2 ResetDevice Function

**File**

DisplayDriver.h

**C**

```
void ResetDevice();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Initializes LCD module.

**Syntax**

```
void ResetDevice()
```

---

## 7.4.3 Advanced Display Driver Features

This section lists advanced Display Device Driver Features implemented in select Display Device Driver.

### 7.4.3.1 Alpha Blending

The following APIs are used to implement alpha blending features in the Epson S1D13517 Controller.

#### Functions

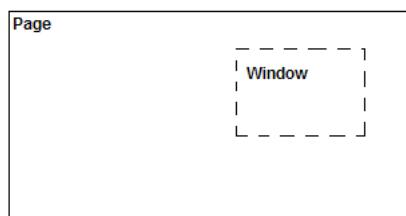
	Name	Description
☞	AlphaBlendWindow ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This alphablends a foreground and a background stored in frames to a destination window. The function uses windows insides frames. Each window shares the same width and height parameters.
☞	GFXGetPageOriginAddress ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This function calculates the address of a certain 0,0 location of a page in memory
☞	GFXGetPageXYAddress ( <a href="#">[?]</a> )	This function calculates the address of a certain x,y location in memory

#### Module

Advanced Display Driver Features ([\[?\]](#))

#### Description

Alpha Blending in Epson Controller uses blocks of pixels in the memory called Windows. A window can be any rectangular area in a display buffer. The display buffer is also considered as a page. For a QVGA display buffer a page would be 320x240 pixels. A window is a certain width and height contained inside a page.

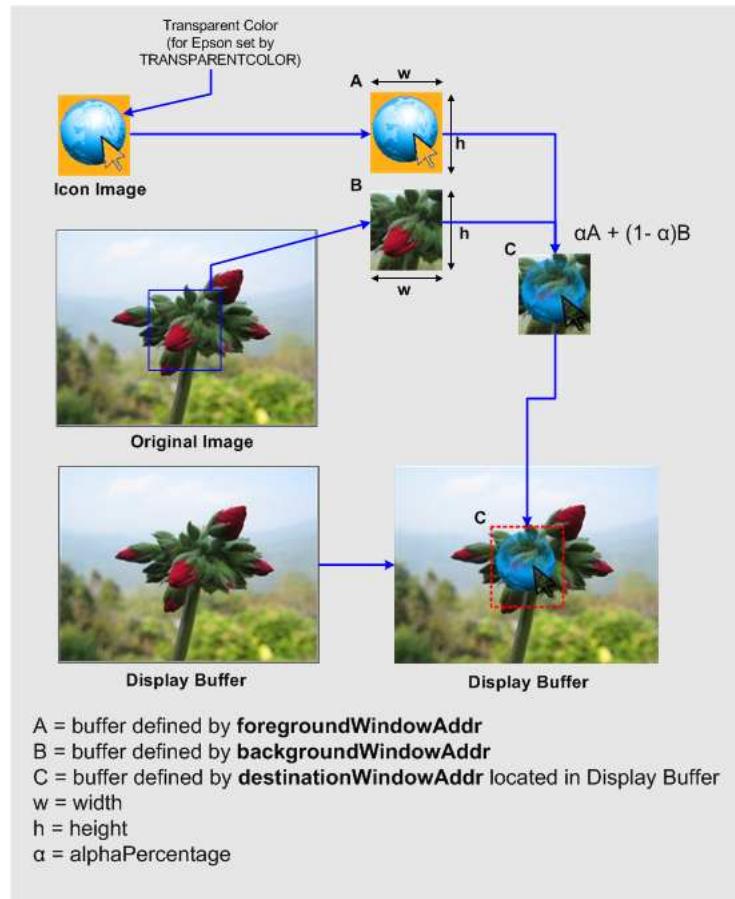


Alpha blending equation:

$$\text{OutPut Window} (\text{[?]} ) = \text{Foreground Window} (\text{[?]} ) * (\text{Alpha}) + \text{Background Window} (\text{[?]} ) * (1-\text{Alpha})$$

when done in software requires a lot of CPU bandwith. Epson Controller implements alpha blending in hardware which offloads the CPU.

The Display Driver Layer of the Graphics Library utilizes the Epson Controller alpha blending through the AlphaBlendWindow ([\[?\]](#))() function. Three windows are specified with equal widths and heights. An alpha parameter is passed to define the level of alpha blending. The logical flow of the operation is shown below:



An icon image with a given width (w) and height (h) is needed to be alpha blended into the display buffer.

- Buffer A is allocated in memory and its location set by `foregroundWindowAddr`
- Buffer B is allocated in memory and its location set by `backgroundWindowAddr` and
- Buffer C is allocated in memory and its location set by `destinationWindowAddr`. Note that the destination window can be located within the display buffer. Doing this removes an intermediate step after `AlphaBlendWindow()` call to put the result of alpha blend in the display buffer.

The final location of the icon on the Display Buffer is used to locate the affected pixels in the Display Buffer. These affected pixels are copied into Buffer B while Buffer A is filled up with the Icon Image. Once Buffers A and B are ready they are alpha blended to Buffer C. Buffer C is then copied to the Display Buffer.

Note that the Icon Image has a background color of ORANGE. To have the effect of the final output Display Buffer, set the Epson Controllers transparent color to ORANGE. This is set in the `TRANSPARENTCOLOR` macro defined in the Epson S1D13517 Driver. This `TRANSPARENTCOLOR` macro is not to be confused with the `TransparentColorEnable()` function of the Display Device Driver Level Primitives. `TRANSPARENTCOLOR` is set at build time. In the future release of the Epson driver, this will be converted to use the `TransparentColorEnable()` function.

### 7.4.3.1.1 AlphaBlendWindow Function

#### File

Primitive.h

#### C

```
void AlphaBlendWindow(
    DWORD foregroundWindowAddr,
    DWORD backgroundWindowAddr,
    DWORD destinationWindowAddr,
    WORD width,
```

```
WORD height,
BYTE alphaPercentage
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD foregroundWindowAddr	the starting address of the foreground window
DWORD backgroundWindowAddr	the starting address of the background window
DWORD destinationWindowAddr	the starting address of the destination window
WORD width	the width of the alpha blend window
WORD height	the height of the alpha blend window
BYTE alphaPercentage	the amount of transparency to give the foreground Window (█)

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This alphablends a foreground and a background stored in frames to a destination window. The function uses windows insides frames. Each window shares the same width and height parameters.

**Syntax**

```
void AlphaBlendWindow(DWORD foregroundWindowAddr, DWORD backgroundWindowAddr, DWORD
destinationWindowAddr, WORD width, WORD height, BYTE alphaPercentage)
```

### 7.4.3.1.2 GFXGetPageOriginAddress Function

**File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
DWORD GFXGetPageOriginAddress(
    SHORT pageNumber
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT pageNumber	the page number

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

The address of the start of a certain page in memory

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function calculates the address of a certain 0,0 location of a page in memory

**Syntax**

```
DWORD GFXGetPageOriginAddress(SHORT pageNumber)
```

**7.4.3.1.3 GFXGetPageXYAddress Function****File**

Primitive.h

**C**

```
DWORD GFXGetPageXYAddress(
    SHORT pageNumber,
    WORD x,
    WORD y
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT pageNumber	the page number
WORD x	the x (horizontal) offset from 0,0 of the pagenumber
WORD y	the y (vertical) offset from the 0,0 of the pagenumber

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

The address of an XY position of a certain page in memory

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

This function calculates the address of a certain x,y location in memory

**Syntax**

```
DWORD GFXGetPageXYAddress(SHORT pageNumber, WORD x, WORD y)
```

**7.4.3.2 Transitions**

This section describes screen transition effect when changing screens.

**Enumerations**

Name	Description
GFX_TRANSITION_DIRECTION (图)	Direction enumeration to determine the direction of the selected GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (图).

GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Transition type enumeration to determine the type of the transition. Each type will require specific parameters when setting up the transition operation (GFXSetupTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() or GFXTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )()).
---	---

## Functions

	Name	Description
💡	GFXTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This immediately executes the transition effect using the GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) and the given parameters.
💡	GFXSetupTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This sets up the transition effect using the GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) and the given parameters. The actual transition execution will occur when GFXExecutePendingTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() is called. When DOUBLE_BUFFERING is enabled, GFXExecutePendingTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )() is executed after the current screen is fully rendered.
💡	GFXExecutePendingTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function executes the transition that was set up by GFXSetupTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )(). Status of the transition is returned to indicate if the transition was executed or not. This function is used by the double buffering feature (USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )) to perform transition operation after the current screen is fully rendered. This function assumes that the source page and destination page are already set up.
💡	GFXIsTransitionPending ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	This function returns the status of a pending transition, set up by GFXSetupTransition ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )(), waiting to be executed.

## Module

Advanced Display Driver Features ([🔗](#))

### Description

Applications often require some transition effects while changing screens in order to enhance the look and feel which can be achieved by using Transition APIs provided with the Microchip Graphics Library. Refer to Appendix C of the application note [AN1368: Developing Embedded Graphics Applications using PIC® Microcontrollers with Integrated Graphics Controller](#) for a graphical illustration of how transitions can be achieved.

In order to translate a new screen, the new screen has to be developed in a separate buffer and has to be copied to the frame buffer (visible display buffer) part by part. The way the new screen data is copied into the frame buffer determines the transition effect. A number of transition effects can be achieved by using the API: GFXTransition ([🔗](#))(left, top, right, bottom, type, srcpageaddr, destpageaddr, delay\_ms, param1, param2). This API copies the rectangular area defined by left, top, right and bottom from address defined by srcpageaddr to the destpageaddr as per the transition defined by type, param1 and param2. The srcpageaddr should contain the new screen data and the destpageaddr must be the frame buffer address. The speed of the transition can be configured by the parameter delay\_ms which determines the delay between each copy operations. Note that this API must be called only at the end of GOLDrawCallback ([🔗](#))() function in order to ensure that the new screen is fully created in the RAM.

If double buffering is enabled, then using transitions is made easier by another API: GFXSetupTransition ([🔗](#))(left, top, right, bottom, type, delay\_ms, param1, param2). This API can be called immediately after creating the new screen and the graphics library will store the request and initiate the transition after the new screen is fully created in the RAM. Note that this API doesn't have address parameters as the address of draw-buffer is already known to the double buffering subsystem of the graphics engine.

### 7.4.3.2.1 GFXTransition Function

#### File

Transitions.h

#### C

```
BYTE GFXTransition(
```

```

    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE type,
    DWORD srcpageaddr,
    DWORD destpageaddr,
    WORD delay_ms,
    WORD param1,
    WORD param2
);

```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	left x coordinate
SHORT top	top y coordinate
SHORT right	right x coordinate
SHORT bottom	bottom y coordinate
GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE type	Transition type
DWORD srcpageaddr	Source page address for the transition
DWORD destpageaddr	Destination page address for the transition
WORD delay_ms	Delay in milli seconds between redraws in the screen while executing the transition
WORD param1	Transition-type specific parameter
WORD param2	Transition-type specific parameter

**Returns**

Returns status of transition

- 0 : Transition executed successfully
- -1 : Transition not executed

**Overview**

This immediately executes the transition effect using the GFX\_TRANSITION\_TYPE (■) and the given parameters.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE GFXTransition(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (■) type, DWORD srcpageaddr, DWORD destpageaddr, WORD delay_ms, WORD param1, WORD param2)
```

**7.4.3.2.2 GFXSetupTransition Function****File**

Transitions.h

**C**

```

BYTE GFXSetupTransition(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE type,
    WORD delay_ms,
    WORD param1,
    WORD param2
);

```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	left x coordinate

SHORT top	top y coordinate
SHORT right	right x coordinate
SHORT bottom	bottom y coordinate
GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE type	Transition type
WORD delay_ms	Delay in milli seconds between redraws in the screen while executing the transition
WORD param1	Transition-type specific parameter
WORD param2	Transition-type specific parameter

**Returns**

Returns success of the setup

- 0 : Parameters successfully saved for the new transition
- -1 : Parameters not saved, there is a pending transition

**Overview**

This sets up the transition effect using the GFX\_TRANSITION\_TYPE (■) and the given parameters. The actual transition execution will occur when GFXExecutePendingTransition (■)() is called. When DOUBLE\_BUFFERING is enabled, GFXExecutePendingTransition (■)() is executed after the current screen is fully rendered.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE GFXSetupTransition(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (■) type,
WORD delay_ms, WORD param1, WORD param2)
```

### 7.4.3.2.3 GFXExecutePendingTransition Function

**File**

Transitions.h

**C**

```
BYTE GFXExecutePendingTransition(
    DWORD srcpageaddr,
    DWORD destpageaddr
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD srcpageaddr	Source page address for the transition
DWORD destpageaddr	Destination page address for the transition

**Returns**

Returns status of transition

- 0 : Transition executed successfully
- -1 : Transition not executed

**Overview**

This function executes the transition that was set up by GFXSetupTransition (■)(). Status of the transition is returned to indicate if the transition was executed or not. This function is used by the double buffering feature (USE\_DOUBLE\_BUFFERING (■)) to perform transition operation after the current screen is fully rendered. This function assumes that the source page and destination page are already set up.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE GFXExecutePendingTransition(DWORD srcpageaddr, DWORD destpageaddr)
```

### 7.4.3.2.4 GFXIsTransitionPending Function

#### File

Transitions.h

#### C

```
BYTE GFXIsTransitionPending();
```

#### Returns

Returns transition status

- 0 : No pending transition
- 1 : There is a pending transition

#### Overview

This function returns the status of a pending transition, set up by GFXSetupTransition (↗)(), waiting to be executed.

#### Syntax

```
BYTE GFXIsTransitionPending(void)
```

### 7.4.3.2.5 GFX\_TRANSITION\_DIRECTION Enumeration

#### File

Transitions.h

#### C

```
typedef enum {
    LEFT_TO_RIGHT = 0,
    RIGHT_TO_LEFT,
    TOP_TO_BOTTOM,
    BOTTOM_TO_TOP,
    HORIZONTAL,
    VERTICAL
} GFX_TRANSITION_DIRECTION;
```

#### Members

Members	Description
LEFT_TO_RIGHT = 0	option used in SLIDE, PUSH transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))
RIGHT_TO_LEFT	option used in SLIDE, PUSH transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))
TOP_TO_BOTTOM	option used in SLIDE, PUSH transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))
BOTTOM_TO_TOP	option used in SLIDE, PUSH transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))
HORIZONTAL	option used in EXPANDING_LINE and CONTRACTING_LINE transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))
VERTICAL	option used in EXPANDING_LINE and CONTRACTING_LINE transition type (GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE (↗))

#### Overview

Direction enumeration to determine the direction of the selected GFX\_TRANSITION\_TYPE (↗).

### 7.4.3.2.6 GFX\_TRANSITION\_TYPE Enumeration

#### File

Transitions.h

#### C

```
typedef enum {
```

```

PLAIN = 0,
SLIDE,
PUSH,
EXPANDING_RECTANGLE,
CONTRACTING_RECTANGLE,
EXPANDING_LINE,
CONTRACTING_LINE
} GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE;

```

## Members

Members	Description
PLAIN = 0	no transition effect
SLIDE	param1 -> Pixel-block size, param2 -> Sliding direction LEFT_TO_RIGHT/RIGHT_TO_LEFT/TOP_TO_BOTTOM/BOTTOM_TO_TOP
PUSH	param1 -> Pixel-block size, param2 -> Sliding direction LEFT_TO_RIGHT/RIGHT_TO_LEFT/TOP_TO_BOTTOM/BOTTOM_TO_TOP
EXPANDING_RECTANGLE	param1 -> Pixel-block size
CONTRACTING_RECTANGLE	param1 -> Pixel-block size
EXPANDING_LINE	param1 -> Pixel-block size, param2 -> direction HORIZONTAL/VERTICAL
CONTRACTING_LINE	param1 -> Pixel-block size, param2 -> direction HORIZONTAL/VERTICAL

## Overview

Transition type enumeration to determine the type of the transition. Each type will require specific parameters when setting up the transition operation (GFXSetupTransition (¶)() or GFXTtransition (¶)()).

GFX_TRANSITION_TYPE	param1	param2 (sets the direction of transition)
PLAIN	pixel block size	not used
EXPANDING_RECTANGLE	pixel block size	not used
CONTRACTING_RECTANGLE	pixel block size	not used
SLIDE	pixel block size	LEFT_TO_RIGHT, RIGHT_TO_LEFT, TOP_TO_BOTTOM, BOTTOM_TO_TOP
PUSH	pixel block size	LEFT_TO_RIGHT, RIGHT_TO_LEFT, TOP_TO_BOTTOM, BOTTOM_TO_TOP
EXPANDING_LINE	pixel block size	HORIZONTAL, VERTICAL
CONTRACTING_LINE	pixel block size	HORIZONTAL, VERTICAL

## 7.4.3.3 Microchip Graphics Controller

This is the generic display driver is intended for the Microchip Graphics Controller Module implemented in PIC24F device family. This driver will drive TFT, CSTN and STN displays.

### Module

Advanced Display Driver Features (¶)

### Description

The Microchip Graphics Controller has several advanced features that can be enabled by declaring macros in the Graphics Config (GraphicsConfig.h) and Hardware Profile (HardwareProfile.h) of the project. Below is a summary of all macros that pertains to the Microchip Graphics Controller driver.

Macro Name	Description	Location
GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗)	Defines the starting address of the display buffer.	Hardware Profile
GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗)	<p>Defines the size of the display buffer. This macro is used to map memory in RAM when:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Double buffering is enabled. This is enabled by the macro USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (🔗)</li> <li>2. IPU module is used. This is enabled by the macro USE_COMP_IPU (🔗)</li> </ol> <p>If the application is designed to fit into the internal memory, and with the If the double buffering and/or IPU module is enabled, the memory required must fit into the internal memory.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) must be less than or equal to the chip select region size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) &lt;= GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (🔗) if located in chip select 1 (CS1) region</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) &lt;= GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (🔗) if located in chip select 2 (CS2) region</li> </ul>	Hardware Profile
USE_PALETTE (🔗)	Macro that enables the palette mode in Graphics Library and the Microchip Graphics Controller.	Graphics Config
USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (🔗)	<p>Optional feature. This enables the double buffering feature. Memory required for display buffer will double in size. There will be two display buffers used and these buffers are swapped automatically by the library draw operations or application can manage the swapping. See Double Buffering (🔗) for details.</p> <p><b>Buffer Location (Mapping):</b></p> <pre>Display      Buffer      1      = GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗) Display      Buffer      2      = GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗) + GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗)</pre> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the display buffers are located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the total display buffer memory needed must be less than or equal to the chip select region size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) * 2) &lt;= GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (🔗) if located in chip select 1 (CS1) region</li> <li>• (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) * 2) &lt;= GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (🔗) if located in chip select 2 (CS2) region</li> </ul>	

### 7.4.3.3.1 Rectangle Copy Operations

The following APIs are used move blocks of data from one memory location to another.

## Functions

	Name	Description
➊	ROPBlock (🔗)	Performs a Raster Operation (ROP) on source and destination. The type of ROP is decided by the rop and the copyOp parameter.
➋	Scroll (🔗)	Scrolls the rectangular area defined by left, top, right, bottom by delta pixels.

## Macros

Name	Description
RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS (🔗)	<p>Source (S) and Destination (D) data type. When performing executing commands on the Rectangle (🔗) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU). The source and destination data can be treated as a continuous block of data in memory or a discontinuous data in memory. This gives flexibility to the operation where an copy operation can be performed to data already present in the display buffer or anywhere else in data memory. Both source and destination data can be set to continuous or discontinuous data. These macros are only used in RCCGPU operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS - source data is continuous</li> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗) - source data is discontinuous... more (🔗)</li> </ul>
RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗)	<p>Source (S) and Destination (D) data type. When performing executing commands on the Rectangle (🔗) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU). The source and destination data can be treated as a continuous block of data in memory or a discontinuous data in memory. This gives flexibility to the operation where an copy operation can be performed to data already present in the display buffer or anywhere else in data memory. Both source and destination data can be set to continuous or discontinuous data. These macros are only used in RCCGPU operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS - source data is continuous</li> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗) - source data is discontinuous... more (🔗)</li> </ul>
RCC_DEST_ADDR_CONTINUOUS (🔗)	<p>Source (S) and Destination (D) data type. When performing executing commands on the Rectangle (🔗) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU). The source and destination data can be treated as a continuous block of data in memory or a discontinuous data in memory. This gives flexibility to the operation where an copy operation can be performed to data already present in the display buffer or anywhere else in data memory. Both source and destination data can be set to continuous or discontinuous data. These macros are only used in RCCGPU operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS - source data is continuous</li> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗) - source data is discontinuous... more (🔗)</li> </ul>
RCC_DEST_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗)	<p>Source (S) and Destination (D) data type. When performing executing commands on the Rectangle (🔗) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU). The source and destination data can be treated as a continuous block of data in memory or a discontinuous data in memory. This gives flexibility to the operation where an copy operation can be performed to data already present in the display buffer or anywhere else in data memory. Both source and destination data can be set to continuous or discontinuous data. These macros are only used in RCCGPU operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS - source data is continuous</li> <li>• RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS (🔗) - source data is discontinuous... more (🔗)</li> </ul>

RCC_ROP_0 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_1 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_2 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_3 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_4 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_5 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_6 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_7 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_8 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_9 (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_A (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_B (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_C (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>
RCC_ROP_D (█)	Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li><li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li><li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li><li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li></ul>

RCC_ROP_E (█)	<p>Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li> </ul>
RCC_ROP_F (█)	<p>Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data, and the result written to the destination (D).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_ROP_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█) - not (S or D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█) - (not S) and D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█) - not (S)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█) - S and not (D))</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█) - not (D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█) - S xor D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█) - not (S and D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█) - S and D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█) - not (S xor D)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_A (█) - D</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_B (█)... more (█)</li> </ul>
RCC_COPY (█)	<p>Type of Rectangle (█) Copy Operations. Select one of the following rectangle copy operations and together with the ROP; the source, destination, current color set and transparency are evaluated on each pixel and the result written to the destination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_COPY - Copies the source data to the destination address with the selected ROP.</li> <li>• RCC_SOLID_FILL (█) - Fills the specified rectangle with the current color set.</li> <li>• RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY (█) - Operation is the same as the COPY operation except that the source data is compared against the current color set. If the values match, the source data is not written to the destination. The source... more (█)</li> </ul>

RCC_SOLID_FILL ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Type of Rectangle ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) Copy Operations. Select one of the following rectangle copy operations and together with the ROP; the source, destination, current color set and transparency are evaluated on each pixel and the result written to the destination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_COPY - Copies the source data to the destination address with the selected ROP.</li> <li>• RCC_SOLID_FILL (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Fills the specified rectangle with the current color set.</li> <li>• RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Operation is the same as the COPY operation except that the source data is compared against the current color set. If the values match, the source data is not written to the destination. The source... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>
RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	Type of Rectangle ( <a href="#">🔗</a> ) Copy Operations. Select one of the following rectangle copy operations and together with the ROP; the source, destination, current color set and transparency are evaluated on each pixel and the result written to the destination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_COPY - Copies the source data to the destination address with the selected ROP.</li> <li>• RCC_SOLID_FILL (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Fills the specified rectangle with the current color set.</li> <li>• RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Operation is the same as the COPY operation except that the source data is compared against the current color set. If the values match, the source data is not written to the destination. The source... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>

#### 7.4.3.3.1.1 ROPBlock Function

##### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

##### C

```
WORD ROPBlock(
    DWORD srcAddr,
    DWORD dstAddr,
    DWORD srcOffset,
    DWORD dstOffset,
    WORD srcType,
    WORD dstType,
    WORD copyOp,
    WORD rop,
    WORD color,
    WORD width,
    WORD height
);
```

##### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD srcAddr	the base address of the data to be moved
DWORD dstAddr	the base address of the new location of the moved data
DWORD srcOffset	offset of the data to be moved with respect to the source base address.
DWORD dstOffset	offset of the new location of the moved data respect to the source base address.
WORD srcType	sets the source type (GFX_DATA_CONTINUOUS or GFX_DATA_DISCONTINUOUS)
WORD dstType	sets the destination type (GFX_DATA_CONTINUOUS or GFX_DATA_DISCONTINUOUS)

WORD copyOp	sets the type of copy operation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_SOLID_FILL (█): Solid fill of the set color</li> <li>• RCC_COPY (█): direct copy of source to destination</li> <li>• RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY (█): copy with transparency. Transparency color is set by color</li> </ul>
WORD rop	sets the raster operation equation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RCC_ROP_0 (█): Solid black color fill</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_1 (█): not (Source or Destination)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_2 (█): (not Source) and Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_3 (█): not Source</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_4 (█): Source and (not Destination)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_5 (█): not Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_6 (█): Source xor Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_7 (█): not (Source and Destination)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_8 (█): Source and Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_9 (█): not (Source xor Destination)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_A (█): Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_B (█): (not Source) or Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_C (█): Source</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_D (█): Source or (not Destination)</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_E (█): Source or Destination</li> <li>• RCC_ROP_F (█): Solid white color fill</li> </ul>
WORD color	color value used when transparency operation is set or using solid color fill
WORD width	width of the block of data to be moved
WORD height	height of the block of data to be moved

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

For NON-Blocking configuration:

- Returns 0 when device is busy and operation is not completely performed.
- Returns 1 when the operation is completely performed.

For Blocking configuration:

- Always return 1.

**Notes**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Performs a Raster Operation (ROP) on source and destination. The type of ROP is decided by the rop and the copyOp parameter.

**Syntax**

```
WORD ROPBlock (DWORD srcAddr, DWORD dstAddr, DWORD srcOffset, DWORD dstOffset, WORD srcType, WORD
```

dstType, WORD copyOp, WORD rop, WORD color, WORD width, WORD height)

### 7.4.3.3.1.2 Scroll Function

#### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

#### C

```
WORD Scroll(
    SHORT left,
    SHORT top,
    SHORT right,
    SHORT bottom,
    SHORT delta,
    WORD dir
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
SHORT left	left position of the scrolled rectangle
SHORT top	top position of the scrolled rectangle
SHORT right	right position of the scrolled rectangle
SHORT bottom	bottom position of the scrolled rectangle
SHORT delta	defines the scroll delta
WORD dir	defines the direction of the scroll. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 : scroll to the left</li> <li>• 1 : scroll to the right</li> </ul>

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

none

#### Notes

none

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Scrolls the rectangular area defined by left, top, right, bottom by delta pixels.

#### Syntax

WORD Scroll(SHORT left, SHORT top, SHORT right, SHORT bottom, SHORT delta)

### 7.4.3.3.1.3 RCC\_SRC\_ADDR\_CONTINUOUS Macro

#### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

#### C

```
#define RCC_SRC_ADDR_CONTINUOUS 0x00000002ul
#define RCC_SRC_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS 0x00000000ul
#define RCC_DEST_ADDR_CONTINUOUS 0x00000004ul
#define RCC_DEST_ADDR_DISCONTINUOUS 0x00000000ul
```

## Overview

Source (S) and Destination (D) data type. When performing executing commands on the Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU). The source and destination data can be treated as a continuous block of data in memory or a discontinuous data in memory. This gives flexibility to the operation where an copy operation can be performed to data already present in the display buffer or anywhere else in data memory. Both source and destination data can be set to continuous or discontinuous data. These macros are only used in RCCGPU operations.

- RCC\_SRC\_ADDR\_CONTINUOUS - source data is continuous
- RCC\_SRC\_ADDR\_DISCONTINUOUS - source data is discontinuous
- RCC\_DEST\_ADDR\_CONTINUOUS - destination data is continuous
- RCC\_DEST\_ADDR\_DISCONTINUOUS - destination data is discontinuous

### 7.4.3.3.1.4 RCC\_ROP\_0 Macro

#### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

#### C

```
#define RCC_ROP_0 0x00000000ul          // not (S or D)
#define RCC_ROP_1 0x00000008ul          // (not S) and D
#define RCC_ROP_2 0x00000010ul          // not (S)
#define RCC_ROP_3 0x00000018ul          // S and not (D)
#define RCC_ROP_4 0x00000020ul          // not (D)
#define RCC_ROP_5 0x00000028ul          // S xor D
#define RCC_ROP_6 0x00000030ul          // not (S and D)
#define RCC_ROP_7 0x00000038ul          // S and D
#define RCC_ROP_8 0x00000040ul          // not (S xor D)
#define RCC_ROP_9 0x00000048ul          // D
#define RCC_ROP_A 0x00000050ul          // not (S) or D
#define RCC_ROP_B 0x00000058ul          // S
#define RCC_ROP_C 0x00000060ul          // S or not (D)
#define RCC_ROP_D 0x00000068ul          // S or D
#define RCC_ROP_E 0x00000070ul          // 1 (WHITE)
#define RCC_ROP_F 0x00000078ul          // 1 (WHITE)
```

#### Overview

Raster Operation (ROP) option. Select one of the following 16 raster operation options whenever Rectangle (█) Copy Processing Unit (RCCGPU) is used. The raster operation is performed on the source (S) and destination (D) data. and the result written to the destination (D).

- RCC\_ROP\_0 - 0 (BLACK (█))
- RCC\_ROP\_1 - not (S or D)
- RCC\_ROP\_2 - (not S) and D
- RCC\_ROP\_3 - not (S)
- RCC\_ROP\_4 - S and not (D))
- RCC\_ROP\_5 - not (D)
- RCC\_ROP\_6 - S xor D
- RCC\_ROP\_7 - not (S and D)
- RCC\_ROP\_8 - S and D
- RCC\_ROP\_9 - not (S xor D)
- RCC\_ROP\_A - D
- RCC\_ROP\_B - not (S) or D
- RCC\_ROP\_C - S
- RCC\_ROP\_D - S or not (D)

- RCC\_ROP\_E - S or D
- RCC\_ROP\_F - 1 (WHITE (█))

### 7.4.3.3.1.5 RCC\_COPY Macro

#### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

#### C

```
#define RCC_COPY 0x00000080ul
#define RCC_SOLID_FILL 0x00000000ul
#define RCC_TRANSPARENT_COPY 0x00000300ul
```

#### Overview

Type of Rectangle (█) Copy Operations. Select one of the following rectangle copy operations and together with the ROP; the source, destination, current color set and transparency are evaluated on each pixel and the result written to the destination.

- RCC\_COPY - Copies the source data to the destination address with the selected ROP.
- RCC\_SOLID\_FILL - Fills the specified rectangle with the current color set.
- RCC\_TRANSPARENT\_COPY - Operation is the same as the COPY operation except that the source data is compared against the current color set. If the values match, the source data is not written to the destination. The source image is, therefore, transparent at such a location, allowing

### 7.4.3.3.2 Double Buffering

In the Microchip Graphics Library, if double-buffering is enabled, the frame buffer and draw buffer are exchanged after the changes of all the widgets on a screen are done (i.e., the new screen appears after the whole screen is updated and not after updating an individual widget).

#### Functions

	Name	Description
💡	SwitchOffDoubleBuffering (█)	Switches off the double buffering. All rendering will be performed on the frame buffer. Calls to UpdateDisplayNow (█)() or RequestDisplayUpdate (█)() will have no effect.
💡	SwitchOnDoubleBuffering (█)	Switches on the double buffering. Double buffering utilizes two buffers. The frame buffer and the draw buffer. The frame buffer is the buffer that is being displayed while the draw buffer is used for all rendering. When this function is called, it copies the contents of the frame buffer to the draw buffer once and all succeeding rendering will be performed on the draw buffer. To update the frame buffer with newly drawn items on the draw buffer call UpdateDisplayNow (█)() or RequestDisplayUpdate (█)().
💡	InvalidateRectangle (█)	Invalidates the specified rectangular area. This increments the number of invalidated areas and if the number of invalidated areas exceed the GFX_MAX_INVALIDATE_AREAS, the whole frame buffer is invalidated.
💡	RequestDisplayUpdate (█)	Synchronizes the draw and frame buffers at next VBlank
💡	UpdateDisplayNow (█)	Synchronizes the draw and frame buffers immediately.

#### Description

Manipulating pixels on the screen requires direct writes to the frame buffer. While these changes are being executed, the screen is also refreshed. This means that the changes are displayed immediately as the frame buffer is being updated. This is not a suitable scheme when the changes are slow, for example, decoding an image or having a large number of widgets on a screen. The display may appear slow in that case. One solution to this problem is to use a double-buffering scheme supported by the Microchip Graphics Library. In this scheme, the changes are not directly written to the frame buffer, but instead, they are written to a separate buffer, called the 'Draw Buffer'. After all the changes are made, the draw buffer and frame buffer are exchanged. Now the draw buffer becomes the frame buffer, and because of all the changes drawn there, the changes appear spontaneous to the user. Of course, there will be a delay, as all the changes have to be written to the

draw buffer before displaying it. This delay is generally more tolerable than displaying the changes slowly. After exchanging of the buffers, the latest buffer (which is now the frame buffer) is copied to the new draw buffer in the background and then the new draw buffer is in sync with what is being displayed. New changes are then written to the draw buffer and the cycle continues. As the double-buffering scheme uses two buffers, the RAM requirement will double.

In the Microchip Graphics Library, if double-buffering is enabled, the frame buffer and draw buffer are exchanged after the changes of all the widgets on a screen are done (i.e., the new screen appears after the whole screen is updated and not after updating an individual widget).

The work flow of double-buffering is graphically explained along with tips on deciding when to use double buffering in the APPENDIX B of the Application note AN1368: Developing Embedded Graphics Applications using PIC® Microcontrollers with Integrated Graphics Controller.

To use double buffering in an application, follow the steps described below:

1. Enable the option USE\_DOUBLE\_BUFFERING ([█](#)) in GraphicsConfig.h
2. Update GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH ([█](#)) to include both the buffers in HardwareProfile.h. Note that when using external memory the GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH ([█](#)) must fit into the external memory size. For example in PIC24FJ256DA210 external memory can be added using EPMP. External memory mapped to the EPMP must be big enough to accommodate the display buffers required by double buffering. See Set Up Display Interface ([█](#)) for more information on memory requirements.
3. Check the jumper settings to enable the required RAM address space on the development board

If Graphics Objects Layer (GOL) is used in the application, the switching of buffers is handled automatically in order to keep the switching task transparent to the users. If double buffering is enabled in applications using only the Primitive layer, then the switching of buffers has to be handled by the application itself as explained in the following steps.

Steps required for manually handling the switching of buffers:

1. After InitGraph ([█](#))() is called, call the APIs InvalidateAll() followed by UpdateDisplayNow ([█](#))(). The two buffers are properly setup after these calls and from this point onwards, the drawing happens on the draw-buffer.
2. When a shape is drawn on the draw buffer, that rectangular area has to be marked as invalid by using the API InvalidateRectangle ([█](#))(left, top, right, bottom). Only the invalidated rectangular areas are copied to the frame buffer in order to reduce the copy operations thereby reducing the overall time and energy required to sync the two buffers. Hence, it is important to invalidate the changed rectangular areas failing which the change doesn't show up on the display.
3. Call either RequestDisplayUpdate ([█](#))() or UpdateDisplayNow ([█](#))() to sync the two buffers and as a result the changes appear on the display. The former API exchanges the buffers during the next display blanking period on TFT LCDs causing the change to appear smooth and immediate whereas the latter API exchanges the two buffers at the time of the API call probably causing a slight flicker on the display. On displays which doesn't support blanking periods (e.g. CSTN LCDs), the effect of RequestDisplayUpdate ([█](#))() is same as that of UpdateDisplayNow ([█](#))().

Even if double buffering is enabled at compile time, it can be switched off and on at run time using APIs SwitchOffDoubleBuffering ([█](#))() and SwitchOnDoubleBuffering ([█](#))(). Switching double buffering on/off at runtime is useful in applications which need some screens having fast updates like waveform or animation which requires double buffering to be switched off and some other screens where double buffering is beneficial.

Note: In applications using Graphics Objects Layer and double buffering, the double buffering is not immediately enabled after the API GOLInit (¶)() is called in order to support hassles splash screens but is automatically enabled from the second screen update onwards. If double buffering is needed from the first screen itself, then follow step 1 immediately after calling GOLInit (¶)().

### 7.4.3.3.2.1 SwitchOffDoubleBuffering Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void SwitchOffDoubleBuffering();
```

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

none

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Switches off the double buffering. All rendering will be performed on the frame buffer. Calls to UpdateDisplayNow (¶)() or RequestDisplayUpdate (¶)() will have no effect.

#### Syntax

```
SwitchOffDoubleBuffering()
```

### 7.4.3.3.2.2 SwitchOnDoubleBuffering Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void SwitchOnDoubleBuffering();
```

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

none

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Switches on the double buffering. Double buffering utilizes two buffers. The frame buffer and the draw buffer. The frame buffer is the buffer that is being displayed while the draw buffer is used for all rendering. When this function is called, it copies the contents of the frame buffer to the draw buffer once and all succeeding rendering will be performed on the draw buffer. To update the frame buffer with newly drawn items on the draw buffer call UpdateDisplayNow (¶)() or RequestDisplayUpdate (¶)().

#### Syntax

```
SwitchOnDoubleBuffering()
```

### 7.4.3.3.2.3 InvalidateRectangle Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void InvalidateRectangle(
    WORD left,
    WORD top,
    WORD right,
    WORD bottom
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
WORD left	left position
WORD top	top position
WORD right	right position
WORD bottom	bottom position

#### Side Effects

Copies back the invalidated areas only to the draw buffer after the exchange of draw and frame buffers.

#### Returns

None

#### Preconditions

None

#### Overview

Invalidates the specified rectangular area. This increments the number of invalidated areas and if the number of invalidated areas exceed the GFX\_MAX\_INVALIDATE\_AREAS, the whole frame buffer is invalidated.

#### Syntax

```
void InvalidateRectangle(WORD left, WORD top, WORD right, WORD bottom)
```

### 7.4.3.3.2.4 RequestDisplayUpdate Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void RequestDisplayUpdate();
```

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

none

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Synchronizes the draw and frame buffers at next VBlank

#### Syntax

```
void RequestDisplayUpdate(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.2.5 UpdateDisplayNow Function

#### File

DisplayDriver.h

#### C

```
void UpdateDisplayNow();
```

#### Side Effects

none

#### Returns

none

#### Preconditions

none

#### Overview

Synchronizes the draw and frame buffers immediately.

#### Syntax

```
void UpdateDisplayNow(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3 Decompressing DEFLATEd data

The Microchip Graphics Controller features a decompression module for data compressed using the DEFLATE algorithm. Compressed data are limited to fixed huffman codes. Compressed data with dynamic huffman codes are not supported.

#### Functions

	Name	Description
≡	Decompress (■)	Decompresses the nbytes number of data at SrcAddress and places starting from DestAddress. (Blocking)

### 7.4.3.3.3.1 Decompress Function

#### File

mchpGfxDrv.h

#### C

```
BYTE Decompress(
    DWORD SrcAddress,
    DWORD DestAddress,
    DWORD nbytes
);
```

#### Input Parameters

Input Parameters	Description
DWORD SrcAddress	Source address
DWORD DestAddress	Destination address
DWORD nbytes	Number of bytes to be decompressed

#### Side Effects

Modifies workarea\_1 & workarea\_2 registers.

#### Returns

error flag

## Preconditions

SrcAddress must point to the start of a compressed block.

## Overview

Decompresses the nbytes number of data at SrcAddress and places starting from DestAddress. (Blocking)

## Syntax

```
BYTE Decompress(DWORD SrcAddress, DWORD DestAddress, DWORD nbytes);
```

### 7.4.3.3.4 Palette Mode

The Microchip Graphics Controller features a palette mode for a smaller frame buffer requirement. This option uses the built-in 256 entry Color Look-up Table (CLUT) to represent pixels from the display buffer in memory. If the CLUT is enabled, each pixel in the display buffer is assumed to contain the color index. This color index is used as the address of the CLUT entry that contains the color value that will be used for the given pixel.

## Files

Name	Description
Palette.h (🔗)	This is file Palette.h.

## Functions

	Name	Description
💡	ClearPaletteChangeError (🔗)	Clears the Palette change error status
💡	DisablePalette (🔗)	Disables the Palette mode.
💡	EnablePalette (🔗)	Enables the Palette mode.
💡	GetPaletteChangeError (🔗)	Returns the Palette change error status
💡	IsPaletteEnabled (🔗)	Returns if the Palette mode is enabled or not.
💡	PalettesInit (🔗)	Initializes the color look up table (CLUT).
💡	RequestPaletteChange (🔗)	Loads the palettes from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.
💡	SetPalette (🔗)	Programs a block of palette entries starting from startEntry and until startEntry + length from the flash immediately.
💡	SetPaletteBpp (🔗)	Sets the color look up table (CLUT) number of valid entries.
💡	SetPaletteFlash (🔗)	Loads the palettes from the flash immediately.

## Macros

Name	Description
RequestEntirePaletteChange (🔗)	Loads all the palette entries from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.
SetEntirePalette (🔗)	Programs the whole 256 entry palette with new color values from flash.

## Structures

Name	Description
PALETTE_FLASH (🔗)	Structure for the palette stored in FLASH memory.
PALETTE_HEADER (🔗)	Structure for the palette header.

## Types

Name	Description
PALETTE_EXTERNAL (🔗)	Structure for palette stored in EXTERNAL memory space. (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS_EPMP)

### 7.4.3.3.4.1 ClearPaletteChangeError Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
void ClearPaletteChangeError();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Clears the Palette change error status

**Syntax**

```
void ClearPaletteChangeError(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.4.2 DisablePalette Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
void DisablePalette();
```

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Disables the Palette mode.

**Syntax**

```
void DisablePalette(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.4.3 EnablePalette Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
void EnablePalette();
```

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Enables the Palette mode.

**Syntax**

```
void EnablePalette(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.4.4 GetPaletteChangeError Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
BYTE GetPaletteChangeError();
```

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the palette change status. 1 - If the palette change error occurred 0 - If no palette change error occurred

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns the Palette change error status

**Syntax**

```
BYTE GetPaletteChangeError(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.4.5 IsPaletteEnabled Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
BYTE IsPaletteEnabled();
```

**Returns**

Returns the palette mode status. 1 - If the palette mode is enabled 0 - If the palette mode is disabled

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Returns if the Palette mode is enabled or not.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE IsPaletteEnabled(void)
```

### 7.4.3.3.4.6 Palettelnit Function

**File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
void Palettelnit();
```

**Side Effects**

All rendering will use the new palette entries.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

none

**Overview**

Initializes the color look up table (CLUT).

**Syntax**

```
void Palettelnit(void)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.7 RequestPaletteChange Function****File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
void RequestPaletteChange(
    void * pPalette,
    WORD startEntry,
    WORD length
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
void * pPalette	Pointer to the palette structure
WORD startEntry	Start entry to load (inclusive)
WORD length	Number of entries

**Side Effects**

There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries are getting loaded one by one.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

Palette must be initialized by Palettelnit ([🔗](#)()).

**Overview**

Loads the palettes from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.

**Syntax**

```
void RequestPaletteChange(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.8 SetPalette Function****File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
BYTE SetPalette(
    void * pPalette,
    WORD startEntry,
    WORD length
```

```
) ;
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
void * pPalette	Pointer to the palette structure
WORD startEntry	Start entry to load (inclusive)
WORD length	Number of entries

**Side Effects**

There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries are getting loaded one by one.

**Returns**

Returns the status of the palette set. 0 - Set was successful 1 - Set was not successful

**Preconditions**

Palette must be initialized by Palettelnit (█)().

**Overview**

Programs a block of palette entries starting from startEntry and until startEntry + length from the flash immediately.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE SetPalette(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.9 SetPaletteBpp Function****File**

Palette.h (█)

**C**

```
BYTE SetPaletteBpp(
    BYTE bpp
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
BYTE bpp	Bits per pixel

**Side Effects**

none

**Returns**

Returns the status of the change. 0 - Change was successful 1 - Change was not successful

**Preconditions**

Palette must be initialized by Palettelnit (█)().

**Overview**

Sets the color look up table (CLUT) number of valid entries.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE SetPaletteBpp(BYTE bpp)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.10 SetPaletteFlash Function****File**

Palette.h (█)

**C**

```
BYTE SetPaletteFlash(
    PALETTE_ENTRY * pPaletteEntry,
    WORD startEntry,
    WORD length
);
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
PALETTE_ENTRY * pPaletteEntry	Pointer to the palette table in ROM
WORD startEntry	Start entry to load (inclusive)
WORD length	Number of entries

**Side Effects**

There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries are getting loaded one by one.

**Returns**

Returns the status of the palette set. 0 - Set was successful 1 - Set was not successful

**Preconditions**

Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit (🔗)().

**Overview**

Loads the palettes from the flash immediately.

**Syntax**

```
BYTE SetPaletteFlash(PALETTE_ENTRY *pPaletteEntry, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.11 PALETTE\_FLASH Structure****File**

Palette.h (🔗)

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    SHORT type;
    PALETTE_HEADER header;
    PALETTE_ENTRY * pPaletteEntry;
} PALETTE_FLASH;
```

**Members**

Members	Description
SHORT type;	Type must be FLASH
PALETTE_HEADER header;	Contains information on the palette
PALETTE_ENTRY * pPaletteEntry;	Pointer to the palette. Number of entries is determined by the header.

**Overview**

Structure for the palette stored in FLASH memory.

**7.4.3.3.4.12 PALETTE\_HEADER Structure****File**

Palette.h (🔗)

**C**

```
typedef struct {
    WORD id;
    WORD length;
```

```
}
```

**Members**

Members	Description
WORD id;	User defined ID
WORD length;	number of palette entries (number of colors in the palette)

**Overview**

Structure for the palette header.

**7.4.3.3.4.13 PALETTE\_EXTERNAL Type****File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
typedef GFX_EXTDATA PALETTE_EXTERNAL;
```

**Overview**

Structure for palette stored in EXTERNAL memory space. (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS\_EPMP)

**7.4.3.3.4.14 RequestEntirePaletteChange Macro****File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
#define RequestEntirePaletteChange(pPalette) RequestPaletteChange(pPalette, 0, 256)
```

**Input Parameters**

Input Parameters	Description
pPalette	Pointer to the palette structure

**Side Effects**

There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries are getting loaded one by one.

**Returns**

none

**Preconditions**

PPalette must be initialized by Palettelnit ([🔗](#)()).

**Overview**

Loads all the palette entries from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.

**Syntax**

```
RequestEntirePaletteChange(pPalette)
```

**7.4.3.3.4.15 SetEntirePalette Macro****File**

Palette.h ([🔗](#))

**C**

```
#define SetEntirePalette(pPalette) SetPalette(pPalette, 0, 256)
```

**Input Parameters**

<b>Input Parameters</b>	<b>Description</b>
pPalette	Pointer to the palette structure

**Side Effects**

There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries are getting loaded one by one.

**Returns**

Returns the status of the palette set. 0 - Set was successful 1 - Set was not successful

**Preconditions**

Palette must be initialized by PalettesInit (§)().

**Overview**

Programs the whole 256 entry palette with new color values from flash.

**Syntax**

SetEntirePalette(pPalette)

**7.4.3.3.4.16 Palette.h****Functions**

	<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
≡	ClearPaletteChangeError (§)	Clears the Palette change error status
≡	DisablePalette (§)	Disables the Palette mode.
≡	EnablePalette (§)	Enables the Palette mode.
≡	GetPaletteChangeError (§)	Returns the Palette change error status
≡	IsPaletteEnabled (§)	Returns if the Palette mode is enabled or not.
≡	PalettesInit (§)	Initializes the color look up table (CLUT).
≡	RequestPaletteChange (§)	Loads the palettes from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.
≡	SetPalette (§)	Programs a block of palette entries starting from startEntry and until startEntry + length from the flash immediately.
≡	SetPaletteBpp (§)	Sets the color look up table (CLUT) number of valid entries.
≡	SetPaletteFlash (§)	Loads the palettes from the flash immediately.

**Macros**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
RequestEntirePaletteChange (§)	Loads all the palette entries from the flash during vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise loads immediately.
SetEntirePalette (§)	Programs the whole 256 entry palette with new color values from flash.

**Structures**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PALETTE_FLASH (§)	Structure for the palette stored in FLASH memory.
PALETTE_HEADER (§)	Structure for the palette header.

**Types**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PALETTE_EXTERNAL (§)	Structure for palette stored in EXTERNAL memory space. (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS_EPMP)

**Description**

This is file Palette.h.

**Body Source**

```
*****
* Module for Microchip Graphics Library
* Palette Support
*****
* FileName:          Palette.h
* Dependencies:     Graphics.h
* Processor:        PIC24, PIC32
* Compiler:         MPLAB C30, MPLAB C32
* Linker:           MPLAB LINK30, MPLAB LINK32
* Company:          Microchip Technology Incorporated
*
* Software License Agreement
*
* Copyright © 2008 Microchip Technology Inc. All rights reserved.
* Microchip licenses to you the right to use, modify, copy and distribute
* Software only when embedded on a Microchip microcontroller or digital
* signal controller, which is integrated into your product or third party
* product (pursuant to the sublicense terms in the accompanying license
* agreement).
*
* You should refer to the license agreement accompanying this Software
* for additional information regarding your rights and obligations.
*
* SOFTWARE AND DOCUMENTATION ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY
* KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY
* OF MERCHANTABILITY, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR
* PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROCHIP OR ITS LICENSORS BE LIABLE OR
* OBLIGATED UNDER CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, CONTRIBUTION,
* BREACH OF WARRANTY, OR OTHER LEGAL EQUITABLE THEORY ANY DIRECT OR INDIRECT
* DAMAGES OR EXPENSES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL,
* INDIRECT, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST PROFITS OR LOST DATA,
* COST OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS, TECHNOLOGY, SERVICES, OR ANY
* CLAIMS BY THIRD PARTIES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY DEFENSE THEREOF),
* OR OTHER SIMILAR COSTS.
*
* Date      Comment
* ~~~~~
* 11/06/09  Initial Release
* 08/20/10  Modified PALETTE_EXTERNAL to be of type GFX_EXTDATA.
* 03/20/12  Modified PALETTE_ENTRY structure to have packed attribute.
*****
#ifndef _PALETTE_H
#define _PALETTE_H

#include "Graphics/Graphics.h"
#include "Primitive.h"
#include "GenericTypeDefs.h"

#ifdef USE_PALETTE

*****
* Overview: Structure used for the palette entries.
*           - For TFT: color is defined as 5-6-5 RGB format
*                     (5-bits for RED, 6-bits for GREEN and 5-bits for BLUE.
*           - For Monochrome: 4 bits are used to represent the luma.
*
*****
typedef union __attribute__((packed))
{
    WORD    value;                      // a 16-bit value representing a color or palette
entry
    struct __attribute__((packed))
    {
        WORD    r : 5;                  // represents the RED component
        WORD    g : 6;                  // represents the GREEN component
        WORD    b : 5;                  // represents the BLUE component
    } color;
}

struct __attribute__((packed))
```

```

    {
        WORD      reserved : 12;           // reserved, used as a filler
        WORD      luma : 4;              // monochrome LUMA value
    } monochrome;                      // monochrome LUMA value

} PALETTE_ENTRY;

/**************************************************************************
* Overview: Structure for the palette header.
*
*****
typedef struct
{
    WORD          id;                // User defined ID
    WORD          length;           // number of palette entries (number of colors in
the palette)
} PALETTE_HEADER;

*****
* Overview: Structure for the palette stored in FLASH memory.
*
*****
typedef struct
{
    SHORT         type;              // Type must be FLASH
    PALETTE_HEADER header;          // Contains information on the palette
    PALETTE_ENTRY *pPaletteEntry;   // Pointer to the palette. Number of entries is
determined by the header.
} PALETTE_FLASH;

*****
* Overview: Structure for palette stored in EXTERNAL memory space.
*             (example: External SPI or parallel Flash, EDS_EPMP)
*
*****
typedef GFX_EXTDATA PALETTE_EXTERNAL;

*****
* Function: void PaletteInit(void)
*
* Overview: Initializes the color look up table (CLUT).
*
* PreCondition: none
*
* Input: none
*
* Output: none
*
* Side Effects: All rendering will use the new palette entries.
*
*****
void    PaletteInit(void);

*****
* Function: void EnablePalette(void)
*
* Overview: Enables the Palette mode.
*
* PreCondition: none
*
* Input: none
*
* Output: none
*
* Side Effects:
*
*****
void    EnablePalette(void);

*****
* Function: void DisablePalette(void)

```

```
/*
 * Overview: Disables the Palette mode.
 *
 * PreCondition: none
 *
 * Input: none
 *
 * Output: none
 *
 * Side Effects:
 *
***** */
void DisablePalette(void);

/*****
 * Function: BYTE IsPaletteEnabled(void)
 *
 * Overview: Returns if the Palette mode is enabled or not.
 *
 * PreCondition: none
 *
 * Input: none
 *
 * Output: Returns the palette mode status.
 *         1 - If the palette mode is enabled
 *         0 - If the palette mode is disabled
 *
 * Side Effects:
 *
***** */
BYTE IsPaletteEnabled(void);

/*****
 * Function: BYTE GetPaletteChangeError(void)
 *
 * Overview: Returns the Palette change error status
 *
 * PreCondition: none
 *
 * Input: none
 *
 * Output: Returns the palette change status.
 *         1 - If the palette change error occurred
 *         0 - If no palette change error occurred
 *
 * Side Effects: none
 *
***** */
BYTE GetPaletteChangeError(void);

/*****
 * Function: void ClearPaletteChangeError(void)
 *
 * Overview: Clears the Palette change error status
 *
 * PreCondition: none
 *
 * Input: none
 *
 * Output: none
 *
 * Side Effects: none
 *
***** */
void ClearPaletteChangeError(void);

/*****
 * Function: BYTE SetPaletteBpp(BYTE bpp)
 *
 * Overview: Sets the color look up table (CLUT) number of valid entries.
 *
 * PreCondition: Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
***** */
```

```

/*
 * Input: bpp - Bits per pixel
 *
 * Output: Returns the status of the change.
 *          0 - Change was successful
 *          1 - Change was not successful
 *
 * Side Effects: none
 *
***** */
BYTE      SetPaletteBpp(BYTE bpp);

/*****
 * Function: void RequestPaletteChange(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
 *
 * Overview: Loads the palettes from the flash during vertical blanking period
 *            if possible, otherwise loads immediately.
 *
 * PreCondition: Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
 *
 * Input: pPalette - Pointer to the palette structure
 *        startEntry - Start entry to load (inclusive)
 *        length     - Number of entries
 *
 * Output: none
 *
 * Side Effects: There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries
 *               are getting loaded one by one.
 *
***** */
void      RequestPaletteChange(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length);

/*****
 * Macro: RequestEntirePaletteChange(pPalette)
 *
 * Overview: Loads all the palette entries from the flash during
 *            vertical blanking period if possible, otherwise
 *            loads immediately.
 *
 * PreCondition: PPalette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
 *
 * Input: pPalette - Pointer to the palette structure
 *
 * Output: none
 *
 * Side Effects: There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries
 *               are getting loaded one by one.
 *
***** */
#define RequestEntirePaletteChange(pPalette)      RequestPaletteChange(pPalette, 0,
256)

/*****
 * Function: BYTE SetPalette(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
 *
 * Overview: Programs a block of palette entries starting from startEntry and
 *            until startEntry + length from the flash immediately.
 *
 * PreCondition: Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
 *
 * Input: pPalette - Pointer to the palette structure
 *        startEntry - Start entry to load (inclusive)
 *        length     - Number of entries
 *
 * Output: Returns the status of the palette set.
 *          0 - Set was successful
 *          1 - Set was not successful
 *
 * Side Effects: There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries
 *               are getting loaded one by one.
 *
***** */

```

```

BYTE      SetPalette(void *pPalette, WORD startEntry, WORD length);

/*********************************************************************
* Macro: SetEntirePalette(pPalette)
*
* Overview: Programs the whole 256 entry palette with new color values
*            from flash.
*
* PreCondition: Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
*
* Input: pPalette - Pointer to the palette structure
*
* Output: Returns the status of the palette set.
*         0 - Set was successful
*         1 - Set was not successful
*
* Side Effects: There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries
*                are getting loaded one by one.
*
*****
#define SetEntirePalette(pPalette)  SetPalette(pPalette, 0, 256)

/*********************************************************************
* Function: BYTE SetPaletteFlash(PALETTE_ENTRY *pPaletteEntry, WORD startEntry, WORD length)
*
* Overview: Loads the palettes from the flash immediately.
*
* PreCondition: Palette must be initialized by PaletteInit().
*
* Input: pPaletteEntry    - Pointer to the palette table in ROM
*        startEntry      - Start entry to load (inclusive)
*        length          - Number of entries
*
* Output: Returns the status of the palette set.
*         0 - Set was successful
*         1 - Set was not successful
*
* Side Effects: There may be a slight flicker when the Palette entries
*                are getting loaded one by one.
*
*****
BYTE      SetPaletteFlash(PALETTE_ENTRY *pPaletteEntry, WORD startEntry, WORD length);

#endif //USE_PALETTE
#endif

```

### 7.4.3.3.5 Set Up Display Interface

#### Macros

Name	Description
GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	<p>The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (<a href="#">🔗</a>)).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using internal or external memory</li> <li>GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li> <li>GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li> <li>GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li> <li>When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>

GFX_EPMP_CS1_BASE_ADDRESS ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	<p>The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (<a href="#">🔗</a>)).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using internal or external memory</li> <li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li> <li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	<p>The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (<a href="#">🔗</a>)).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using internal or external memory</li> <li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li> <li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>
GFX_EPMP_CS2_BASE_ADDRESS ( <a href="#">🔗</a> )	<p>The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (<a href="#">🔗</a>)).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using internal or external memory</li> <li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li> <li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (<a href="#">🔗</a>) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li> <li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (<a href="#">🔗</a>)</li> </ul>

GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (🔗)	The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (🔗)). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When using internal or external memory</li><li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li><li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (🔗)</li></ul>
GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗)	The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (🔗)). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When using internal or external memory</li><li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li><li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (🔗)</li></ul>
GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗)	The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD (🔗)). <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When using internal or external memory</li><li>• GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer location.</li><li>• GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (🔗) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width*height*(color depth/2).</li><li>• When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on... more (🔗)</li></ul>

#### 7.4.3.3.5.1 GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

##### C

```
#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 61
```

##### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that

comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (█)).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH (█) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█) + USE_COMP_IPU (█)	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█) + USE_COMP_IPU (█)	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ2	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

#### 7.4.3.3.5.2 GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

**C**

```
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul           // <COPY GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER>
```

**Overview**

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (█)).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH (█) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█) + USE_COMP_IPU (█)	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█) + USE_COMP_IPU (█)	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ2	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

### 7.4.3.3.5.3 GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE Macro

#### File

HardwareProfile.h

#### C

```
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE 0x40000ul // <COPY GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER>
```

#### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (图)).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH (图) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE (图) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图)	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图) + USE_COMP_IPU (图)	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图)	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图) + USE_COMP_IPU (图)	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq \text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} (\text{图})$
EQ2	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq (\text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} (\text{图}) * 2)$
EQ3	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq (\text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} (\text{图}) * 2) + \text{GFX\_COMPRESSED\_BUFFER\_SIZE} + \text{GFX\_DECOMPRESSED\_BUFFER\_SIZE}$
EQ4	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE} (\text{图}) \geq \text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} (\text{图})$
EQ5	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE} (\text{图}) \geq (\text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} (\text{图}) * 2)$

EQ6	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq (\text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} * 2) + \text{GFX\_COMPRESSED\_BUFFER\_SIZE} + \text{GFX\_DECOMPRESSED\_BUFFER\_SIZE}$
-----	--

#### 7.4.3.3.5.4 GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

##### C

```
#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00020000u1 // <COPY GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER>
```

##### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING + USE_COMP_IPU	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING + USE_COMP_IPU	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq \text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH}$
EQ2	$\text{GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE} \geq (\text{GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH} * 2)$

EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (图) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (图)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (图)
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (图)*2)
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (图) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (图)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

#### 7.4.3.3.5.5 GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

##### C

```
#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE 0x40000ul // <COPY GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER>
```

##### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (图)).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH (图) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS (图) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE (图) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图)	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (图)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图) + USE_COMP_IPU (图)	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图)	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (图) + USE_COMP_IPU (图)	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ2	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2)
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH (█)*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

#### 7.4.3.3.5.6 GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

##### C

```
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH 0x00025800ul           // <COPY GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER>
```

##### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD (█)).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS (█) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE (█) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█) + USE_COMP_IPU (█)	EQ3	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE (█)	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING (█)	EQ5	chip select 2 region.

GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) + USE_COMP_IPU ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	EQ6	chip select 2 region.
---	--	-----	-----------------------

Equation	Description
EQ1	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH
EQ2	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH*2)
EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH*2)
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) >= (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH*2) + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

#### 7.4.3.3.5.7 GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS Macro

##### File

HardwareProfile.h

##### C

```
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul // <COPY GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER>
```

##### Overview

The following are additional Hardware Profile macros used when using the driver for the Microchip Graphics Module that comes with the PIC Microcontroller (PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family) (PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD ([¶](#))).

- When using internal or external memory
- GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER - Set the clock divider for the pixel clock.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS - Set the Display Buffer location.
- GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH ([¶](#)) - Set the Display Buffer length (size) in bytes. This is calculated by the display's width\*height\*(color depth/2).
- When using external memory only. External memory may be placed in chip select 1 (CS1) and/or chip select 2 (CS2) regions. Refer to EPMP Family Reference Manual for details on how to use EPMP for graphics applications.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS ([¶](#)) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS1.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS ([¶](#)) - Set the location of the external memory mapped to the EPMP CS2.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE ([¶](#)) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS1. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.
- GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE ([¶](#)) - Set the size of the memory mapped to the EPMP CS2. This value sets how many EPMP address lines will be used.

If the display buffer is located in external memory (i.e in PIC24FJ256DA210) then the memory requirement for the graphics use must fit into the chip select region size. The table below summarizes the requirements.

Buffer Name	Enabled Features	External Memory Required	Display Buffer Location
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	none	EQ1	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	EQ2	chip select 1 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">¶</a> ) + USE_COMP_IPU ( <a href="#">¶</a> )	EQ3	chip select 1 region.

GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> )	none	EQ4	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> )	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">#</a> )	EQ5	chip select 2 region.
GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> )	USE_DOUBLE_BUFFERING ( <a href="#">#</a> ) + USE_COMP_IPU ( <a href="#">#</a> )	EQ6	chip select 2 region.

Equation	Description
EQ1	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> )
EQ2	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> ))^2
EQ3	GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> ))^2 + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE
EQ4	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> )
EQ5	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> ))^2
EQ6	GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE ( <a href="#">#</a> ) $\geq$ (GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH ( <a href="#">#</a> ))^2 + GFX_COMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE + GFX_DECOMPRESSED_BUFFER_SIZE

### 7.4.3.3.6 External or Internal Memory and Palettes

This section shows examples on how to set up applications using external memory, internal memory or use palettes for Microchip Graphics Module.

#### Description

Applications can run in PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family using internal memory or external memory with palette enabled or disabled. The table below summarizes the allowed color depth when combining palette with the use of internal or external memory.

Memory Location	Palette Mode	Color Depth (BPP)	Notes
Internal	enabled	1, 2, 4, 8	When using internal memory and running TFT display, palette mode must be enabled.
External	enabled	8, 16	Palette mode can only be used for 8BPP color depth when using external memory.
External	disabled	16	When using external memory and palette is disabled and running TFT display, 16 BPP color depth must be used.

#### Applications Using Palettes

Settings in Graphics Configuration (*GraphicsConfig.h*)

```
#define USE_PALETTE // to include code for palette
#define USE_PALETTE_EXTERNAL // define this if palette data
// will be in the external memory

// (note: PIC24FJ256DA210 Device Family color palette has a maximum of 256
// entries, therefore the maximum color depth that can be used for applications
// using palette is 8 BPP)
#define COLOR_DEPTH 8 // define the color depth to use
```

Settings in Hardware Profile (*HardwareProfile.h*)

```
///////////
// Microchip Specific Development Tools
/////////
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD // to use PIC24FJ256DA210
Development Board
```

```

#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E           // to use the Truly 3.2" display
panel

//////////////////////////////PIC24FJ256DA210 Graphics Module required settings////////////////
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210                  // to use the mchpGfxDrv.c and
mchpGfxDrv.h driver

#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 38                                     // set divider to generate required
GCLK pin                                                       // frequency (check display panel

data sheet)                                                   // set the display buffer starting
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00004B00ul          // address can be located in
address                                                       // external memory)
bytes (value)                                                 // set the display buffer length in
and color depth                                              // is derived from width, height
external memory,                                              // (COLOR_DEPTH)). If using
memory size.                                                 // size must fit into the external
                                                               // memory

// If using external memory add macros to enable EPMP CS1 or CS2 here and adjust
// location of GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS (see Application Using External
Memory)

```

*In application code initialize and enable palette before initializing the Graphics Library*

```

// set the palette color depth
SetPaletteBpp(8);
// initialize the palette
SetPalette((void*)&MainPalette, 0, 256);

// enable the use of the palette
EnablePalette();

```

## Applications Using Internal Memory

Settings in Graphics Configuration (GraphicsConfig.h)

```

// define the color depth to use (1, 2, 4, or 8BPP)
#define COLOR_DEPTH 8

```

*Settings in Graphics Configuration (GraphicsConfig.h) Settings in Hardware Profile (HardwareProfile.h)*

```

//////////////////////////////Microchip Specific Development Tools////////////////
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD                         // to use PIC24FJ256DA210
Development Board                                           // to use the Truly 3.2" display
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E       // to use the mchpGfxDrv.c and
panel                                                       // set divider to generate required
                                                               // frequency (check display panel
                                                               // set the display buffer starting
                                                               // (address must be located in
                                                               // external memory)

//////////////////////////////PIC24FJ256DA210 Graphics Module required settings////////////////
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210                  // to use the mchpGfxDrv.c and
mchpGfxDrv.h driver

#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 38                                     // set divider to generate required
GCLK pin                                                       // frequency (check display panel

data sheet)                                                   // set the display buffer starting
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00004B00ul          // address can be located in
address                                                       // external memory)
bytes (value)                                                 // set the display buffer length in
and color depth                                              // is derived from width, height
external memory,                                              // (COLOR_DEPTH)). If using
memory size.                                                 // size must fit into the external
                                                               // memory

```

*internal memory)*

**#define** GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH 0x0004B000ul  
*bytes (value*

*and color depth*

*into internal memory*

**Applications Using External Memory**

Settings in Graphics Configuration (GraphicsConfig.h)

```
// define the color depth to use (8 or 16BPP)
#define COLOR_DEPTH 16
```

Settings in Hardware Profile (HardwareProfile.h)

```
///////////////////////////////
// Microchip Specific Development Tools
/////////////////////////////
#define PIC24FJ256DA210_DEV_BOARD
Development Board
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_PANEL_TFT_G240320LTSW_118W_E
panel

/////////////////////////////
// PIC24FJ256DA210 Graphics Module required settings
/////////////////////////////
#define GFX_USE_DISPLAY_CONTROLLER_MCHP_DA210
mchpGfxDrv.h driver

#define GFX_GCLK_DIVIDER 61
GCLK pin

data sheet)
#define USE_16BIT_PMP
#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_START_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
address

external memory)

#define GFX_DISPLAY_BUFFER_LENGTH 0x00025800ul
bytes (value

and color depth

into external

region

#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_BASE_ADDRESS 0x00020000ul
starting address

region
#define GFX_EPMP_CS1_MEMORY_SIZE 0x80000ul
bytes)

Address lines to use

#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_BASE_ADDRESS 0x000A0000ul
starting address

#define GFX_EPMP_CS2_MEMORY_SIZE 0x80000ul
bytes)

Address lines to use
```

*// set the display buffer length in*  
*// is derived from width, height*  
*// (COLOR\_DEPTH)). Size must fit*

*// to use PIC24FJ256DA210*

*// to use the Truly 3.2" display*

*// to use the mchpGfxDrv.c and*

*// set divider to generate required*  
*// frequency (check display panel*

*// enable the use of EPMP*  
*// set the display buffer starting*  
*// (address will be located in*

*// set the display buffer length in*  
*// is derived from width, height*  
*// (COLOR\_DEPTH)). Size must fit*  
*// memory*

*// if using EPMP CS1 set the*  
*// of EPMP CS1*

*// set the EPMP CS1 region size (in*  
*// size defines the number of EPMP*

*// if using EPMP CS2 set the*  
*// of EPMP CS2 region*  
*// set the EPMP CS2 region size (in*  
*// size defines the number of EPMP*

# 8 Image Decoders

## Demo Project

Name	Description
Image Decoder Demo (🔗)	This demo demonstrates the decoding of images with JPEG and BMP file formats.

## Description

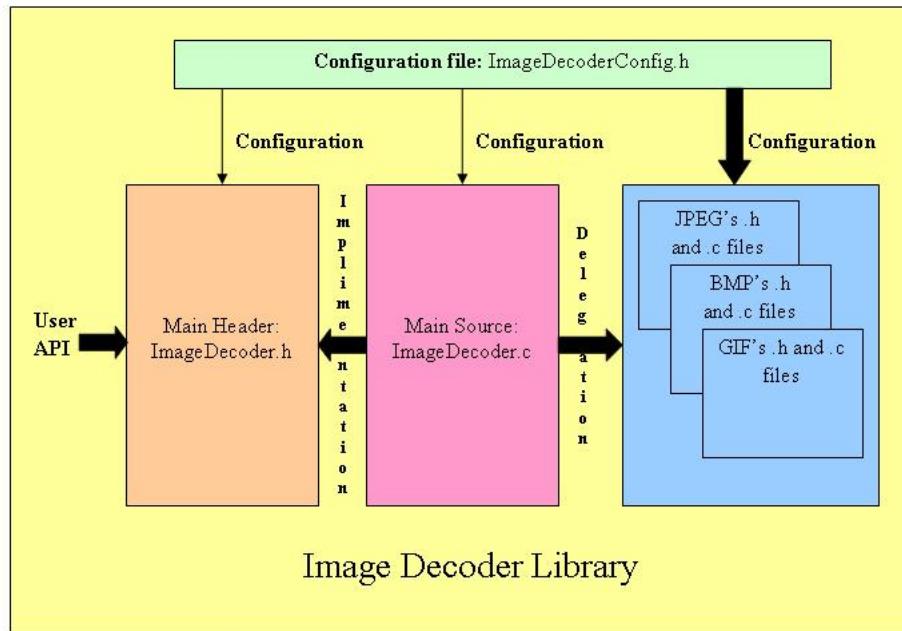
The Image Decoder Library supports the decoding of images in JPEG, BMP, and GIF format in PIC24, dsPIC, and PIC32 devices. This is a supplement to the Graphics Library but could be used without the Graphics Library. It not only supports input data through the Microchip's MDD file system but it can also be configured to support user specific inputs from ROM, external EEPROM, etc. The output can be sent to the Graphics Display through the driver provided with the Graphics Library or to a callback function where user can further render the decoded image (even if Graphics Library is not used). The individual decoders provided uses the stack for the work memory and hence a heap is not required.

## Design

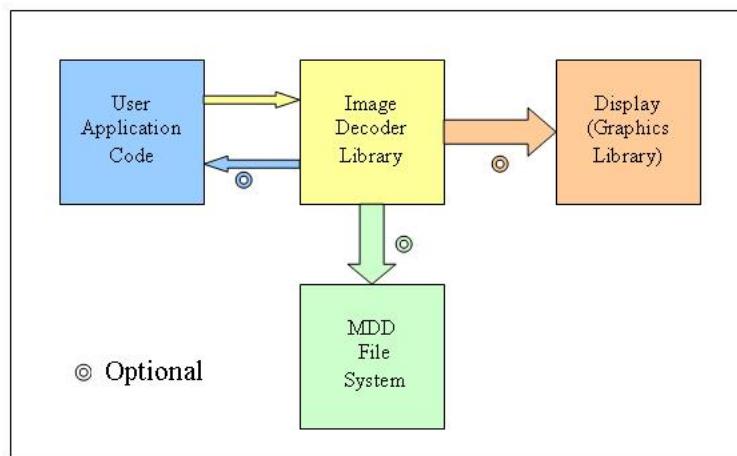
The Image Decoder library includes the following files:

1. Configuration file
  - ImageDecoderConfig.h
2. Header files
  - Main Header
  - ImageDecoder.h
  - Individual decoder headers
  - JpegDecoder.h
  - BmpDecoder.h
  - GifDecoder.h
3. Source files
  - Main Source file
  - ImageDecoder.c
  - Individual Source files
  - JpegDecoder.c
  - BmpDecoder.c
  - GifDecoder.c
4. Support files
  - jidctint.c

This can be diagrammatically explained as below:



The user application interacts with the Image Decoder Library as per the diagram below:



User can use the Graphics Library for output or can provide his/her own output pixel handler callback function. Similarly, user can use MDD file system or provide his/her own input source which implements some specific APIs explained later.

## Configuration

The compile time configurations can be done using the `ImageDecoderConfig.h` file. This file must be copied into the application folder like the other config files. The options provided are as explained below:

### 1. Image format support

The image formats which are not required can be compiled out by commenting out the respective defines. The below section says that GIF support to be excluded.

```
/* Comment out the image formats which are not required */
#define IMG_SUPPORT_BMP
#define IMG_SUPPORT_JPEG
//#define IMG_SUPPORT_GIF
```

### 2. Optimize for Graphics Library

If user application requires to output the image directly to the display without any double buffering, then the code can be

optimized by defining as below:

```
/* Comment out if output has to be given through a callback function */
/* If defined, the code is optimized to use only the graphics driver, only
16-bit-565-color-format is supported */
#define IMG_USE_ONLY_565_GRAPHICS_DRIVER_FOR_OUTPUT
```

If either double buffering has to be done or if user specific rendering has to be done, comment out the above mentioned line and provide a callback function to render the pixel values. The callback function will be explained in the API section. If commented out, then the width and height of the display screen has to be provided using the following defines

```
/* If the above define is commented out (Graphics driver is not included by default), then
the below defines has to be set by the user */
#ifndef IMG_USE_ONLY_565_GRAPHICS_DRIVER_FOR_OUTPUT
#define DISP_HOR_RESOLUTION      320
#define DISP_VER_RESOLUTION      240
#endif
```

### 3. Optimize for MDD file system

If user application uses only the MDD file system provided by Microchip Technology Inc., the code can be optimized by defining as below:

```
/* If defined, the code is optimized to use only the MDD file system */
#define IMG_USE_ONLY_MDD_FILE_SYSTEM_FOR_INPUT
```

If MDD file system is not used or if additional input formats have to be supported, the above define has to be commented out and a structure pointing to the required APIs (IMG\_FILE\_SYSTEM\_API defined in ImageDecoder.h) must be provided by the user.

### 4. Loop callback support

Since decoder takes up significant amount of time decoding an image and user may want to update some information on the display or to send/receive data through communication channel, etc... it is possible to release processing power in the middle of decoding process by calling a callback function provided by the user. The user can do all the housekeeping activities inside the function. This option can be enabled by defining as below:

```
/* If defined, the a loop callback function is called in every
decoding loop so that application can do maintenance activities such as
getting data, updating display, etc... */
#define IMG_SUPPORT_IMAGE_DECODER_LOOP_CALLBACK
```

The JPEG decoder calls the callback function after every 8x8 pixel block decode while the BMP and GIF decoders calls after every row decode.

If this support is not required, then this define can be commented out.

### Footprint

The following are typical values for PIC24 with default compiler configuration. Actual values may vary with various factors such as compiler optimization levels and device used (PIC24/PIC32).

	RAM (stack)	ROM (no compiler optimizations)	
Image Decoder Core Code	30 Bytes	1 KBytes	
<b>Image Types</b>			<b>Decode Time (in seconds) Using 16 MIPS &amp; Compiler Optimization Level 3</b>
BMP	1 KBytes	10 KBytes	2 <sup>1</sup>
JPEG	3 KBytes	13 KBytes	2 <sup>1</sup>
GIF	11 KBytes(13 KBytes <sup>2</sup> )	6 KBytes	2 <sup>1</sup>

(1) Approximate value for average quality image file with a pixel resolution of 320x240. Additional variance in time can be

observed due to image quality/image size and file access time.

(2) GIF code "Crush" optimization (GIF\_CRUSH\_PREV\_SYMBOL\_PTR\_TABLE) is turned off. This compile switch can be found in GifDecoder.h file. Enabling this will have an additional effect on the GIF decoding time.

---

## 8.1 Demo Project

---

### 8.1.1 Image Decoder Demo

This demo demonstrates the decoding of images with JPEG and BMP file formats.

#### Module

[Image Decoders \(](#)

#### Description

Please refer to the getting started htm document located at <Install Directory>/Microchip/Graphics/Documents/Getting Started/Getting Started - Running the Image Decoders Demo.htm, where <Install Directory> is the root directory of the Microchip Applications Library.

# 9 Image Decoders API

## Functions

	Name	Description
💡	ImageDecode (🔗)	This function decodes and displays the image on the screen
💡	ImageDecoderInit (🔗)	This function initializes the global variables to 0 and then initializes the driver. This must be called once before any other function of the library is called
💡	ImageLoopCallbackRegister (🔗)	This function registers the loop callback function so that the decoder calls this function in every decoding loop. This can be used by the application program to do maintenance activities such as fetching data, updating the display, etc...
💡	ImageDecodeTask (🔗)	This function completes one small part of the image decode function

## Macros

Name	Description
ImageFullScreenDecode (🔗)	This function decodes and displays the image on the screen in fullscreen mode with center aligned and downscaled if required
ImageAbort (🔗)	This function sets the Image Decoder's Abort flag so that decoding aborts in the next decoding loop.

## Structures

	Name	Description
◆	_BMPDECODER (🔗)	DATA STRUCTURES
◆	_GIFDECODER (🔗)	DATA STRUCTURES
◆	_JPEGDECODER (🔗)	DATA STRUCTURES

## Description

The Image Decoder Library distributed with the Graphics Library supports the decoding of images in JPEG, BMP, and GIF format in PIC24, dsPIC, and PIC32 devices. This is a supplement to the Graphics Library but could be used without the Graphics Library. This section describes the APIs for Image Decoder Library.

## 9.1 Image Decoder Configuration

The Image Decoder Library can be customized by adding or specifying the compile time options located in the application file named ImageDecoderConfig.h.

## Macros

Name	Description
IMG_SUPPORT_BMP (🔗)	Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for bitmap image format decoding.
IMG_SUPPORT_GIF (🔗)	Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for gif image format decoding.
IMG_SUPPORT_JPEG (🔗)	Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for jpeg image format decoding.

IMG_SUPPORT_IMAGE_DECODER_LOOP_CALLBACK (🔗)	The decoder may take up significant amount of time decoding an image and user may want to update some information on the display or to send/receive data through some communication channels. It is possible to release processing power in the middle of decoding process by calling a callback function provided by the user. The user should do all the housekeeping activities inside the function. This option can be enabled by adding this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h.
IMG_USE_ONLY_565_GRAPHICS_DRIVER_FOR_OUTPUT (🔗)	Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to optimize code for graphics driver that supports 16-bit 5-6-5 color format and rendering is done directly to the display buffer. If either double buffering has to be done or if user specific rendering has to be done, comment out the above mentioned line and provide a callback function to render the pixel values. The callback function will be explained in the API section. If commented out, then the width and height of the display screen has to be provided using the following defines
IMG_USE_ONLY_MDD_FILE_SYSTEM_FOR_INPUT (🔗)	Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to optimize code to use Memory Disk Drive File System(MDDFS) of Microchip MDD File System Interface Library .

**Description**

### 9.1.1 IMG\_SUPPORT\_BMP Macro

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**`#define IMG_SUPPORT_BMP`**Overview**

Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for bitmap image format decoding.

### 9.1.2 IMG\_SUPPORT\_GIF Macro

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**`#define IMG_SUPPORT_GIF`**Overview**

Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for gif image format decoding.

### 9.1.3 IMG\_SUPPORT\_JPEG Macro

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**

```
#define IMG_SUPPORT_JPEG
```

**Overview**

Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to enable support for jpeg image format decoding.

---

## 9.1.4

### **IMG\_SUPPORT\_IMAGE\_DECODER\_LOOP\_CALLBACK Macro**

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**

```
#define IMG_SUPPORT_IMAGE_DECODER_LOOP_CALLBACK
```

**Overview**

The decoder may takes up significant amount of time decoding an image and user may want to update some information on the display or to send/receive data through some communication channels. It is possible to release processing power in the middle of decoding process by calling a callback function provided by the user. The user should do all the housekeeping activities inside the function. This option can be enabled by adding this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h.

---

## 9.1.5

### **IMG\_USE\_ONLY\_565\_GRAPHICS\_DRIVER\_FOR\_OUTPUT Macro**

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**

```
#define IMG_USE_ONLY_565_GRAPHICS_DRIVER_FOR_OUTPUT
```

**Overview**

Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to optimize code for graphics driver that supports 16-bit 5-6-5 color format and rendering is done directly to the display buffer. If either double buffering has to be done or if user specific rendering has to be done, comment out the above mentioned line and provide a callback function to render the pixel values. The callback function will be explained in the API section. If commented out, then the width and height of the display screen has to be provided using the following defines

---

## 9.1.6 **IMG\_USE\_ONLY\_MDD\_FILE\_SYSTEM\_FOR\_INPUT Macro**

**File**

ImageDecoderConfig.h

**C**

```
#define IMG_USE_ONLY_MDD_FILE_SYSTEM_FOR_INPUT
```

**Overview**

Add this macro in ImageDecoderConfig.h to optimize code to use Memory Disk Drive File System(MDDFS) of Microchip MDD File System Interface Library .

## 9.2 ImageDecode Function

**File**

ImageDecoder.h

**C**

```
BYTE ImageDecode(
    IMG_FILE * pImageFile,
    IMG_FILE_FORMAT eImgFormat,
    WORD wStartx,
    WORD wStarty,
    WORD wWidth,
    WORD wHeight,
    WORD wFlags,
    IMG_FILE_SYSTEM_API * pFileAPIs,
    IMG_PIXEL_OUTPUT pPixelOutput
);
```

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

Error code -> 0 means no error

**Example**

```
void main(void)
{
    IMG_FILE plmageFile;
    IMG_vInitialize();
    plmageFile = IMG_FOPEN("Image.jpg", "r");
    if(plmageFile == NULL)
    {
        <- Error handling -
    }
    IMG_bDecode(plmageFile, IMG_JPEG, 0, 0, 320, 240, 0, NULL, NULL);
    IMG_FCLOSE(plmageFile);
    while(1);
}
```

**Overview**

This function decodes and displays the image on the screen

**Syntax**

```
BYTE ImageDecode(IMG_FILE *pImageFile, IMG_FILE_FORMAT eImgFormat, WORD wStartx, WORD wStarty, WORD wWidth, WORD wHeight, WORD wFlags, IMG_FILE_SYSTEM_API *pFileAPIs, IMG_PIXEL_OUTPUT pPixelOutput)
```

## 9.3 ImageDecoderInit Function

**File**

ImageDecoder.h

**C**

```
void ImageDecoderInit();
```

**Side Effects**

The graphics driver will be reset

**Returns**

None

**Example**

```
void main(void)
{
    ImageInit();
    ...
}
```

**Overview**

This function initializes the global variables to 0 and then initializes the driver. This must be called once before any other function of the library is called

**Syntax**

```
void ImageDecoderInit(void)
```

---

## 9.4 ImageLoopCallbackRegister Function

**File**

ImageDecoder.h

**C**

```
void ImageLoopCallbackRegister(
    IMG_LOOP_CALLBACK pFn
);
```

**Side Effects**

The graphics driver will be reset

**Returns**

None

**Example**

```
void Mainantance(void)
{
    ...
}

void main(void)
{
```

```

    ImageInit();
    ImageLoopCallbackRegister(Mainantance);
    ...
}

```

**Overview**

This function registers the loop callback function so that the decoder calls this function in every decoding loop. This can be used by the application program to do maintenance activities such as fetching data, updating the display, etc...

**Syntax**

```
void ImageLoopCallbackRegister(IMG_LOOP_CALLBACK pLoopCallbackFn)
```

## 9.5 ImageDecodeTask Function

**File**

```
ImageDecoder.h
```

**C**

```
BYTE ImageDecodeTask();
```

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

Status code - '1' means decoding is completed

- '0' means decoding is not yet completed, call this function again

**Example**

```
IMG_bFullScreenDecode(pImageFile, IMG_JPEG, NULL, NULL);
while(!ImageDecodeTask());
```

**Overview**

This function completes one small part of the image decode function

**Syntax**

```
BYTE ImageDecodeTask(void)
```

## 9.6 ImageFullScreenDecode Macro

**File**

```
ImageDecoder.h
```

**C**

```
#define ImageFullScreenDecode(pImageFile, eImgFormat, pFileAPIs, pPixelOutput) \
    ImageDecode(pImageFile, eImgFormat, 0, 0, IMG_SCREEN_WIDTH, IMG_SCREEN_HEIGHT, \
    (IMG_ALIGN_CENTER | IMG_DOWN_SCALE), pFileAPIs, pPixelOutput)
```

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

Error code -> 0 means no error

**Example**

```
void main(void)
{
    IMG_FILE plImageFile;
    IMG_vInitialize();
    plImageFile = IMG_FOPEN("Image.jpg", "r");
    if(plImageFile == NULL)
    {
        <- Error handling ->
    }
    IMG_bFullScreenDecode(plImageFile, IMG_JPEG, NULL, NULL);
    IMG_FCLOSE(plImageFile);
    while(1);
}
```

**Overview**

This function decodes and displays the image on the screen in fullscreen mode with center aligned and downscaled if required

**Syntax**

```
BYTE ImageFullScreenDecode(IMG_FILE *plImageFile, IMG_FILE_FORMAT eImgFormat, IMG_FILE_SYSTEM_API pFileAPIs, IMG_PIXEL_OUTPUT pPixelOutput)
```

## 9.7 ImageAbort Macro

**File**

ImageDecoder.h

**C**

```
#define ImageAbort IMG_bAbortImageDecoding = 1;
```

**Side Effects**

None

**Returns**

None

**Example**

```
void callback(void);
void main(void)
{
    IMG_FILE plImageFile;
    IMG_vInitialize();
    ImageLoopCallbackRegister(callback);
    plImageFile = IMG_FOPEN("Image.jpg", "r");
    if(plImageFile == NULL)
    {
        <- Error handling ->
    }
    IMG_bFullScreenDecode(plImageFile, IMG_JPEG, NULL, NULL);
    IMG_FCLOSE(plImageFile);
    while(1);
}

void callback(void)
{
    if(<- check for abort condition ->)
```

```
{
    ImageAbort();
}
}
```

**Overview**

This function sets the Image Decoder's Abort flag so that decoding aborts in the next decoding loop.

**Syntax**

```
void ImageAbort(void)
```

## 9.8 \_BMPDECODER Structure

**File**

BmpDecoder.c

**C**

```
struct _BMPDECODER {
    IMG_FILE * pImageFile;
    LONG lWidth;
    LONG lHeight;
    LONG lImageOffset;
    WORD wPaletteEntries;
    BYTE bBitsPerPixel;
    BYTE bHeaderType;
    BYTE blBmMarkerFlag : 1;
    BYTE blCompressionType : 3;
    BYTE bNumOfPlanes : 3;
    BYTE b16bit565Flag : 1;
    BYTE aPalette[256][3];
};
```

**Members**

Members	Description
IMG_FILE * pImageFile;	Image file pointer
BYTE aPalette[256][3];	Each palette entry has RGB

**Description**

DATA STRUCTURES

## 9.9 \_GIFDECODER Structure

**File**

GifDecoder.c

**C**

```
struct _GIFDECODER {
    IMG_FILE * pImageFile;
    WORD wImageWidth;
    WORD wImageHeight;
    WORD wImageX;
    WORD wImageY;
    WORD wScreenWidth;
    WORD wScreenHeight;
    WORD wGlobalPaletteEntries;
```

```

WORD wLocalPaletteEntries;
BYTE bBgColorIndex;
BYTE bPixelAspectRatio;
BYTE blGifMarkerFlag : 1;
BYTE blGlobalColorTableFlag : 1;
BYTE blLocalColorTableFlag : 1;
BYTE blInterlacedFlag : 1;
BYTE blFirstcodeFlag : 1;
BYTE bInterlacePass : 3;
BYTE aPalette[256][3];
WORD awPalette[256];
BYTE abSymbol[4096];
WORD awPrevSymbolPtr[(4096 * 3)/4];
WORD wInitialSymbols;
WORD wMaxSymbol;
BYTE bInitialSymbolBits;
BYTE bMaxSymbolBits;
LONG lGlobalColorTablePos;
BYTE bWorkBits;
BYTE bRemainingDataInBlock;
BYTE bRemainingBits;
WORD wCurrentX;
WORD wCurrentY;
};

} ;

```

**Members**

Members	Description
IMG_FILE * pImageFile;	Image file pointer
BYTE aPalette[256][3];	Each palette entry has RGB
WORD awPalette[256];	Each palette entry has RGB
BYTE abSymbol[4096];	For decoding
BYTE bWorkBits;	Work memory

**Description**

DATA STRUCTURES

---

## 9.10 \_JPEGDECODER Structure

**File**

JpegDecoder.c

**C**

```

struct _JPEGDECODER {
    IMG_FILE * pImageFile;
    BYTE blFIF;
    BYTE bMajorRev;
    BYTE bMinorRev;
    BYTE bDataBits;
    WORD wWidth;
    WORD wHeight;
    BYTE bChannels;
    BYTE abChannelType[MAX_CHANNELS];
    BYTE abChannelHSampFactor[MAX_CHANNELS];
    BYTE abChannelVSampFactor[MAX_CHANNELS];
    BYTE abChannelQuantTableMap[MAX_CHANNELS];
    BYTE blQuantUses16bits;
    WORD awQuantTable[MAX_CHANNELS][64];
    WORD wRestartInterval;
    BYTE bHuffTables;
    BYTE abHuffAcSymLen[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];
    BYTE abHuffAcSymbol[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][256];
};

```

```

BYTE abHuffDcSymLen[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];
BYTE abHuffDcSymbol[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];
WORD awHuffAcSymStart[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];
WORD awHuffDcSymStart[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];
BYTE abChannelHuffAcTableMap[MAX_CHANNELS];
BYTE abChannelHuffDcTableMap[MAX_CHANNELS];
BYTE bError;
WORD wWorkBits;
BYTE bBitsAvailable;
BYTE bBlocksInOnePass;
SHORT asOneBlock[MAX_BLOCKS][64];
WORD wBlockNumber;
BYTE abChannelMap[MAX_BLOCKS];
BYTE bSubSampleType;
SHORT asPrevDcValue[MAX_CHANNELS];
BYTE * pbCurrentHuffSymLenTable;
BYTE * pbCurrentHuffSymbolTable;
WORD * pwCurrentHuffSymStartTable;
WORD * pwCurrentQuantTable;
BYTE abDataBuffer[MAX_DATA_BUF_LEN];
WORD wBufferLen;
WORD wBufferIndex;
BYTE bFirstBit;
WORD wPrevX;
WORD wPrevY;
};

}

```

## Members

Members	Description
IMG_FILE * plImageFile;	Image file pointer
BYTE blJFIF;	JFIF marker found flag
BYTE bMajorRev;	Should be 1
BYTE bMinorRev;	Should be 0-2 but is not a show stopper ----- The x/y densities and thumbnail data are ignored
BYTE bDataBits;	Data precision, can be 8(, 12 or 16)
WORD wWidth;	Width in pixels
WORD wHeight;	Height in pixels
BYTE bChannels;	Number of channels e.g. YCbCr = 3
BYTE blQuantUses16bits;	If flag is set, it is an error as 16 bit is not supported
WORD awQuantTable[MAX_CHANNELS][64];	Supports only 8 & 16 bit resolutions
WORD wRestartInterval;	The restart interval in blocks
BYTE bHuffTables;	From DHT
BYTE abHuffAcSymLen[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];	Supports only 8 bit resolution
BYTE abHuffAcSymbol[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][256];	Maximum possible symbols are 256
BYTE abHuffDcSymLen[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];	Supports only 8 bit resolution
BYTE abHuffDcSymbol[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];	Maximum possible symbols are 16 for DC :-)
WORD awHuffAcSymStart[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];	Starting symbol for each length
WORD awHuffDcSymStart[MAX_HUFF_TABLES][16];	Starting symbol for each length
BYTE abChannelHuffAcTableMap[MAX_CHANNELS];	From SOS
WORD wWorkBits;	Work memory
SHORT asOneBlock[MAX_BLOCKS][64];	Temporary storage for a 8x8 block

**Description**

DATA STRUCTURES

# 10 Miscellaneous Topics

This section contains common procedures to start using the library or to modify the library.

## 10.1 Starting a New Project

This outlines the procedure to create a new project that uses the Microchip Graphics Library from scratch.

### Description

The following is a step by step instruction to create a New Project from scratch with the Microchip Graphics Library

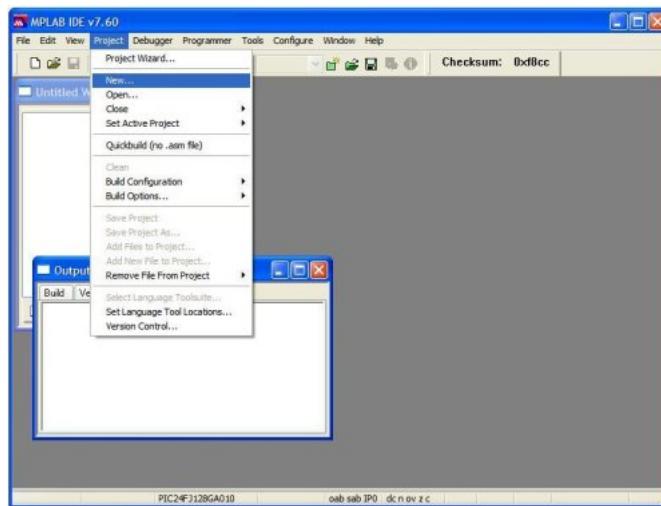
**Step 1:** Install the Microchip Application Libraries to get the Microchip Graphics Library. The Microchip Application Library installer can be downloaded from [www.microchip.com/MLA](http://www.microchip.com/MLA). Once installed the Microchip Graphics Library files will be located in the directory structure shown below.

```
<MyProjects>
  |
  Board Support Package
  Graphics
  GraphicsProjects1
  Microchip
    |
    Help
    Graphics
      |
      Drivers
      Include
        |
        Graphics
```

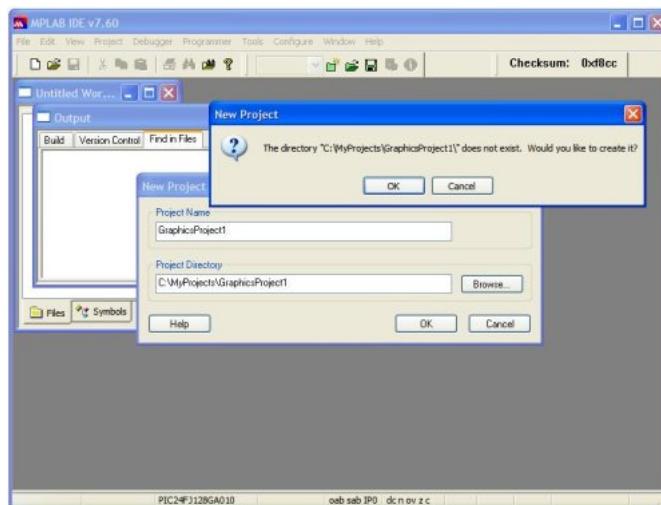
- MyProjects can be any name and is the directory name that you chose when you installed the Microchip Application Libraries.
- Graphics directory will contain demos distributed with the Graphics Library.
- Board Support Package directory will contain drivers for components on Microchip Development Boards that are used by the demos.
- GraphicsProject1 directory can be any directory name that you specify later for your own project.
- Microchip directory will contain all the library files.
- Under Microchip directory, the Help directory will contain the "Graphics.chm" file.
- Under Microchip directory, the Graphics directory under the Microchip directory will contain all the source (C) files for the Graphics Library except the actual display driver files. Under the Drivers directory, all the supported driver files released with the library is located.
- Under Microchip directory, the Include directory will have another Graphics directory that will contain all the header files for the Graphics Library. All other header files will be located under Microchip/Include directory.

### Step 2: Creating the MPLAB project

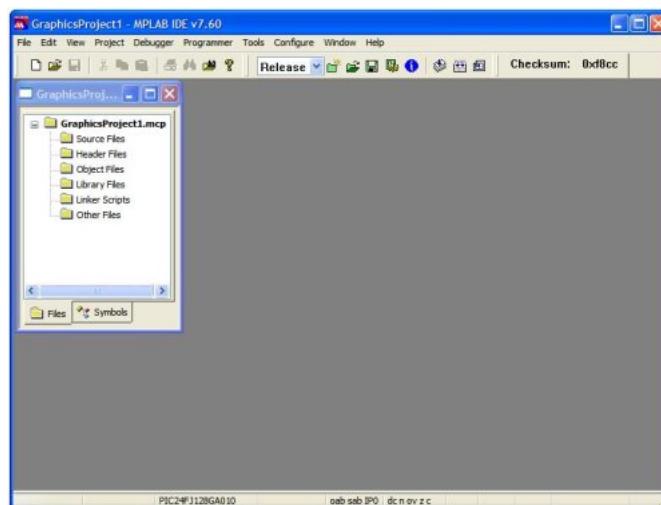
1. Open MPLAB Project.
2. Go to **Project** tab and select **New**



3. New Project dialog box will appear. In this dialog box enter your **Project Name** and **Project Directory**. Click **OK**. Project will be created or prompted to create the directory if your project directory does not exist (refer to figure below).



4. The MPLAB Project view will appear as soon as the project is created. If it does not appear go to **View** tab and click **Project**.



5. Right click on the **Source Files** and click **Add Files**. Browse to *MyApplication->Microchip->Graphics* directory. Select appropriate c files and click **Open**. The C files that you select will depend on the application that you will be creating. The following tables shows the minimum files required for each layer of the Graphics Library.

Display Driver Layer	
DisplayDriver.h	Header that contains required APIs for display driver to be compatible with Microchip Graphics Library.
gfxepmp.c gfxepmp.h	Required if using display drivers for external display controller that will use the Enhanced Parallel Master Port (EPMP) for display controller communications.
gfpmp.h	Required if using display drivers for external display controller that will use the Parallel Master Port (PMP) for display controller communications.
gftcon.h	Required if using Microchip supplied display drivers that requires timing controller initialization. If creating your own display controller driver, you may integrate the timing controller initialization into your display driver file.
Display Driver c and h files	These are the display driver files needed. These can be your own created display driver or Microchip supplied display drivers distributed with the Graphics Library.

Primitive Layer	
Primitive.c Primitive.h	These two files implements the Primitive Layer of the Microchip Graphics Library.
Transitions.c Transitions.h Transitions_weak.c	Implements the extended primitive functions for screen transitions. The Screen Transition features are only supported by the Epson driver (S1D13517.c and S1D13517.h) and the PIC24FJ256DA210 driver (mchpGfxDrv.c and mchpGfxDrv.h)

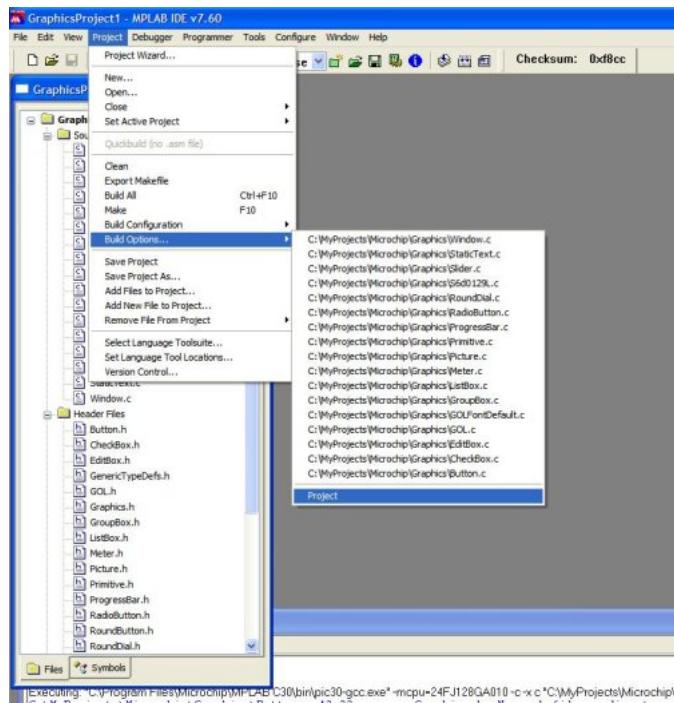
Graphics Object Layer	
GOL.c GOL.h	These two files along with the individual widget files implements the Graphics Object Layer of the Microchip Graphics Library.
GOLFontDefault.c	This is the default font used for the Graphics Object Layer.
GOLSchemeDefault.c	This is the default style scheme used for the Graphics Object Layer.
Widget files (example: Button.c Button.h)	Required files when using the widgets in the Graphics Object Layer.

Configuration	
Graphics.h	Required file that loads the different components of the Graphics Library.
GraphicsConfig.h	Required file to determine the features and modes that are enabled in the Graphics Library.
HardwareProfile.h	Required file when running demos distributed with the Microchip Graphics Library or using drivers distributed in "Board Support Package".

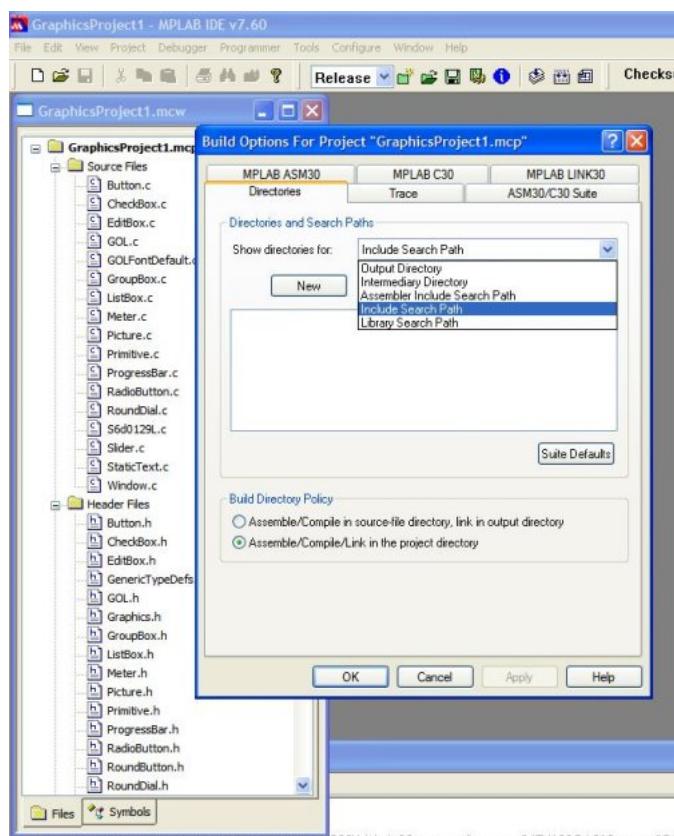
6. Right click on the **Header Files** and click **Add Files**. Browse to *MyApplication->Microchip->Include* directory. Select **GenericTypeDefs.h** file and click **Open**.
7. Right click on the **Header Files** and click **Add Files**. Browse to *MyApplication->Microchip->Include->Graphics* directory. Select all the h files and click **Open**. The header files to include will depend on the application as described in 5.

**Step 3:** Setting the project directories.

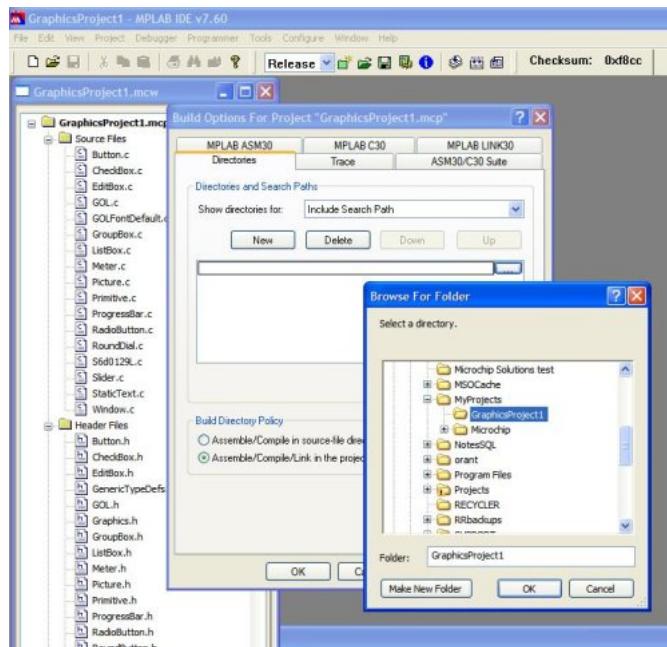
1. In MPLAB Project, go to **Project** tab and point to **Build Options**.



2. A menu will appear showing all your files and the **Project** option. Select the **Project** option. The **Build Options** window will open.
3. Select the **Directories** tab.



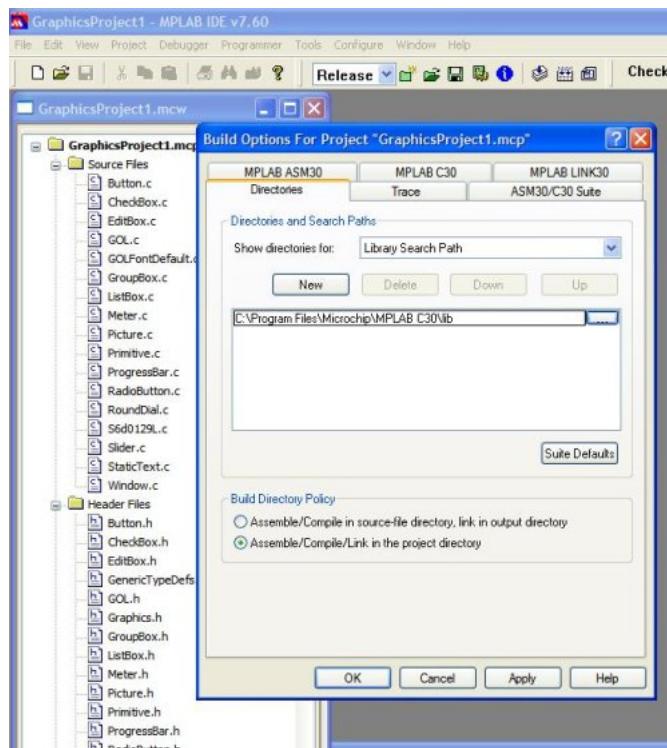
4. In the **Directories** tab, **Directories and Search Paths** group box and **Show directories for:** select **Include Search Path**. Click **New**.
5. Click the button with (...) and browse and select your project directory. Click **OK**. This will add your project directory.



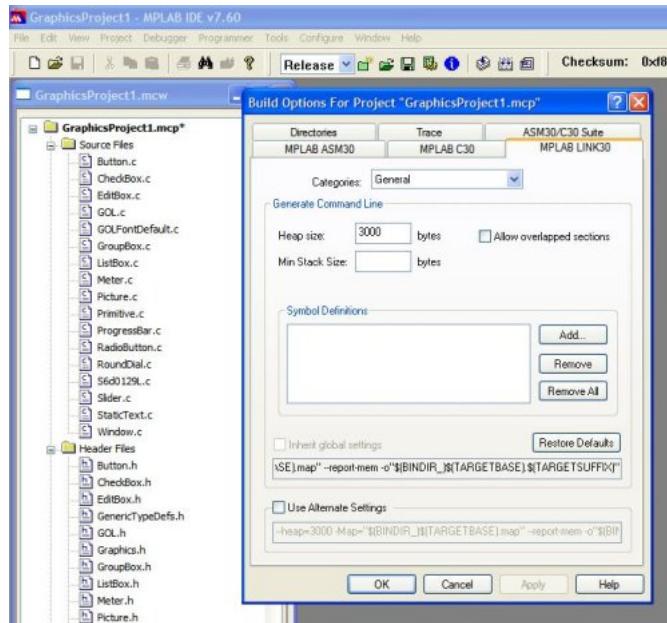
6. Click New again for each of the following paths:

1. .
  2. ..\..\Microchip\Include
  3. ..\..\Board Support Package (do this only if you are using the drivers supplied in the "Board Support Package" director\_)
- 7. Directories and Search Paths** group box and **Show directories for:** select **Library Search Path**. Click **New**.

8. Enter the path to the MPLAB C30 lib. For example: C:\Program Files\Microchip\MPLAB C30\lib. Click **OK**.



9. Change from the **Directories** tab to **MPLAB LINK 30** tab. In the **Generate Command Line** group box enter 3000 in the **Heap Size** setting.



10. Click **Apply** and then **OK**.

#### Step 4: Create your application files.

1. In MPLAB Project, select **File** tab and click **New**. The file editor will open.

2. Create your **GraphicsConfig.h** file. For now add the following lines:

```
#define USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG // Comment this line to use blocking configuration
#define USE_BUTTON // Enable Button Object.
#define USE_SLIDER // Enable Slider or Scroll Bar Object.

#define USE_FONT_FLASH // Support for fonts located in internal flash
#define USE_BITMAP_FLASH // Support for bitmaps located in internal flash
```

The file name is important. If the file name is changed, library will not compile properly.

3. Save the file into your **GraphicsProject1** directory.

4. Similarly, create your application header file code by following steps 1 and 2. For simplicity just use this code for now:

```
#define SYSCLK 32000000 // 8MHz x 4PLL Oscillator frequency
// includes
#include <p24Fxxxx.h>
#include "GenericTypeDefs.h"
#include "Graphics.h"
```

5. Save the file in your **GraphicsProject1** directory.

6. After saving the two header files, add these files to your project.

7. Create your application code. For simplicity just use this code for now:

```
#include "GraphicsProject.h" // header file you saved earlier
// Configuration bits
_CONFIG2(FNOSC_PRIPLL & POSCMOD_XT) // Primary XT OSC with PLL
_CONFIG1(JTAGEN_OFF & FWDTEN_OFF) // JTAG off, watchdog timer off

int main(void){

    GOL_MSG msg; // GOL message structure to interact with GOL
    GOLInit(); // initialize graphics library &
    BtnCreate( 1, // object's ID
               20, 160, 150, 210, // object's dimension
               0, // radius of the rounded edge
               BTN_DRAW, // draw the object after creation
               NULL, // no bitmap used
               "LEFT", // use this text
```

```

        NULL);           // use alternative style scheme
BtnCreate( 2,
    170, 160, 300, 210,
    0,
    BTN_DRAW,
    NULL,
    "RIGHT",
    NULL);
SldCreate(3,
    20, 105, 300, 150,
    SLD_DRAW,           // draw the object after creation
    100,               // range
    5,                 // page
    50,                // initial position
    NULL);             // use default style scheme
while(1){
    if (GOLDraw()) {           // Draw GOL object
    }
}
}

WORD GOLMsgCallback(WORD objMsg, OBJ_HEADER* pObj, GOL_MSG* pMsg){
    return 1;
}

WORD GOLDrawCallback(){
    return 1;
}

```

8. Save the file in your **GraphicsProject1** directory.

9. After saving the application file, add the file to your project.

**Step 5** Now build your project. To build go to MPLAB **Project** tab and click **Build All**. Notice there will be some warnings that may come out in the build log. This is due to the fact that we have not used most of the Objects. We only used the Slider (█) and Button (█).

**Step 6:** Downloading your application - To download your generated code to the Explorer 16 board follow the steps below.

1. In the MPLAB **Programmer** tab click **Select Programmer**.
2. Select **MPLAB ICD2 or REAL ICE** depending on your setup.
3. After connection and testing is done go to **Programmer** tab and click **Program**.

Note that you can also do the steps in the Downloading the Demos (█) sub-section in the Getting Started (█) section to download your application to the Explorer 16 board using your generated hex file.

## 10.2 Changing the default Font

The library comes with the default font (Gentium 18). This font can be changed in two ways.

### Description

This instructions assumes that you have performed the conversion of your raster font or True Type font into C file. For the conversion of your raster font please see the help file of the Graphics Resource Converter utility that comes with the Graphics Library.

There are two ways to replace the default font in the Graphics Library.

#### Renaming User Font to GOLFonDefault (█):

1. Open the generated font file (generated by the "Graphics Resource Converter" utility) and change the font structure name to **GOLFonDefault** (█) (see figure below).

```

extern const char L1191258975[] __attribute__((aligned(2)));
//FONT STRUCTURE. FONT NAME CAN BE CHANGED HERE.
const struct{short mem; const char* ptr;} GOLFonDefault =
{0,L1191258975};
const char L1191258975[] __attribute__((aligned(2))) = {

```

2. Remove the file **GOLFONDefault.c** in the project and replace it with your own font file that contains the **GOLFonDefault** (█).
3. Build and test your new font.

#### Replacing the GOLFonDefault (█) with any user defined fonts

1. Open the **GraphicsConfig.h** file and add the following lines:

```
#define FONTDEFAULT yourFontName
```

2. In the project, add the generated font file (generated by the "Graphics Resource Converter" utility).

3. Build and test your new font.

In this method, GOL.h and GOLFonDefault.c files checks if FONTDEFAULT (█) is defined. If it is, it skips the declaration of the GOLFonDefault (█) and uses the user defined font.

## 10.3 Advanced Font Features

Fonts used in the library can be configured to use anti-aliasing and extended glyph support.

### Description

#### Font Anti-Aliasing

Anti-aliasing is a technique used to make the edges of text appear smooth. This is useful especially with characters like 'A', 'O', etc which has slant or curved lines. Since the pixels of the display are arranged in rectangular fashion, slant edges can't be represented smoothly. To make them appear smooth, a pixel adjacent to the pixels is painted with an average of the foreground and background colors as depicted in Figure 1.

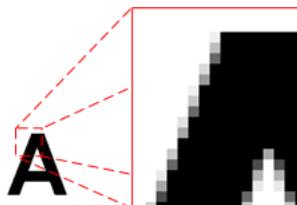


Figure 1: Font with Anti-Aliasing

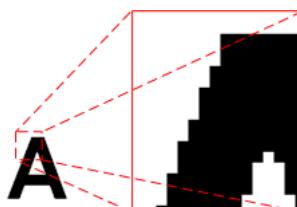


Figure 2: Font with No Anti-Aliasing

When anti-aliasing is turned off, the pixels abruptly changes from background color to foreground color shown in Figure 2. To implement anti-aliasing, adjacent pixels transitions from background to foreground color using 25% or 75% mid-color values from background to foreground colors. This feature in fonts will require roughly twice the size of memory storage

required for font glyphs with no anti-aliasing.

Since the average of foreground and background colors needs to be calculated at runtime, the rendering of anti-aliased fonts take more time than rendering normal fonts. To optimize the rendering speed, a macro named GFX\_Font\_SetAntiAliasType (🔗) is available where anti-alias type can be set to ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE (🔗) or ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT (🔗).

- ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE (🔗) (default after initialization of graphics) - mid colors are calculated once while rendering each character which is ideal for rendering text over a constant background.
- ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT (🔗) - the mid values are calculated for every necessary pixel and this feature is useful while rendering text over an image or on a non-constant color background.

As a result, rendering anti-aliased text takes longer with ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT (🔗) type than compared to ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE (🔗) type.

To use anti-aliasing, enable the compiler switch #define USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS (🔗) in the GraphicsConfig.h file and enable the anti-alias checkbox in the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) tool while selecting the font.

**Note:** Even when anti-aliasing is enabled, normal fonts can be used without the antialias effect.

### Extended Glyphs

Extended glyphs are needed to render characters of certain languages which use more than one byte to represent a single character. For example: Asian languages like Thai, Hindi, etc. In these character set, more than one glyph overlaps each other to form a single character of that language as shown in Figure 3. To use this feature, enable the Extended Glyph checkbox in the Graphics Resource Converter (GRC) tool while selecting the font.

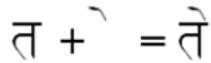


Figure 3: Example of a Character that is Formed by Two Overlapping Glyphs

**Note:** The fonts used with extended glyphs are normal ANSI fonts and not Unicode fonts.

---

## 10.4 Using Primitive Rendering Functions in Blocking and Non-Blocking Modes

Basic rendering functions such as Line(), Rectangle (🔗)(), Circle (🔗)() etc are referred to as functions in the Graphics Primitive Layer. These functions can also be implemented in the device driver layer if the display device supports hardware acceleration of the function. Applications that directly calls these functions can take advantage of the hardware accelerated primitives. How these functions are used will depend on the "Configuration Setting (🔗)".

### Description

All primitive rendering functions returns a status.

- 0 – when the primitive was not successfully rendered
- 1 – when the primitive was successfully rendered

When using Graphics Library you can enable the non-blocking mode when calling drawing/rendering functions. This is done by adding this line in your GraphicsConfig.h file:

```
#define USE_NONBLOCKING_CONFIG // Comment this line to use blocking configuration
```

When using a display controller with hardware accelerated primitives (like SSD1926 which is on the Graphics PICtail™ Plus Board Version 3 (AC164127-3) faster primitive rendering on Line(), Rectangle (🔗)() and Bar (🔗)() functions will be

performed. Compiling with the Blocking or Non-Blocking mode set will still use the accelerated primitives but the application code directly calling the primitive functions will have to be coded accordingly.

To explain the two modes when directly calling the primitive functions please take a look at the example below.

Case 1: USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG (■) disabled

```
// all primitives are blocking calls
Line(a,b);
Rectangle(c,d,e,f);
Bar(c+2, d+2, e-2, f-2)
```

Case 2: USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG (■) enabled

```
// all primitives are non-blocking calls
while(!Line(a,b));
while(!Rectangle(c,d,e,f));
while(!Bar(c+2, d+2, e-2, f-2));
```

If the while check is not in place, it possible that the only primitive that you will see in the screen is the Line().

For case 2, one can also be creative in the application code and implement some form of non-blocking scheme and make use of the time while waiting for the primitives to render.

Another example for case 2:

```
WORD DrawMyFigure(a, b, c, d, e, f)
{
    typedef enum {
        DRAW_LINE,
        DRAW_RECT,
        DRAW_BAR,
    } DRAW_MYFIGURE_STATES;
    static DRAW_MYFIGURE_STATES state = DRAW_LINE;

    if(IsDeviceBusy()) // checks if the hardware is still busy
        return 0;

    switch(state){
        case DRAW_LINE:
            if (!Line(a, b))
                return 0;
            state = DRAW_RECT;
        case DRAW_RECT:
            if (!Rectangle(c,d,e,f))
                return 0;
            state = DRAW_BAR;
        case DRAW_BAR:
            if (!Bar(c+2, d+2, e-2, f-2));
                return 0;
            state = DRAW_LINE;
        return 1;
    }
}
```

This non-blocking code can be used in the application and the application can do other tasks whenever DrawMyFigure() returns 0. Application should call DrawMyFigure() again until it return a 1 signifying that the Line, Rectangle (■) and Bar (■) were drawn successfully.

## 10.5 Using Microchip Graphics Module Color Look Up Table in Applications

Utilizing the Color Look Up Table (CLUT) of the Microchip Graphics Module saves memory for both storage and display buffer. This short instructional manual outlines the procedure to create source code files to use the CLUT of the Microchip

Graphics Module and enable the Microchip Graphics Library to use the hardware feature.

### Description

Apart from regular RGB scheme of representing colors, colors may also be represented using a Color Look Up Table (CLUT) also called Palette table, where there is a table of colors and the color is specified by the index of the table. Depending on the size of the table, the bits used to represent the index will vary. For example 256 entries of RGB (8 bit index), 16 entries of RGB (4 bit index), 4 entries of RGB (2 bit index) and 2 entries of RGB (1 bit index). This scheme is mainly used to save memory. See Figure-1 for an example of 16-entry (4-bit) CLUT where a shade of Green is represented by an index value of 3 consuming 4-bits. To figure the memory requirement for a give screen size at a color depth, bits per pixel, the follow equations is used: total number of pixels x bits per pixel / 8 bits per byte. For example the memory required for a 320x240 with 16 BPP screen;  $(320 \times 240) \times (16 / 8) = 153,600$  Bytes. If only 16 different colors are used in the screen, then instead of using raw RGB, a 16-entry (4-bit) CLUT may be used requiring a memory of  $(320 \times 240) \times (4/8) = 38,400$  bytes; thereby saving 75% of memory.

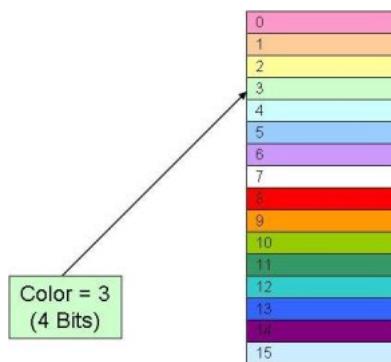


Figure 1. A 16-Entry (4-bit) Color Look Up Table

If the display driver hardware supports CLUT, the index values are translated to the RGB values by the hardware automatically when the signals are sent out to the display.

If the CLUT is enabled, since a CLUT affects the whole screen, all the color patterns like basic shapes and images which are displayed on the screen must use the same CLUT. It means that color defines like RED (█), GREEN (█), etc... must use the index values instead of the absolute RGB values. The bitmap images used must also use the same CLUT in order to appear properly on the screen. Note that the chosen CLUT length (1, 4, 16, or 256) must accommodate all the different colors needed by a screen. The following section explains how to create such a CLUT for a screen.

### Creating CLUT

Creating CLUT has 2 steps:

1. Creating a part of CLUT manually.
2. Filling the remaining part with the colors of the images used.
3. Using the Graphics Resource Converter to generate a CLUT based on the images to convert.

**Creating a part of CLUT manually** - Since users need to select specific colors for the shapes and the widgets, they must enter these specific colors in the CLUT. This can be done by manually creating a new CLUT table using a text editor. Create a text file and save it with a .gpl extension with the form:

```
GIMP Palette
Name: 16_colors
Columns: 4
#
0 0 0 BLACK
0 0 128 BLUE
128 0 0 RED
0 0 0 Unused
0 0 0 Unused
```

The second line specifies the name of the palette which must be unique. The palette table data starts with line 5 which represent index 0 with the RGB values and a caption. The number of such data lines must be equal to the length of the

CLUT. In the example, only 3 colors are used.

**Filling the remaining part with the colors of the images used** - Suppose 256 entries CLUT is being used, since 3 colors are manually set, only  $256 - 3 = 253$  entries are available for the images to be displayed on the same screen. If more than one image is used on the screen, it further implies that

- All images on the screen must use the same CLUT table.
- Different colors used for all the images along with the fixed colors must not exceed the size of the CLUT table being used.

If the source images are of RGB type, they must be converted into CLUT based images. This can be done using free PC tools like GIMP ([www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)).

The following steps shows how to convert the images using GIMP:

#### Step 1:

Create a new image with sufficient size to paste all the images required on the screen using *File->New* in the GIMP (see Figure-2).

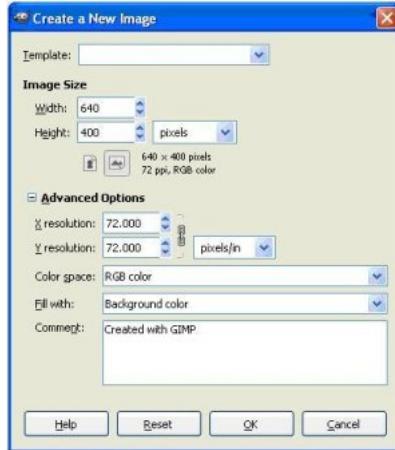


Figure 2. Creating New File in GIMP

#### Step 2:

Copy and paste all the images to be displayed on the screen into this image like in Figure 3. If 256 colors is enough for the entire application, a single CLUT can be used. If not multiple CLUT can be used. Each CLUT can be configured to use one or more screens. In this case, switching from one screen to another may require re-initializing the hardware CLUT entries before the screen is displayed.



Figure 3. Images Used in One Screen

#### Step 3:

Set the mode to CLUT by selecting *Image->Mode->Indexed* in the GIMP. Select to generate optimum palette with  $256 - 3 = 253$  entries (because we already have 3 fixed entries) as shown in Figure 4 and save it as a BMP (e.g. Collage.bmp) image by selecting *File->SaveAs* menu.

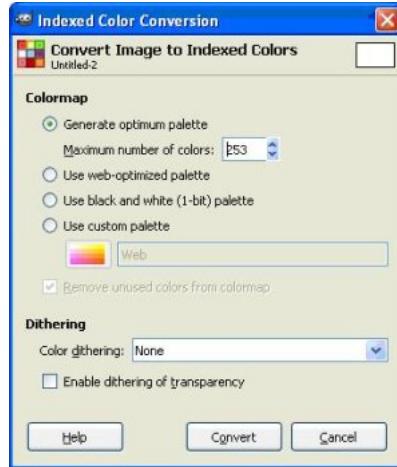


Figure 4. Generate a Palette Table (CLUT)

**Step 4:**

The next step is to extract the CLUT from the generated image. To do that, go to the palette selection mode by selecting *Image->Mode->RGB* and then again *Image->Mode->Indexed*. Select Use Custom Palette and open the palette selection dialog as shown in Figure 5 and import the previously saved bitmap image (Collage.bmp) as shown in Figure 6 and Figure 7. The palette file will be created in the [Home Folder]\gimp-x.y\palettes folder as a \*.gpl file.

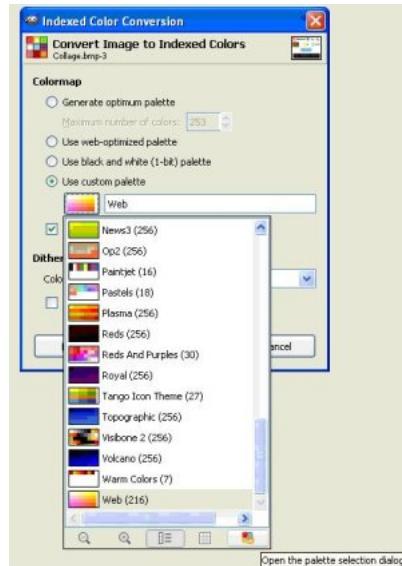


Figure 5. Palette Selection Dialog



Figure 6. Import Palette Dialog

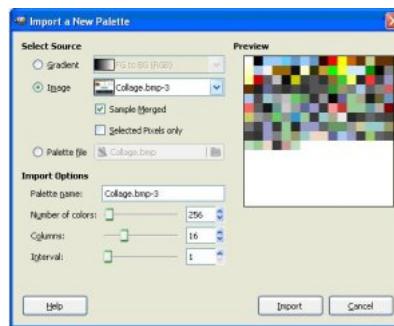


Figure 7. Import Collage Bitmap

**Step 5:**

Manually edit this and add the fixed color entries from the previously stored fixed palette file. (Manual step). Now a master palette file is created which has to be used in the application.

**Step 6:**

Open individual images in GIMP and apply this master palette to all of them through *Image->Mode->Indexed* and selecting 'Use Custom Palette'. Select the master palette which was generated and save the images. This will make all the images palette ready.

**Step 7:**

The next step is to convert this Palette.gpl and the images into the format recognizable by the Microchip Graphics Library. Start the Microchip's Graphics Resource Converter tool and enable the C30 Build (palette support is currently on selected PIC24F devices only) mode as shown in Figure 8. Open the master palette file previously generated by pressing Add Palette button and save it as a .c file (for storing in internal flash) or as a .hex file (for storing in external memory) similar to bitmap or font conversion as shown in Figure 10.

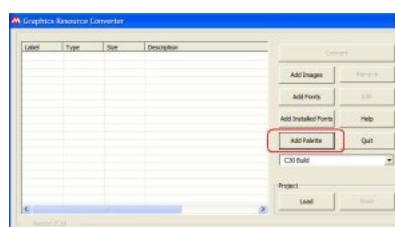


Figure 8. Load Palette

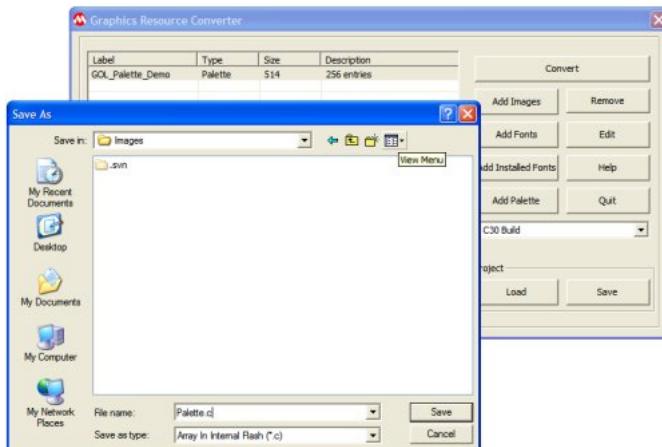


Figure 9. Convert Palette

**Step 8:**

Convert all the palette ready images to C file (\*.c) or Hex file (\*.hex) by pressing the Add Images button.

**Step 9:**

Import the palette with the extern statement like in “extern const PALETTE\_FLASH (█) \_GOL\_Palette\_Demo;” in the application. See MainDemo.c in “Graphics Object Layer Palette Demo”. Set the palette using the APIs SetPaletteBpp (█)() and SetPalette (█)() and then enable the palette using the API EnablePalette (█)() as shown in the below code example.

```
GOLInit();
SetPaletteBpp(8);
SetPalette((void*)&_GOL_Palette_Demo, 0, 256);
EnablePalette();
```

**Step 10:**

Import the images as usual and use them after setting and enabling the palette.

See “Graphics Object Layer Palette Demo” as a practical example.

**Using the Graphics Resource Converter to generate a CLUT based on the images to convert** - The Graphics Resource Converter will generate a CLUT based on the images to be converted. Please refer to the Graphics Resource Converter help file for more information.

---

## 10.6 Converting Images to Use a Common Palette in GIMP

This manual describes how to convert an image or a set of images to use a common palette in GIMP.

**Description****INTRODUCTION**

Some controllers have predefined palettes associated with them. The palette's colors can not be altered. When converting images, it is desired to have the images use the controller's predefined color palette. For example, a controller may have a grayscale palette of 16 colors. An image may use a palette of 16 grayscale colors, but the palette may define grayscale colors that are not the same as the controller's palette. By using the GNU Image Manipulation Program, GIMP, images can be converted using a palette matching the grayscale colors of the controller. After converting the image to use this palette, it

can be converted by the Graphics Resource Converter, GRC, to be used by Microchip's Graphics Library.

## DOWNLOADS

The following are helpful websites for downloaded the tools and firmware needed:

- GIMP 2.6 – GNU Image Manipulation Program ([www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org))
- Graphics Library – This library is part of the Microchip Application Libraries ([www.microchip.com/mla](http://www.microchip.com/mla))

## CONVERTING AN IMAGE

Follow these steps to convert an image to use a predefined color palette (for this example, that palette will be a 16 grayscale colors):

1. Open the GIMP application.
2. Load the image. FILE->Open
  - If the image is not a Bitmap, you will need to save it as one.
1. FILE-Save as...
2. Choose the Select File Type (By Extension)
3. Select Windows BMP Image
4. Select Save
5. Select Save under the Save as BMP dialog
3. Select WINDOWS->Dockable Dialogs->Palettes
  - The Palette Dialog will appear.
4. In the Palette Dialog Select Import Palette.
  - The Import Palette Dialog will appear.
5. Select the Palette file radio button.
  - Select the palette file .gpl (For example: Grayscale-Palette-4bpp.gpl)
6. Select the Import button.
  - The palette, Grayscale-Palette-4bpp, will show up in the Palette Dialog.
7. Select IMAGE->Mode->Indexed...
8. In the Indexed Color Conversion dialog, select the Use custom palette radio button
  - Type Grayscale Palette 4bpp to use this palette.
  - Select Convert
9. The image will now be converted using a 16 grayscale color palette.
10. Save the image as a Bitmap.

This image can now be converted by the GRC for use with the Microchip Graphics Library.

Here is an example of a palette file \*.gpl (Grayscale-Palette-4bpp.gpl)

```
GIMP Palette
Name: Greyscale Palette 4bpp
Columns: 0
#
 0   0   0   BLACK
 17  17  17   Untitled
 34  34  34   Untitled
 51  51  51   Untitled
 68  68  68   Untitled
 85  85  85   Untitled
102 102 102   Untitled
119 119 119   Untitled
136 136 136   Untitled
153 153 153   Untitled
```

```

170 170 170 Untitled
187 187 187 Untitled
204 204 204 Untitled
221 221 221 Untitled
238 238 238 Untitled
255 255 255 WHITE

```

## 10.7 How to Define Colors in your Applications

In most cases, the application will define its own set of colors and not use the default colors that comes with the Graphics Library. This section shows an example on how to do it.

### Description

To override or define a new set of colors follow this steps:

1. Create a new color header file. The color values and data types will depend on the GFX\_COLOR type used. This data type is defined by the COLOR\_DEPTH (█) macro. See COLOR\_DEPTH (█) for details.
2. In the application code, include the created color header file ahead of the #include "Graphics/Graphics.h". When Graphics.h includes the gfxcolors.h it will ignore color macros that has been defined already in the new color header file.

In the GOL Palette Demo, there is an example on how it is done. In that project there is a file in the application (or project directory) named PaletteColorDefines.h. This file contains all the color definition used in the demo. The main header file of the demo (Main.h) includes the PaletteColorDefines.h file ahead of the Graphics Library header files. Since the PaletteColorDefines.h declared the color values, the macros redefined in gfxcolors.h will be ignored. How is this done? If you look at the gfxcolors.h file you will notice that all colors defined have a check (for example BLACK (█)):

```

#ifndef BLACK (█)
#define BLACK (█) 0
#endif

```

So if BLACK (█) is defined previously, the definition in gfxcolors.h will not take effect.

## 10.8 Connecting RGB data bus

Display glasses will require 24 bit or 18 bit RGB color data. How do you do the connection when your display controller only puts out 16 bit RGB data bus?

### Description

To connect the 16-bit RGB data bus to a 24-bit or 18-bit RGB data bus of a display glass follow the recommended connection to evenly spread the color coverage.

16-bit (5-6-5) RGB Display Controller Data Bus	18-bit (6-6-6) RGB Display Data Bus	24-bit (8-8-8) RGB Display Data Bus
<b>Red[4:0]</b>		
Controller Red[4:0]	Display Red[5:1]	Display Red[7:3]
Controller Red[4]	Display Red[0]	Display Red[2:0]
<b>Green[4:0]</b>		
Controller Green[5:0]	Display Green[5:0]	Display Green[7:2]
Controller Green[5]	Display Green[5]	Display Green[1:0]
<b>Blue[4:0]</b>		

Controller Blue[4:0]	Display Blue[5:1]	Display Blue[7:3]
Controller Blue[4]	Display Blue[0]	Display Blue[2:0]

To illustrate the connection take the Red for example:

**To connect the Display Controller Red Data Bus to the Red data bus of a RGB Glass with 18 bit color data bus.**

Connect the 5 Red signals from the display controller to the most significant bits of the glass red signals.

Controller Red[4:0] -> Display Red[5:1]

The remaining Display Red[0] signal will be connected to the most significant bit of the display controller red.

Controller Red[4] -> Display Red[0]

**To connect the Display Controller Red Data Bus to the Red data bus of a RGB Glass with 24 bit color data bus.**

Connect the 5 Red signals from the display controller to the most significant bits of the glass red signals.

Controller Red[4:0] -> Display Red[7:3]

The remaining Display Red[2:0] signals will be connected to the most significant bit of the display controller red.

Controller Red[4] -> Display Red[2]

Controller Red[4] -> Display Red[1]

Controller Red[4] -> Display Red[0]

Doing this spreads out the color coverage while at the same time pure black and pure white colors are achieved.

---

## 10.9 Adding New Device Driver

This is a summary of the requirements to add a new device driver.

### Description

Adding a new display device driver requires the following functions and macros to be implemented. Please refer to the API section of the Device Driver Layer for details.

Function/Macro	Description
ResetDevice (█)()	Initializes the display device.
GetMaxX (█)()	Returns the maximum x-coordinate for the display.
GetMaxY (█)()	Returns the maximum y-coordinate for the display.
SetColor (█)()	Sets the current drawing color.
GetColor (█)()	Returns the current drawing color.
SetActivePage (█)()	Sets the current active graphic page (optional).
SetVisualPage (█)()	Sets the current visual graphic page (optional).
PutPixel (█)()	Modifies pixel on the screen.

<a href="#">GetPixel</a> ()()	Returns the pixel color.
<a href="#">PutImage</a> ()()	Renders an image on the screen. This function is dependent on the color format used.
<a href="#">SetClipRgn</a> ()()	Set the current clipping region borders.
<a href="#">GetClipLeft</a> ()(), <a href="#">GetClipTop</a> ()(), <a href="#">GetClipRight</a> ()(), <a href="#">GetClipBottom</a> ()()	Returns the left, top, right and bottom clipping borders.
<a href="#">SetClip</a> ()()	Enables or disables the clipping region.
<a href="#">IsDeviceBusy</a> ()()	Checks if the display controller is busy executing the previous rendering operation.
<a href="#">SetPalette</a> ()()	Sets the palette register of the device.

### Adding new Display Device Drivers

The DisplayDriver.h file should be used as a guide to make your new driver compatible with the Microchip Graphics Library. All the API's defined in this header file are required functions to be implemented in the driver. There are portions of that file that states optional functions. These functions are not needed to interface to the Graphics Library. These are only implemented if the display controller used has hardware features that can implement these functions.

The best way to implement this is to try to find the nearest existing driver and modify the C and H files. Most graphics controllers has a lot of control registers to be initialized. Values programmed into the registers depends on the specification of the LCD glass used. If LCD module has a built-in graphics controller, initialization code for the glass can be found in the LCD specifications or get this information from the manufacturer.

# 11 References

1. "[MPLAB C32 C COMPILER USER'S GUIDE](#)" (DS51686), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
2. "[MPLAB C COMPILER FOR PIC24 MCUs AND dsPIC DSCs USER'S GUIDE](#)" (DS51284), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
3. Microchip Application Note [AN1136](#), "How to Use Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library" (DS01136), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
4. Microchip Application Note [AN1182](#), "Fonts in the Microchip Graphics Library" (DS01182), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
5. Microchip Application Note [AN1227](#), "Using a Keyboard with the Microchip Graphics Library" (DS01227), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
6. Microchip Application Note [AN1246](#), "How to Create Widgets in Microchip Graphics Library" (DS01246), Microchip Technology Incorporated.
7. HIF 2131 – Designing with Microchip Graphics Library, Microchip Regional Training Center web site ([www.microchip.com/rtc](http://www.microchip.com/rtc)).

# Index

\_BMPDECODER structure 475  
 \_GIFDECODER structure 475  
 \_JPEGDECODER structure 476  
 \_pDefaultGolScheme variable 345  
 \_pGolObjects variable 345  
 \_pObjectFocused variable 346

## A

AC\_DISABLED macro 79  
 AC\_DRAW macro 79  
 AC\_HIDE macro 79  
 AC\_PRESSED macro 80  
 AC\_TICK macro 80  
 AcCreate function 81  
 AcDraw function 82  
 AcSetHour function 83  
 AcSetMinute function 84  
 AcSetSecond function 84  
 Adding New Device Driver 496  
 Advanced Display Driver Features 410  
 Advanced Font Features 486  
 Advanced Font Features Selection 47  
 Alpha Blending 411  
 AlphaBlendWindow function 412  
 Analog Clock 78  
 Analog Clock States 79  
 ANALOGCLOCK structure 85  
 Anti-Alias Type 356  
 ANTIALIAS\_OPAQUE macro 356  
 ANTIALIAS\_TRANSLUCENT macro 356  
 Application Configuration 52  
 Arc function 370

## B

Bar function 366  
 BarGradient function 357  
 Bevel function 372  
 BevelGradient function 359

Bitmap Functions 378  
 Bitmap Settings 380  
 Bitmap Source 381  
 BITMAP\_HEADER structure 380  
 BLACK macro 403  
 BLUE macro 404  
 BRIGHTBLUE macro 404  
 BRIGHTCYAN macro 404  
 BRIGHTGREEN macro 404  
 BRIGHTMAGENTA macro 404  
 BRIGHTRED macro 405  
 BRIGHTYELLOW macro 405  
 BROWN macro 405  
 BTN\_DISABLED macro 88  
 BTN\_DRAW macro 88  
 BTN\_DRAW\_FOCUS macro 88  
 BTN\_FOCUSED macro 88  
 BTN\_HIDE macro 88  
 BTN\_NOPANEL macro 90  
 BTN\_PRESSED macro 89  
 BTN\_TEXTBOTTOM macro 89  
 BTN\_TEXTLEFT macro 89  
 BTN\_TEXTRIGHT macro 89  
 BTN\_TEXTTOP macro 89  
 BTN\_TOGGLE macro 90  
 BtnCreate function 90  
 BtnDraw function 92  
 BtnGetBitmap macro 94  
 BtnGetText macro 93  
 BtnMsgDefault function 95  
 BtnSetBitmap macro 95  
 BtnSetText function 93  
 BtnTranslateMsg function 96  
 Button 86  
 Button States 87  
 BUTTON structure 98

## C

CB\_CHECKED macro 137  
 CB\_DISABLED macro 138  
 CB\_DRAW macro 138

CB\_DRAW\_CHECK macro 138  
CB\_DRAW\_FOCUS macro 138  
CB\_FOCUSED macro 138  
CB\_HIDE macro 139  
CbCreate function 139  
CbDraw function 140  
CbGetText macro 141  
CbMsgDefault function 142  
CbSetText function 141  
CbTranslateMsg function 143  
CH\_3D\_ENABLE macro 102  
CH\_BAR macro 103  
CH\_BAR\_HOR macro 103  
CH\_CLR0 macro 132  
CH\_CLR1 macro 132  
CH\_CLR10 macro 134  
CH\_CLR11 macro 134  
CH\_CLR12 macro 135  
CH\_CLR13 macro 135  
CH\_CLR14 macro 135  
CH\_CLR15 macro 135  
CH\_CLR2 macro 133  
CH\_CLR3 macro 133  
CH\_CLR4 macro 133  
CH\_CLR5 macro 133  
CH\_CLR6 macro 133  
CH\_CLR7 macro 134  
CH\_CLR8 macro 134  
CH\_CLR9 macro 134  
CH\_DISABLED macro 102  
CH\_DONUT macro 103  
CH\_DRAW macro 102  
CH\_DRAW\_DATA macro 102  
CH\_HIDE macro 104  
CH\_LEGEND macro 103  
CH\_NUMERIC macro 104  
CH\_PERCENT macro 104  
CH\_PIE macro 104  
CH\_VALUE macro 104  
ChAddDataSeries function 109  
Changing the default Font 485  
Chart 99  
Chart Examples 105  
Chart States 101  
CHART structure 130  
CHARTPARAM structure 131  
ChCreate function 106  
ChDraw function 108  
Check Box States 137  
Checkbox 135  
CHECKBOX structure 144  
ChFreeDataSeries function 128  
ChGetAxisLabelFont macro 126  
ChGetColorTable macro 123  
ChGetGridLabelFont macro 127  
ChGetPercentMax macro 121  
ChGetPercentMin macro 122  
ChGetPercentRange macro 119  
ChGetSampleEnd macro 118  
ChGetSampleLabel macro 117  
ChGetSampleRange macro 121  
ChGetSampleStart macro 118  
ChGetShowSeriesCount macro 112  
ChGetShowSeriesStatus macro 113  
ChGetTitle macro 124  
ChGetTitleFont macro 125  
ChGetValueLabel macro 114  
ChGetValueMax macro 114  
ChGetValueMin macro 115  
ChGetValueRange macro 116  
ChHideSeries macro 111  
ChRemoveDataSeries function 110  
ChSetAxisLabelFont macro 127  
ChSetColorTable macro 123  
ChSetGridLabelFont macro 128  
ChSetPercentRange function 119  
ChSetSampleLabel macro 117  
ChSetSampleRange function 120  
ChSetTitle macro 124  
ChSetTitleFont macro 125  
ChSetValueLabel macro 113  
ChSetValueRange function 115  
ChShowSeries macro 111  
ChTranslateMsg function 129

- Circle Functions 368  
Circle macro 369  
ClearDevice function 384  
ClearPaletteChangeError function 440  
CLIP\_DISABLE macro 395  
CLIP\_ENABLE macro 395  
ClrState macro 302  
Color Definition 403  
Color Table 132  
COLOR\_DEPTH macro 56  
Common Object States 300  
Configuration Setting 52  
Connecting RGB data bus 495  
Converting Images to Use a Common Palette in GIMP 493  
CopyBlock function 399  
CopyPageWindow function 400  
CopyWindow function 401  
CYAN macro 405
- D**
- DARKGRAY macro 405  
DASHED\_LINE macro 364  
Data Series Status Settings 105  
DATASERIES structure 130  
Decompress function 438  
Decompressing DEFLATEd data 438  
Default Style Scheme Settings 343  
Demo Compatibility Matrix 34  
Demo Projects 33  
Demo Summary 33  
Development Platform Used 58  
Device Driver Options 67  
Dial States 145  
Digital Meter 154  
Digital Meter States 155  
DIGITALMETER structure 162  
DISABLED macro 301  
DisablePalette function 440  
DISP\_DATA\_WIDTH macro 68  
DISP\_HOR\_BACK\_PORCH macro 70  
DISP\_HOR\_FRONT\_PORCH macro 69  
DISP\_HOR\_PULSE\_WIDTH macro 70  
DISP\_HOR\_RESOLUTION macro 69  
DISP\_INV\_LSHIFT macro 71  
DISP\_ORIENTATION macro 68  
DISP\_VER\_BACK\_PORCH macro 70  
DISP\_VER\_FRONT\_PORCH macro 70  
DISP\_VER\_PULSE\_WIDTH macro 70  
DISP\_VER\_RESOLUTION macro 69  
Display Controller Used 62  
Display Device Driver Control 409  
Display Device Driver Layer 38  
Display Device Driver Layer API 388  
Display Device Driver Layer Configuration 49  
Display Device Driver Level Primitives 388  
Display Panel Used 64  
DisplayBrightness function 398  
DM\_CENTER\_ALIGN macro 156  
DM\_DISABLED macro 155  
DM\_DRAW macro 155  
DM\_FRAME macro 156  
DM\_HIDE macro 156  
DM\_RIGHT\_ALIGN macro 156  
DM\_UPDATE macro 156  
DmCreate function 157  
DmDecVal macro 160  
DmDraw function 158  
DmGetValue macro 159  
DmIncVal macro 160  
DmSetValue function 159  
DmTranslateMsg function 161  
DOTTED\_LINE macro 365  
Double Buffering 434  
DRAW macro 301  
DRAW\_FOCUS macro 301  
DRAW\_FUNC type 77  
DRAW\_UPDATE macro 301  
DrawArc function 372  
DrawPoly function 367
- E**
- EB\_CARET macro 165  
EB\_CENTER\_ALIGN macro 164  
EB\_DISABLED macro 164

- EB\_DRAW macro 164  
EB\_DRAW\_CARET macro 165  
EB\_FOCUSED macro 165  
EB\_HIDE macro 165  
EB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN macro 165  
EbAddChar function 169  
EbCreate function 166  
EbDeleteChar function 169  
EbDraw function 167  
EbGetText macro 167  
EbMsgDefault function 170  
EbSetText function 168  
EbTranslateMsg function 171  
Edit Box 162  
Edit Box States 164  
EDITBOX structure 171  
EnablePalette function 440  
EXPLORER\_16 macro 59  
External Memory 381  
External Memory Buffer 49  
External or Internal Memory and Palettes 461  
EXTERNAL\_FONT\_BUFFER\_SIZE macro 383  
ExternalMemoryCallback function 382
- GB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN macro 190  
GbCreate function 190  
GbDraw function 192  
GbGetText macro 192  
GbSetText function 193  
GbTranslateMsg function 194  
GetClipBottom macro 393  
GetClipLeft macro 394  
GetClipRight macro 394  
GetClipTop macro 394  
GetColor macro 390  
GetFontOrientation macro 349  
GetImageHeight function 379  
GetImageWidth function 379  
GetMaxX macro 391  
GetMaxY macro 391  
GetObjID macro 312  
GetObjNext macro 313  
GetObjType macro 312  
GetPageAddress macro 399  
GetPaletteChangeError function 441  
GetPixel function 389  
GetState macro 302  
GetTextHeight function 354  
GetTextWidth function 355  
Getting Started 25  
GetTransparentColor macro 397  
GetTransparentColorStatus macro 397  
GetX macro 376  
GetY macro 376  
GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_LENGTH macro 459  
GFX\_DISPLAY\_BUFFER\_START\_ADDRESS macro 460  
GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_BASE\_ADDRESS macro 454  
GFX\_EPMP\_CS1\_MEMORY\_SIZE macro 456  
GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_BASE\_ADDRESS macro 457  
GFX\_EPMP\_CS2\_MEMORY\_SIZE macro 458  
GFX\_EXDATA structure 387  
GFX\_Font\_GetAntiAliasType macro 350  
GFX\_Font\_SetAntiAliasType macro 351  
GFX\_free macro 56  
GFX\_GCLK\_DIVIDER macro 453  
GFX\_GRADIENT\_STYLE structure 360

## G

- GB\_CENTER\_ALIGN macro 189  
GB\_DISABLED macro 190  
GB\_DRAW macro 190  
GB\_HIDE macro 190

GFX\_GRADIENT\_TYPE enumeration 360  
GFX\_IMAGE\_HEADER structure 385  
GFX\_LCD\_CSTN macro 50  
GFX\_LCD\_MSTN macro 51  
GFX\_LCD\_OFF macro 51  
GFX\_LCD\_TFT macro 51  
GFX\_LCD\_TYPE macro 50  
GFX\_malloc macro 56  
GFX\_PICTAIL\_LCC macro 61  
GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3 macro 61  
GFX\_PICTAIL\_V3E macro 61  
GFX\_RESOURCE enumeration 385  
GFX\_TRANSITION\_DIRECTION enumeration 418  
GFX\_TRANSITION\_TYPE enumeration 418  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_DMA macro 63  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_MCHP\_DA210 macro 63  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_S1D13517 macro 63  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_CONTROLLER\_SSD1926 macro 64  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_PH480272T\_005\_I11Q macro 65  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_640480\_8\_E macro 66  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_800480\_33\_E macro 66  
GFX\_USE\_DISPLAY\_PANEL\_TFT\_G240320LTSW\_118W\_E macro 66  
GFXExecutePendingTransition function 417  
GFXGetPageOriginAddress function 413  
GFXGetPageXYAddress function 414  
GFXIsTransitionPending function 418  
GFXSetupTransition function 416  
GFXTransition function 415  
GOL Global Variables 345  
GOL Messages 323  
GOL Objects 72  
GOL\_EMBOSS\_SIZE macro 343  
GOL\_MSG structure 328  
GOL\_OBJ\_TYPE enumeration 75  
GOL\_SCHEME structure 342  
GOLAddObject function 306  
GOLCanBeFocused function 319  
GOLCreateScheme function 340  
GOLDeleteObject function 314  
GOLDeleteObjectByID function 314  
GOLDraw function 309  
GOLDrawCallback function 310  
GOLDrawComplete macro 309  
GOLFindObject function 306  
GOLFontDefault variable 343  
GOLFree function 311  
GOLGetFocus macro 319  
GOLGetFocusNext function 320  
GOLGetFocusPrev function 320  
GOLGetList macro 316  
GOLGetScheme macro 341  
GOLGetSchemeDefault macro 342  
GOLInit function 318  
GOLMsg function 326  
GOLMsgCallback function 327  
GOLNewList macro 315  
GOLPanelDraw macro 321  
GOLPanelDrawTsk function 322  
GOLRedraw macro 307  
GOLRedrawRec function 308  
GOLSchemeDefault variable 344  
GOLSetFocus function 317  
GOLSetList macro 316  
GOLSetScheme macro 340  
GOLTTwoTonePanelDrawTsk function 323  
Gradient 356  
Gradient Bar Rendering 48  
Graphic Cursor 376  
Graphics Library Configuration 39  
Graphics Object Layer 35  
Graphics Object Layer API 72  
Graphics Object Layer Configuration 39  
Graphics Object Selection 41  
Graphics PICtail Used 60  
Graphics Primitive Layer 37  
Graphics Primitive Layer API 346  
Graphics Primitive Layer Configuration 45  
GraphicsConfig.h Example 56  
GRAY0 macro 406  
GRAY1 macro 406  
GRAY2 macro 406  
GRAY3 macro 406

- GRAY4 macro 406  
GRAY5 macro 407  
GRAY6 macro 407  
GREEN macro 407  
Grid 172  
Grid Item States 175  
Grid States 173  
GRID structure 187  
GRID\_DISABLED macro 174  
GRID\_DRAW\_ALL macro 175  
GRID\_DRAW\_ITEMS macro 175  
GRID\_FOCUSED macro 174  
GRID\_HIDE macro 175  
GRID\_OUT\_OF\_BOUNDS macro 181  
GRID\_SHOW\_BORDER\_ONLY macro 174  
GRID\_SHOW\_FOCUS macro 174  
GRID\_SHOW\_LINES macro 174  
GRID\_SHOW\_SEPARATORS\_ONLY macro 175  
GRID\_SUCCESS macro 181  
GridClearCellState function 179  
GridCreate function 177  
GridDraw function 178  
GridFreeItems function 181  
GridGetCell function 182  
GridGetFocusX macro 180  
GridGetFocusY macro 180  
GRIDITEM structure 188  
GRIDITEM\_DRAW macro 177  
GRIDITEM\_IS\_BITMAP macro 176  
GRIDITEM\_IS\_TEXT macro 176  
GRIDITEM\_SELECTED macro 176  
GRIDITEM\_TEXTBOTTOM macro 176  
GRIDITEM\_TEXTLEFT macro 177  
GRIDITEM\_TEXTRIGHT macro 177  
GRIDITEM\_TEXTTOP macro 177  
GridMsgDefault function 185  
GridSetCell function 183  
GridSetCellState function 183  
GridSetFocus function 184  
GridTranslateMsg function 186  
Group Box 188  
Group Box States 189  
GROUPBOX structure 194
- ## H
- Hardware Profile 57  
HardwareProfile.h Example 71  
HIDE macro 301  
HIDE\_DATA macro 105  
How to Define Colors in your Applications 495
- ## I
- Image Compression Option 45  
Image Decoder Configuration 468  
Image Decoder Demo 467  
Image Decoders 464  
Image Decoders API 468  
Image Source Selection 54  
IMAGE\_FLASH structure 386  
IMAGE\_NORMAL macro 381  
IMAGE\_RAM structure 387  
IMAGE\_X2 macro 381  
ImageAbort macro 474  
ImageDecode function 471  
ImageDecoderInit function 472  
ImageDecodeTask function 473  
ImageFullScreenDecode macro 473  
ImageLoopCallbackRegister function 472  
IMG\_SUPPORT\_BMP macro 469  
IMG\_SUPPORT\_GIF macro 469  
IMG\_SUPPORT\_IMAGE\_DECODER\_LOOP\_CALLBACK macro 470  
IMG\_SUPPORT\_JPEG macro 469  
IMG\_USE\_ONLY\_565\_GRAPHICS\_DRIVER\_FOR\_OUTPUT macro 470  
IMG\_USE\_ONLY\_MDD\_FILE\_SYSTEM\_FOR\_INPUT macro 470  
InitGraph function 384  
Input Device Selection 39  
INPUT\_DEVICE\_EVENT enumeration 331  
INPUT\_DEVICE\_TYPE enumeration 331  
Introduction 1  
InvalidateRectangle function 437  
IsDeviceBusy function 410

- IsObjUpdated macro 317  
IsPaletteEnabled function 441
- K**
- Key Command Types 278  
KEYMEMBER structure 291
- L**
- LB\_CENTER\_ALIGN macro 197  
LB\_DISABLED macro 198  
LB\_DRAW macro 198  
LB\_DRAW\_FOCUS macro 198  
LB\_DRAW\_ITEMS macro 198  
LB\_FOCUSED macro 198  
LB\_HIDE macro 199  
LB\_RIGHT\_ALIGN macro 197  
LB\_SINGLE\_SEL macro 197  
LB\_STS\_REDRAW macro 199  
LB\_STS\_SELECTED macro 199  
LbAddItem function 202  
LbChangeSel function 204  
LbCreate function 199  
LbDeleteItem function 204  
LbDeleteItemsList function 210  
LbDraw function 201  
LbGetBitmap macro 209  
LbGetCount macro 207  
LbGetFocusedItem function 206  
LbGetItemList macro 202  
LbGetSel function 205  
LbGetVisibleCount macro 208  
LbMsgDefault function 210  
LbSetBitmap macro 208  
LbSetFocusedItem function 207  
LbSetSel macro 205  
LbTranslateMsg function 211  
Library API 39  
Library Architecture 35  
LIGHTBLUE macro 407  
LIGHTCYAN macro 407  
LIGHTGRAY macro 408  
LIGHTGREEN macro 408
- LIGHTMAGENTA macro 408  
LIGHTRED macro 408  
Line function 361  
Line Functions 361  
Line Size 365  
Line Types 364  
LineRel macro 362  
LineTo macro 362  
List Box 195  
List Box States 197  
List Item Status 199  
LISTBOX structure 212  
LISTITEM structure 213
- M**
- MAGENTA macro 408  
MEB\_BOARD macro 60  
Memory Type 383  
Meter 213  
Meter States 215  
METER structure 225  
METER\_TYPE macro 223  
Microchip Application Library Abbreviations 34  
Microchip Graphics Controller 419  
Miscellaneous 55  
Miscellaneous Topics 479  
MoveRel macro 377  
MoveTo macro 377  
MSG\_DEFAULT\_FUNC type 77  
MSG\_FUNC type 77  
MTR\_ACCURACY macro 223  
MTR\_DISABLED macro 215  
MTR\_DRAW macro 216  
MTR\_DRAW\_UPDATE macro 216  
MTR\_HIDE macro 216  
MTR\_RING macro 216  
MtrCreate function 216  
MtrDecVal macro 220  
MtrDraw function 218  
MtrGetVal macro 219  
MtrIncVal macro 220  
MtrMsgDefault function 224

MtrSetScaleColors macro 221  
MtrSetTitleFont macro 222  
MtrSetVal function 219  
MtrSetValueFont macro 222  
MtrTranslateMsg function 224

PICT\_HIDE macro 228  
PictCreate function 228  
PictDraw function 229  
PictGetBitmap macro 230  
PictGetScale macro 231  
PictSetBitmap macro 230  
PictSetScale macro 232

**N**  
NORMAL\_LINE macro 365

PictTranslateMsg function 232

**O**  
OBJ\_HEADER structure 76  
Object Management 304  
Object Rendering 36  
Object States 299  
OutChar function 351  
OutText function 352  
OutTextXY function 353

Picture Control 226  
Picture States 227  
PICTURE structure 233  
PMP Interface 57  
Progress Bar 233  
Progress Bar States 234  
PROGRESSBAR structure 241  
PutImage function 378  
PutPixel function 389

**P**  
Palette Mode 439  
Palette.h 446

PALETTE\_EXTERNAL type 445  
PALETTE\_FLASH structure 444  
PALETTE\_HEADER structure 444  
Palettelnit function 441  
PB\_DISABLED macro 235  
PB\_DRAW macro 235  
PB\_DRAW\_BAR macro 235  
PB\_HIDE macro 235  
PB\_VERTICAL macro 235  
PbCreate function 236  
PbDraw function 237  
PbGetPos macro 240  
PbGetRange macro 238  
PbSetPos function 239  
PbSetRange function 238  
PbTranslateMsg function 240  
PIC\_SK macro 60  
PIC24FJ256DA210\_DEV\_BOARD macro 59  
PICT\_DISABLED macro 228  
PICT\_DRAW macro 228  
PICT\_FRAME macro 228

Radio Button 242  
Radio Button States 243  
RADIOBUTTON structure 252  
RB\_CHECKED macro 243  
RB\_DISABLED macro 243  
RB\_DRAW macro 244  
RB\_DRAW\_CHECK macro 244  
RB\_DRAW\_FOCUS macro 244  
RB\_FOCUSED macro 244  
RB\_GROUP macro 244  
RB\_HIDE macro 245  
RbCreate function 245  
RbDraw function 246  
RbGetCheck function 247  
RbGetText macro 249  
RbMsgDefault function 250  
RbSetCheck function 248  
RbSetText function 249  
RbTranslateMsg function 251  
RCC\_COPY macro 434  
RCC\_DEST\_ADDR\_CONTINUOUS macro 432  
RCC\_DEST\_ADDR\_DISCONTINUOUS macro 432  
RCC\_ROP\_0 macro 433

RCC\_ROP\_1 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_2 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_3 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_4 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_5 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_6 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_7 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_8 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_9 macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_A macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_B macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_C macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_D macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_E macro 433  
RCC\_ROP\_F macro 433  
RCC\_SOLID\_FILL macro 434  
RCC\_SRC\_ADDR\_CONTINUOUS macro 432  
RCC\_SRC\_ADDR\_DISCONTINUOUS macro 432  
RCC\_TRANSPARENT\_COPY macro 434  
RDIA\_DISABLED macro 146  
RDIA\_DRAW macro 146  
RDIA\_HIDE macro 146  
RDIA\_ROT\_CCW macro 146  
RDIA\_ROT\_CW macro 146  
RdiaCreate function 147  
RdiaDecVal macro 149  
RdiaDraw function 148  
RdiaGetVal macro 150  
RdialIncVal macro 148  
RdiaMsgDefault function 151  
RdiaSetVal macro 150  
RdiaTranslateMsg function 152  
Rectangle Copy Operations 420  
Rectangle Functions 366  
Rectangle macro 367  
RED macro 409  
References 498  
Release Notes 5  
RequestDisplayUpdate function 437  
RequestEntirePaletteChange macro 445  
RequestPaletteChange function 442  
ResetDevice function 410  
RGBConvert macro 344  
ROPBlock function 430  
Round Dial 144  
ROUNDDIAL structure 153

**S**

Scan Key Codes 332  
SCAN\_BS\_PRESSED macro 333  
SCAN\_BS\_RELEASED macro 333  
SCAN\_CR\_PRESSED macro 333  
SCAN\_CR\_RELEASED macro 333  
SCAN\_DEL\_PRESSED macro 333  
SCAN\_DEL\_RELEASED macro 334  
SCAN\_DOWN\_PRESSED macro 334  
SCAN\_DOWN\_RELEASED macro 334  
SCAN\_END\_PRESSED macro 334  
SCAN\_END\_RELEASED macro 334  
SCAN\_HOME\_PRESSED macro 335  
SCAN\_HOME\_RELEASED macro 335  
SCAN\_LEFT\_PRESSED macro 335  
SCAN\_LEFT\_RELEASED macro 335  
SCAN\_PGDOWN\_PRESSED macro 335  
SCAN\_PGDOWN\_RELEASED macro 336  
SCAN\_PGUP\_PRESSED macro 336  
SCAN\_PGUP\_RELEASED macro 336  
SCAN\_RIGHT\_PRESSED macro 336  
SCAN\_RIGHT\_RELEASED macro 336  
SCAN\_SPACE\_PRESSED macro 337  
SCAN\_SPACE\_RELEASED macro 337  
SCAN\_TAB\_PRESSED macro 337  
SCAN\_TAB\_RELEASED macro 337  
SCAN\_UP\_PRESSED macro 337  
SCAN\_UP\_RELEASED macro 338  
Scroll function 432  
Set Up Display Interface 451  
Set Up Functions 383  
SetActivePage function 402  
SetBevelDrawType macro 375  
SetClip function 392  
SetClipRgn function 392  
SetColor macro 390  
SetEntirePalette macro 445

SetFont function 349  
SetFontOrientation macro 350  
SetLineThickness macro 363  
SetLineType macro 363  
SetPalette function 442  
SetPaletteBpp function 443  
SetPaletteFlash function 443  
SetState macro 303  
SetVisualPage function 402  
SHOW\_DATA macro 105  
SLD\_DISABLED macro 254  
SLD\_DRAW macro 255  
SLD\_DRAW\_FOCUS macro 255  
SLD\_DRAW\_THUMB macro 255  
SLD\_FOCUSED macro 255  
SLD\_HIDE macro 255  
SLD\_SCROLLBAR macro 256  
SLD\_VERTICAL macro 256  
SldCreate function 256  
SldDecPos macro 264  
SldDraw function 258  
SldGetPage macro 259  
SldGetPos macro 261  
SldGetRange macro 262  
SldIncPos macro 263  
SldMsgDefault function 265  
SldSetPage function 259  
SldSetPos function 260  
SldSetRange function 262  
SldTranslateMsg function 266  
Slider States 254  
SLIDER structure 267  
Slider/Scroll Bar 252  
Software License Agreement.txt 2  
SOLID\_LINE macro 364  
ST\_CENTER\_ALIGN macro 269  
ST\_DISABLED macro 269  
ST\_DRAW macro 269  
ST\_FRAME macro 270  
ST\_HIDE macro 270  
ST\_RIGHT\_ALIGN macro 270  
ST\_UPDATE macro 270  
Starting a New Project 479  
Static Text 267  
Static Text States 269  
STATICTEXT structure 274  
StCreate function 270  
StDraw function 271  
StGetText macro 272  
STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH macro 51  
STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_16 macro 52  
STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_4 macro 52  
STN\_DISPLAY\_WIDTH\_8 macro 52  
StSetText function 273  
StTranslateMsg function 273  
Style Scheme 338  
SwitchOffDoubleBuffering function 436  
SwitchOnDoubleBuffering function 436

## T

TE\_DELETE\_COM macro 279  
TE\_DISABLED macro 277  
TE\_DRAW macro 278  
TE\_ECHO\_HIDE macro 277  
TE\_ENTER\_COM macro 279  
TE\_HIDE macro 278  
TE\_KEY\_PRESSED macro 277  
TE\_SPACE\_COM macro 279  
TE\_UPDATE\_KEY macro 278  
TE\_UPDATE\_TEXT macro 278  
TeAddChar function 285  
TeClearBuffer function 282  
TeCreate function 279  
TeCreateKeyMembers function 284  
TeDelKeyMembers function 286  
TeDraw function 280  
TeGetBuffer macro 281  
TeGetKeyCommand function 283  
TeIsKeyPressed function 285  
TeMsgDefault function 288  
TeSetBuffer function 281  
TeSetKeyCommand function 283  
TeSetKeyText function 287  
TeSpaceChar function 286

- TeTranslateMsg function 289  
Text Entry 275  
Text Functions 346  
TextEntry States 277  
TEXTENTRY structure 290  
THICK\_LINE macro 365  
TRANS\_MSG enumeration 329  
Transitions 414  
Transparent Color Feature in PutImage() 48  
TRANSPARENT\_COLOR\_DISABLE macro 398  
TRANSPARENT\_COLOR\_ENABLE macro 398  
TransparentColorDisable macro 396  
TransparentColorEnable function 395  
  
**U**  
UPDATE\_HOUR macro 80  
UPDATE\_MINUTE macro 80  
UPDATE\_SECOND macro 80  
UpdateDisplayNow function 438  
USE\_16BIT\_PMP macro 58  
USE\_8BIT\_PMP macro 57  
USE\_ALPHABLEND macro 49  
USE\_ANALOGCLOCK macro 41  
USE\_ANTIALIASED\_FONTS macro 48  
USE\_BITMAP\_EXTERNAL macro 55  
USE\_BITMAP\_FLASH macro 54  
USE\_BUTTON macro 42  
USE\_BUTTON\_MULTI\_LINE macro 42  
USE\_CHECKBOX macro 42  
USE\_COMP\_IPU macro 46  
USE\_COMP\_RLE macro 46  
USE\_CUSTOM macro 45  
USE\_DIGITALMETER macro 42  
USE\_DOUBLE\_BUFFERING macro 50  
USE\_EDITBOX macro 42  
USE\_FOCUS macro 40  
USE\_FONT\_EXTERNAL macro 54  
USE\_FONT\_FLASH macro 53  
USE\_GOL macro 45  
USE\_GRADIENT macro 48  
USE\_GROUPBOX macro 43  
USE\_KEYBOARD macro 40  
USE\_LISTBOX macro 43  
USE\_METER macro 43  
USE\_MULTIBYTECHAR macro 47  
USE\_NONBLOCKING\_CONFIG macro 53  
USE\_PALETTE macro 56  
USE\_PALETTE\_EXTERNAL macro 55  
USE\_PICTURE macro 43  
USE\_PROGRESSBAR macro 43  
USE\_RADIOBUTTON macro 44  
USE\_ROUNDDIAL macro 44  
USE\_SLIDER macro 44  
USE\_STATICTEXT macro 44  
USE\_TEXTENTRY macro 45  
USE\_TOUCHSCREEN macro 40  
USE\_TRANSPARENT\_COLOR macro 48  
USE\_UNSIGNED\_XCHAR macro 47  
USE\_WINDOW macro 44  
Using Microchip Graphics Module Color Look Up Table in Applications 488  
Using Primitive Rendering Functions in Blocking and Non-Blocking Modes 487  
  
**W**  
WHITE macro 409  
Window 292  
Window States 293  
WINDOW structure 299  
WND\_DISABLED macro 293  
WND\_DRAW macro 294  
WND\_DRAW\_CLIENT macro 294  
WND\_DRAW\_TITLE macro 294  
WND\_FOCUSED macro 294  
WND\_HIDE macro 294  
WND\_TITLECENTER macro 295  
WndCreate function 295  
WndDraw function 296  
WndGetText macro 297  
WndSetText function 297  
WndTranslateMsg function 298  
  
**X**  
XCHAR macro 355

## Y

YELLOW macro 409